



2017 **CHEROKEE** USER GUIDE

**Jeep**



If you are the first registered retail owner of your vehicle, you may obtain a complimentary printed copy of the Owner's Manual, Navigation/Uconnect Manuals or Warranty Booklets by calling **1 877 426-5337** (U.S.) or **1 800 387-1143** (Canada) or by contacting your dealer.

The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, resulting in a collision and personal injury. FCA US LLC strongly recommends that the driver use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take their attention off the road.

Use of any electrical devices, such as cellular telephones, computers, portable radios, vehicle navigation or other devices, by the driver while

the vehicle is moving is dangerous and could lead to a serious collision. Texting while driving is also dangerous and should never be done while the vehicle is moving.

If you find yourself unable to devote your full attention to vehicle operation, pull off the road to a safe location and stop your vehicle. Some states or provinces prohibit the use of cellular telephones or texting while driving. It is always the driver's responsibility to comply with all local laws.

## Important:

---

This User Guide is intended to familiarize you with the important features of your vehicle. Your Owner's Manual, Navigation/Uconnect Manuals and Warranty Booklets can be found on your DVD (if applicable) or by visiting the website on the back cover of your User Guide. We hope you find it useful. U.S. residents can purchase replacement kits by visiting **[www.techauthority.com](http://www.techauthority.com)** and Canadian residents can purchase replacement kits by calling **1 800 387-1143**.

Congratulations on selecting your new FCA US LLC (“FCA US”) vehicle. Be assured that it represents precision workmanship, distinctive styling, and high quality.

Your new FCA US LLC vehicle has characteristics to enhance the driver's control under some driving conditions. These are to assist the driver and are never a substitute for attentive driving. They can never take the driver's place. Always drive carefully.

Your new vehicle has many features for the comfort and convenience of you and your passengers. Some of these should not be used when driving because they take your eyes from the road or your attention from driving. Never text while driving, or more than momentarily take your eyes off the road.

This guide illustrates and describes the operation of features and equipment that are either standard or optional on this vehicle. This guide may also include a description of features and equipment that are no longer available or were not ordered on this vehicle. Please disregard any features and equipment described in this guide that are not available on this vehicle. FCA US reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications and/or make additions to or improvements to its products without imposing any obligation upon itself to install them on products previously manufactured.

This User Guide has been prepared to help you quickly become acquainted with the important features of your vehicle. It contains most things you will need to operate and maintain the vehicle, including emergency information.

**For complete owner information, refer to your Owner's Manual at [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/) for further details.** For your convenience, the information contained on this site may also be printed and saved for future reference.

FCA US LLC is committed to protecting our environment and natural resources. By converting from paper to electronic delivery for the majority of the user information for your vehicle, together we greatly reduce the demand for tree-based products and lessen the stress on our environment.

When it comes to service, remember that your authorized dealer knows your Jeep® vehicle best, has factory-trained technicians and genuine MOPAR® parts, and cares about your satisfaction.

## HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

### Essential Information

Each time direction instructions (left/right or forwards/backwards) about the vehicle are given, these must be intended as regarding an occupant in the driver's seat. Special cases not complying with this rule will be properly specified in the text.

The figures in this User Guide are provided by way of example only: this might imply that some details of the image do not correspond to the actual arrangement of your vehicle.

In addition, the User Guide has been conceived considering vehicles with steering wheel on the left side; it is therefore possible that on vehicles with steering wheel on the right side, the position or construction of some controls is not exactly mirror-like with respect to the figure.

To identify the chapter with the information needed you can consult the index at the end of this User Guide.

Chapters can be rapidly identified with dedicated graphic tabs, at the side of each odd page. A few pages further there is a key for getting to know the chapter order and the relevant symbols in the tabs. There is anyway a textual indication of the current chapter at the side of each even page.

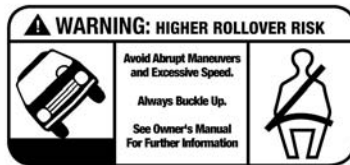
### Symbols

Some vehicle components have colored labels whose symbols indicate precautions to be observed when using this component.

## ROLLOVER WARNING

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. This vehicle has a higher ground clearance and a higher center of gravity than many passenger vehicles. It is capable of performing better in a wide variety of off-road applications. Driven in an unsafe manner, all vehicles can go out of control. Because of the higher center of gravity, if this vehicle is out of control it may roll over while some other vehicles may not.

Do not attempt sharp turns, abrupt maneuvers, or other unsafe driving actions that can cause loss of vehicle control. Failure to operate this vehicle safely may result in a collision, rollover of the vehicle, and severe or fatal injury. Drive carefully.



806A010

Rollover Warning Label

Failure to use the driver and passenger seat belts provided is a major cause of severe or fatal injury. In fact, the U.S. government notes that the universal use of existing seat belts could cut the highway death toll by 10,000 or more each year and could reduce disabling injuries by two million annually. In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Always buckle up.

## WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS












While reading this User Guide you will find a series of WARNINGS to prevent procedures that could damage your vehicle.

There are also CAUTIONS that must be carefully followed to prevent incorrect use of the components of the vehicle, which could cause accidents or injuries.

## VEHICLE CHANGES/ ALTERATIONS

**IMPORTANT:** Any change or alteration of the vehicle might seriously affect its safety and road holding, thus causing accidents, in which the occupants could even be fatally injured.



<b>GRAPHICAL TABLE OF CONTENTS</b>	
<b>GETTING TO KNOW YOUR VEHICLE</b>	
<b>GETTING TO KNOW YOUR INSTRUMENT PANEL</b>	
<b>SAFETY</b>	
<b>STARTING AND OPERATING</b>	
<b>IN CASE OF EMERGENCY</b>	
<b>SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE</b>	
<b>TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS</b>	
<b>MULTIMEDIA</b>	
<b>CUSTOMER ASSISTANCE</b>	
<b>INDEX</b>	





# GRAPHICAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

**INSTRUMENT PANEL . . . . .8**

**INTERIOR . . . . .9**



## INSTRUMENT PANEL



**Instrument Panel**

- 1 — Air Vents
- 2 — Multifunction Lever
- 3 — Steering Wheel

- 4 — Instrument Cluster
- 5 — Windshield Wiper Lever
- 6 — Glove/Storage Compartment

# INTERIOR



**Interior Features**

- 1 — Power Window Switches
- 2 — Ignition Start/Stop Button
- 3 — Uconnect Radio

- 4 — Switch Bank
- 5 — Climate Controls
- 6 — Gear Selector

- 7 — Seats





# GETTING TO KNOW YOUR VEHICLE

<b>KEYS</b> . . . . .	<b>.13</b>	Child-Protection Door Lock System —		<b>EXTERIOR LIGHTS.</b> . . . . .	<b>.35</b>
Key Fob . . . . .	.13	Rear Doors . . . . .	.23	Headlight Switch . . . . .	.35
<b>IGNITION SWITCH</b> . . . . .	<b>.14</b>	<b>SEATS.</b> . . . . .	<b>.24</b>	Headlights . . . . .	.35
Keyless Enter-N-Go — Ignition . . . . .	.14	Manual Seat Adjustment . . . . .	.24	Daytime Running Lights (DRL) —	
<b>REMOTE STARTING SYSTEM —</b>		Power Adjustment Front —		If Equipped . . . . .	.35
<b>IF EQUIPPED</b> . . . . .	<b>.16</b>	If Equipped . . . . .	.25	High Beams . . . . .	.36
General Information . . . . .	.16	Manual Adjustment Rear . . . . .	.26	Flash-To-Pass . . . . .	.36
<b>SENTRY KEY</b> . . . . .	<b>.16</b>	Memory Seat . . . . .	.26	Automatic Lighting . . . . .	.36
General Information . . . . .	.16	Heated/Ventilated Seats . . . . .	.27	Parking Lights . . . . .	.36
Irregular Operation . . . . .	.17	<b>HEAD RESTRAINTS</b> . . . . .	<b>.28</b>	Headlight Delay . . . . .	.36
<b>VEHICLE SECURITY ALARM —</b>		Front Adjustment . . . . .	.29	Front Fog Lights . . . . .	.37
<b>IF EQUIPPED</b> . . . . .	<b>.17</b>	Front Removal . . . . .	.29	Turn Signals . . . . .	.37
To Arm The System . . . . .	.17	Rear Adjustment . . . . .	.30	Lane Change Assist . . . . .	.37
To Disarm The System . . . . .	.18	Rear Removal . . . . .	.31	<b>INTERIOR LIGHTS</b> . . . . .	<b>.37</b>
<b>DOORS</b> . . . . .	<b>.18</b>	<b>STEERING WHEEL</b> . . . . .	<b>.31</b>	Courtesy Interior Lights . . . . .	.37
Manual Door Locks . . . . .	.18	Adjustment . . . . .	.31	Instrument Panel Dimmer Control . . . . .	.38
Power Door Locks . . . . .	.19	Heated Steering Wheel. . . . .	.32	<b>WIPER AND WASHERS</b> . . . . .	<b>.38</b>
Keyless Enter-N-Go — Passive Entry . . . . .	.20	<b>MIRRORS</b> . . . . .	<b>.33</b>	Front Wipers . . . . .	.38
Locking The Doors With One Or More		Interior Mirrors . . . . .	.33	Rain Sensing Wipers . . . . .	.39
Doors Open. . . . .	.23	Exterior Mirrors . . . . .	.34	Rear Wiper . . . . .	.40
Auto Relocking . . . . .	.23				



**CLIMATE CONTROLS . . . . .40**

Manual Climate Control Without A Touchscreen Overview . . . . .	40
Climate Controls With A Touchscreen Overview . . . . .	45
Automatic Temperature Control (ATC) — If Equipped . . . . .	55
Operating Tips . . . . .	56

**WINDOWS . . . . .59**

Power Window Controls . . . . .	59
Auto-Up Feature With Anti-Pinch Protection . . . . .	59
Reset Auto-Up . . . . .	60
Window Lockout Switch . . . . .	60

**POWER SUNROOF . . . . .60**

Opening . . . . .	61
Closing . . . . .	61
Wind Buffeting . . . . .	61
Power Sun Shade . . . . .	61
Pinch Protection Feature . . . . .	62
Sunroof Maintenance . . . . .	63

**HOOD . . . . .63**

Opening The Hood . . . . .	63
Closing The Hood . . . . .	63

**LIFTGATE . . . . .64**

Opening . . . . .	64
Closing . . . . .	64
Cargo Area Features . . . . .	64

**UNIVERSAL GARAGE DOOR****OPENER (HomeLink) . . . . .66**

Before You Begin Programming HomeLink . . . . .	66
Programming A Rolling Code . . . . .	66
Programming A Non-Rolling Code . . . . .	67
Using HomeLink . . . . .	68

**INTERNAL EQUIPMENT . . . . .68**

Power Outlets . . . . .	68
Power Inverter . . . . .	71
Wireless Charging Pad — If Equipped . . . . .	71

## KEYS

### Key Fob

The key fob allows you to lock or unlock the doors and liftgate from distances up to approximately 66ft (20m) using a handheld key fob. The key fob does not need to be pointed at the vehicle to activate the system.

- This feature allows the driver to operate the ignition switch with the push of a button as long as the key fob is in the passenger compartment.
- The Keyless Push Button Ignition has three operating positions which are labeled and will illuminate when in position. The three positions are: OFF, ACC, and ON/RUN. During start, RUN will illuminate.

#### NOTE:

In case the ignition switch does not change with the push of a button, the key fob may have a low or dead battery. In this situation, a back up method can be used to operate the ignition switch. Put the nose side (side opposite of the emergency key) of the key fob against the ENGINE START/STOP button and push to operate the ignition switch.



Key Fob

- 1 — Liftgate
- 2 — Unlock
- 3 — Lock
- 4 — Remote Start
- 5 — Panic

#### NOTE:

In case the ignition switch does not change with the push of a button, the key fob may have a low or dead battery. In this situation, a backup method can be used to operate the ignition switch. Put the nose side of the key fob (side opposite of the Emergency Key) against the ENGINE START/STOP button and push to operate the ignition switch.

#### To Unlock The Doors And Liftgate

Push and release the unlock button on the key fob once to unlock the driver's door or twice within five seconds to unlock all doors and the liftgate.

All doors can be programmed to unlock on the first push of the unlock button. Refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Multimedia" in your Owner's Manual at [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/) for further information.

#### To Lock The Doors And Liftgate

Push and release the lock button on the key fob to lock all doors and liftgate.



### Vehicles Equipped With Keyless Enter-N-Go — Passive Entry

If one or more doors are open, or the liftgate is open, the doors will lock. The doors will unlock again automatically if the key is left inside the passenger compartment, otherwise the doors will stay locked.

#### Request For Additional Key Fobs

##### NOTE:

Only key fobs that are programmed to the vehicle electronics can be used to start and operate the vehicle. Once a key fob is programmed to a vehicle, it cannot be programmed to any other vehicle.

#### WARNING!

- Always remove the key fobs from the vehicle and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle unattended.
- For vehicles equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go — Ignition, always remember to place the ignition in the OFF mode.

Duplication of key fobs may be performed at an authorized dealer. This procedure consists of programming a blank key fob to the vehicle electronics. A blank key fob is one that has never been programmed.

##### NOTE:

When having the Sentry Key Immobilizer System serviced, bring all vehicle keys with you to an authorized dealer.

#### General Information

The following regulatory statement applies to all radio frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

##### NOTE:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

## IGNITION SWITCH

### Keyless Enter-N-Go — Ignition

This feature allows the driver to operate the ignition switch with the push of a button as long as the key fob is in the passenger compartment.

The push button ignition has three operating modes. The three modes are OFF, ACC, and RUN.

##### NOTE:

If the ignition switch does not change with the push of a button, the key fob may have a low or dead battery. In this situation, a back up method can be used to operate the ignition switch. Put the nose side (side opposite of the emergency key) of the key fob against the ENGINE START/STOP button and push to operate the ignition switch.





**START/STOP Ignition Button**

The push button ignition can be placed in the following modes:

#### **OFF**

- The engine is stopped.
- Some electrical devices (e.g. Central locking, alarm, etc.) are still available.

#### **ACC**

- Engine is not started.
- Some electrical devices are available.

#### **RUN**

- Driving position.
- All the electrical devices are available.

#### **NOTE:**

The vehicle will not start if the key fob is located inside the cargo area and the liftgate is opened.

#### **WARNING!**

- When exiting the vehicle, always remove the key fob from the vehicle and lock your vehicle.
- Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle.
- Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the gear selector.
- Do not leave the key fob in or near the vehicle, or in a location accessible to children, and do not leave the ignition of a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go in the ON/RUN mode. A child

#### **WARNING!**

could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.

- Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat build-up may cause serious injury or death.

#### **CAUTION!**

An unlocked vehicle is an invitation for thieves. Always remove key fob from the vehicle and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle unattended.

#### **NOTE:**

For further information, refer to "Starting The Engine" in "Starting And Operating."



## REMOTE STARTING SYSTEM – IF EQUIPPED

- Push the remote start button on the key fob twice within five seconds. Pushing the remote start button a third time shuts the engine off.
- To drive the vehicle, push the START/STOP button to turn the ignition to the ON/RUN mode.
- With remote start, the engine will only run for 15 minutes (timeout) unless the ignition is placed in the ON/RUN mode.
- The vehicle must be started with the key after two consecutive timeouts.

### General Information

The following regulatory statement applies to all radio frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and

2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### NOTE:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

## SENTRY KEY

The Sentry Key Immobilizer system prevents unauthorized vehicle operation by disabling the engine. The system does not need to be armed or activated. Operation is automatic, regardless of whether the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

### CAUTION!

The Sentry Key Immobilizer system is not compatible with some aftermarket remote starting systems. Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and loss of security protection.

All of the key fobs provided with your new vehicle have been programmed to the vehicle electronics.

### General Information

The following regulatory statement applies to all radio frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### NOTE:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

## Irregular Operation

The system uses a key fob, an Ignition Node Module, Keyless Push Button Ignition and a RF receiver to prevent unauthorized vehicle operation. Therefore, only key fobs that are programmed to the vehicle can be used to start and operate the vehicle. The system will not allow the engine to crank if an invalid key fob is used to start and operate the vehicle. The system will shut the engine off in two seconds if an invalid key fob is used to start the engine.

### NOTE:

A key fob that has not been programmed is also considered an invalid key.

During normal operation, after placing the keyless ignition in the ON/RUN mode, the Vehicle Security Light will turn on for three seconds for a bulb check. If the light remains on after the bulb check, it indicates that there is a problem with the electronics. In addition, if the light begins to flash after the bulb check, it indicates that someone used an invalid key fob to try to start the engine. Either of these conditions will result in the engine being shut off after two seconds.

If the Vehicle Security Light turns on during normal vehicle operation (vehicle running for longer than 10 seconds), it indicates that there is a fault in the electronics. Should this occur, have the vehicle serviced as soon as possible by an authorized dealer.

## VEHICLE SECURITY ALARM — IF EQUIPPED

The vehicle security alarm monitors the vehicle doors, hood, liftgate, and the Keyless Enter-N-Go — Ignition for unauthorized operation. While the vehicle security alarm is armed, interior switches for door locks and liftgate release are disabled. If something triggers the alarm, the vehicle security alarm will provide the following audible and visible signals:

- The horn will pulse
- The turn signals will flash
- The vehicle security light in the instrument cluster will flash

## To Arm The System

Follow these steps to arm the vehicle security alarm:

1. Make sure the vehicle's ignition is placed in the "OFF" mode.
  - For vehicles equipped with Keyless Entry, make sure the vehicle's keyless ignition system is OFF.
2. Perform one of the following methods to lock the vehicle:
  - Push the lock button on the interior power door lock switch with the driver and/or passenger door open.
  - Push the lock button on the exterior Passive Entry Door Handle with a valid key fob available in the same exterior zone, refer to "Doors" in "Getting To Know Your Vehicle" in your Owner's manual at [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/) for further information.
  - Push the lock button on the exterior Passive Entry Door Handle with a valid key fob available in the same exterior zone.
  - Push the lock button on the key fob.
3. If any doors are open, close them.



## To Disarm The System

The vehicle security alarm can be disarmed using any of the following methods:

- Push the unlock button on the key fob.
- Grasp the passive entry door handle to unlock the door, refer to "Doors" in "Getting To Know Your Vehicle" in your Owner's Manual at [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/) for further information.
- Cycle the ignition out of the off mode to disarm the system.

### NOTE:

- The driver's door key cylinder and the liftgate button on the key fob cannot arm or disarm the vehicle security alarm.
- The vehicle security alarm remains armed during power liftgate entry. Pushing the liftgate button will not disarm the vehicle security alarm. If someone enters the vehicle through the liftgate and opens any door, the alarm will sound.

- When the vehicle security alarm is armed, the interior power door lock switches will not unlock the doors.

The vehicle security alarm is designed to protect your vehicle. However, you can create conditions where the system will give you a false alarm. If one of the previously described arming sequences has occurred, the vehicle security alarm will arm regardless of whether you are in the vehicle or not. If you remain in the vehicle and open a door, the alarm will sound. If this occurs, disarm the vehicle security alarm.

If the vehicle security alarm is armed and the battery becomes disconnected, the vehicle security alarm will remain armed when the battery is reconnected; the exterior lights will flash, and the horn will sound. If this occurs, disarm the vehicle security alarm.

## DOORS

### Manual Door Locks

To lock each door, rotate the door lock knob on each door trim panel rearward until the red area is hidden. To unlock the front doors, pull the inside door handle to the first detent or rotate the door lock button until the red indicator is visible. To unlock the rear doors, rotate the door lock button until the red indicator is visible.

If the door lock button is locked (red indicator hidden) when you shut the door, the door will lock. Therefore, make sure the key fob is not inside the vehicle before closing the door.

### NOTE:

The manual door locks will not lock or unlock the liftgate.



### Lock Knob In Unlocked Position

- 1 — Indicates Door is Unlocked
- 2 — Door Lock Knob

### WARNING!

- For personal security and safety in the event of a collision, lock the vehicle doors before you drive as well as when you park and exit the vehicle.

### WARNING!

- When exiting the vehicle, always remove the key fob from the vehicle and lock your vehicle. If equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go — Ignition, always make sure the keyless ignition node is in “OFF” mode, remove the key fob from the vehicle and lock the vehicle. Unsupervised use of vehicle equipment may cause severe personal injuries or death.
- Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the gear selector.
- Do not leave the key fob in or near the vehicle, or in a location accessible to children, and do not leave the ignition of a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go — Ignition the ACC or ON/RUN mode. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.

### Power Door Locks

The power door lock switches are located on each front door panel. Push the switch to lock or unlock the doors.

### NOTE:

The key fob may not be able to be detected by the vehicle keyless-go system if it is located next to a mobile phone, laptop or other electronic device; these devices may block the key fob's wireless signal and prevent the keyless-go system from starting the vehicle.





**Power Door Lock Switches**

- 1 — Power Door Unlock Switch
- 2 — Power Door Lock Switch

The driver's door will unlock automatically if the keys are found inside the car when door lock button on trim is used to lock the door. At the third attempt, the doors will lock even if the key is inside.

If the door lock switch is pushed while the ignition is in ACC or ON/RUN and the driver's door is open, the doors will not lock.

If a rear door is locked, it cannot be opened from inside the vehicle without first unlocking the door. The door may be unlocked manually by raising the lock knob.

### Keyless Enter-N-Go — Passive Entry

The Passive Entry system is an enhancement to the vehicle's Remote Keyless Entry system and a feature of Keyless Enter-N-Go — Passive Entry. This feature allows you to lock and unlock the vehicle's door(s) and fuel door without having to push the key fob lock or unlock buttons.

### To Unlock From The Driver's Side

With a valid Passive Entry key fob within 5ft (1.5m) of the driver's door handle, grab the front driver door handle to unlock the driver's door automatically.



**Grab The Door Handle To Unlock**

### NOTE:

If "Unlock All Doors 1st Press" is programmed, all doors will unlock when you grab hold of the front driver's door handle. To select between "Unlock Driver Door 1st Push" and "Unlock All Doors 1st Press," refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Multimedia" in the Owner's Manual on [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals) for further information.

## To Unlock From The Passenger Side

With a valid Passive Entry key fob within 5ft (1.5m) of the passenger door handle, grab the front passenger door handle to unlock all four doors and the liftgate automatically.

### NOTE:

All doors will unlock when the front passenger door handle is grabbed regardless of the driver's door unlock preference setting ("Unlock Driver Door 1st Press" or "Unlock All Doors 1st Press").

## Preventing Inadvertent Locking Of Passive Entry Key Fob In Vehicle (FOBIK-Safe)

To minimize the possibility of unintentionally locking a Passive Entry key fob inside your vehicle, the Passive Entry system is equipped with an automatic door unlock feature which will function if the ignition is OFF.

FOBIK-Safe only executes in vehicles with passive entry. There are three situations that trigger a FOBIK-Safe search in any passive entry vehicle:

- A lock request is made by a valid Passive Entry key fob while a door is open.
- A lock request is made by the Passive Entry door handle while a door is open.
- A lock request is made by the door panel switch while the door is open.

When any of these situations occur, after all open doors are shut, the FOBIK-Safe search will be executed. If it finds a Passive Entry key fob inside the car, the car will unlock and alert the customer.

### NOTE:

The vehicle will only unlock the doors when a valid Passive Entry key fob is detected inside the vehicle. The vehicle will not unlock the doors when any of the following conditions are true:

- The doors are manually locked using the door lock knobs.
- Three attempts are made to lock the doors using the door panel switch and then close the doors.

## To Unlock/Enter The Liftgate

The liftgate passive entry unlock feature is built into liftgate handle release. With a valid Passive Entry key fob within 5ft (1.5m) of the liftgate, push the electronic liftgate release to open with one fluid motion.

## To Lock The Liftgate

With a valid Passive Entry key fob within 5ft (1.5m) of the liftgate, push the passive entry lock button located to the right of liftgate handle release.



**NOTE:**

The liftgate passive entry lock button will lock all doors and the liftgate. The liftgate unlock feature is built into the electronic liftgate release.



**Electronic Liftgate Release/Liftgate  
Passive Entry Location**

**To Lock The Vehicle's Doors And Liftgate**

With one of the vehicle's Passive Entry key fob within 5ft (1.5m) of the driver or passenger front door handles, push the Passive Entry lock button located on the outside door handle.



**Push The Door Handle Button To Lock**

**NOTE:**

DO NOT grab the door handle, when pushing the door handle lock button. This could unlock the door(s).



**DO NOT Grab The Door Handle  
When Locking**

**NOTE:**

- After pushing the door handle button, you must wait two seconds before you can lock or unlock the doors, using either Passive Entry door handle. This is done to allow you to check if the vehicle is locked by pulling the door handle without the vehicle reacting and unlocking.



- If Passive Entry is disabled using the Uconnect System, the key protection described in "Preventing Inadvertent Locking of Passive Entry key fob in Vehicle" remains active/functional.
- The Passive Entry system will not operate if the key fob battery is dead.

The vehicle doors can also be locked by using the lock button located on the vehicle's interior door panel.

### General Information

The following regulatory statement applies to all Radio Frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### NOTE:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

### Locking The Doors With One Or More Doors Open

If the door lock switch is pushed while the ignition is in ACC or ON/RUN and the driver's door is open, the doors will not lock.

### Auto Relocking

The auto door lock feature default condition is enabled. When enabled, the door locks will lock automatically when the vehicle's speed exceeds 15 mph (24 km/h). The auto door lock feature can be enabled or disabled by your authorized dealer. The auto door lock feature is enabled/disabled in the Uconnect Settings.

### Child-Protection Door Lock System — Rear Doors

To provide a safer environment for small children riding in the rear seats, the rear doors are equipped with a Child-Protection Door Lock system.

To use the system, open each rear door, use a flat blade screwdriver (or emergency key) and rotate the dial to the lock or unlock position. When the system on a door is engaged, that door can only be opened by using the outside door handle even if the inside door lock is in the unlocked position.



Child-Protection Door Lock Function

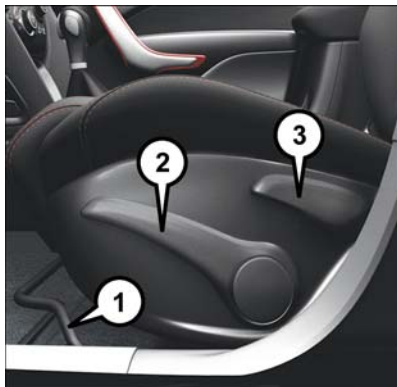


## SEATS

### Manual Seat Adjustment

#### Manual Front Seat Forward/Rearward Adjustment

On models equipped with manual seats, the adjusting bar is located at the front of the seats, near the floor.



Manual Seat Adjustment

- 1 — Forward/Rearward Adjusting Bar
- 2 — Height Adjustment
- 3 — Recliner Lever

While sitting in the seat, lift up on the bar and move the seat forward or rearward. Release the bar once you have reached the desired position. Then, using body pressure, move forward and rearward on the seat to be sure that the seat adjusters have latched.

### WARNING!

- Adjusting a seat while driving may be dangerous. Moving a seat while driving could result in loss of control which could cause a collision and serious injury or death.
- Seats should be adjusted before fastening the seat belts and while the vehicle is parked. Serious injury or death could result from a poorly adjusted seat belt.

#### Manual Seat Height Adjustment — If Equipped

The driver's seat height can be raised or lowered by using a lever, located on the outboard side of the seat. Pull upward on the lever to raise the seat height or push downward on the lever to lower the seat height.

## Manual Recline

To adjust the seatback, lift the lever located on the outboard side of the seat, lean back to the desired position and release the lever. To return the seatback, lift the lever, lean forward and release the lever.

### WARNING!

Do not ride with the seatback reclined so that the shoulder belt is no longer resting against your chest. In a collision, you could slide under the seat belt, which could result in serious injury or death.

## Power Adjustment Front — If Equipped

Some models may be equipped with a power driver's seat. The power seat switch is located on the outboard side of the seat near the floor. Use the switch to move the seat up, down, forward or rearward.



Power Seat Switches

- 1 — Power Seat Switch
- 2 — Recline Switch
- 3 — Power Lumbar Switch

## Reclining The Seatback Forward Or Rearward

The seatback can be reclined both forward and rearward. Push the seat recliner switch forward or rearward. The seatback will move in the direction of the switch. Release the switch when the desired position has been reached.

### WARNING!

Do not ride with the seatback reclined so that the shoulder belt is no longer resting against your chest. In a collision, you could slide under the seat belt, which could result in serious injury or death.

## Power Lumbar — If Equipped

Vehicles equipped with power driver or passenger seats may be equipped with power lumbar. The power lumbar switch is located on the outboard side of the power seat. Push the switch forward or rearward to increase or decrease the lumbar support. Push the switch upward or downward to raise or lower the lumbar support.



## Manual Adjustment Rear

### Rear Seat Forward/Rearward Adjustment — If Equipped

Lift up on the adjusting bar located at the front of the seat near the floor and release it when the seat is at the desired position. Then, using body pressure, move forward and rearward on the seat to be sure that the seat adjusters have latched.



Rear Seat Adjustment Bar

## Recliner Adjustment

The rear seatback also reclines for additional passenger comfort. Pull on the pull strap while sitting in the rear seat to recline the seatback.

### WARNING!

Do not ride with the seatback reclined so that the shoulder belt is no longer resting against your chest. In a collision, you could slide under the seat belt, which could result in serious injury or death.

## Memory Seat

The memory seat feature allows you to save two different driver seating positions, driver's outside mirror, and radio station preset settings. The memory seat buttons are located on the driver's door panel.



Memory Seat Buttons

### To set a memory position:

1. Place the vehicle's ignition in the ON mode.
2. Adjust all memory profile settings.
3. Push and release the S (set) button.
4. Push and release memory button (1) or (2) within five seconds.

## NOTE:

Before programming your key fob you must select the “Linking And Unlinking The Remote Keyless Entry Key Fob To Memory” feature through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in the Owner's Manual on [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/) for further details.

### To program a key fob to the memory position:

1. Cycle the vehicle's ignition to the OFF position.
2. Select the desired memory profile 1 or 2.
3. Push and release the S (set) button on the memory switch, then within five seconds push and release memory button (1) or (2) accordingly.
4. Push and release the lock button on the key fob within 10 seconds.

To recall the saved positions, push memory button (1) or (2), or push unlock on the programmed key fob.

## Easy Entry/Exit Feature

The memory seat has an Easy Entry/Exit feature. This feature provides automatic driver seat positioning to enhance driver mobility when entering and exiting the vehicle.




### NOTE:

The Easy Entry/Exit feature is not enabled when the vehicle is delivered from the factory. To enable (or later disable) this feature you must select “Easy Exit Seats” in “Engine Off Options” through the programmable features in the Uconnect system. For further details refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in the Owner's Manual on [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/) for further details.

## Heated/Ventilated Seats

### Front Heated Seats

If your vehicle is equipped with front heated seats, the control buttons are located within the Uconnect system. You can gain access to the control buttons through the climate screen or the controls screen.

- Press the heated seat button  once to turn the HI setting ON.
- Press the heated seat button  a second time to turn the LO setting ON.
- Press the heated seat button  a third time to turn the heating elements OFF.

If the HI-level setting is selected, the system will automatically switch to LO-level after approximately 60 minutes of continuous operation. At that time, the display will change from HI to LO, indicating the change. The LO-level setting will turn OFF automatically after approximately 45 minutes.

### NOTE:

The engine must be running for the heated seats to operate.

## Vehicles Equipped With Remote Start

On models that are equipped with remote start, the heated seats can be programmed to come on during a remote start.

This feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in the Owner's Manual on [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/) for further details.






**WARNING!**

- Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical condition must exercise care when using the seat heater. It may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time.
- Do not place anything on the seat or seatback that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This may cause the seat heater to overheat. Sitting in a seat that has been overheated could cause serious burns due to the increased surface temperature of the seat.

**Front Ventilated Seats**

If your vehicle is equipped with ventilated seats, the seat cushion and seat back will have fans that draw the air from the passenger compartment and move air through fine perforations in the seat cover to help keep the driver and front passenger cooler in higher ambient temperatures. The fans operate at two speeds, HI and LO.

The front ventilated seats control buttons are located within the Uconnect system. You can gain access to the control buttons through the climate screen or the controls screen.

- Press the ventilated seat button  once to choose HI.
- Press the ventilated seat button  a second time to choose LO.
- Press the ventilated seat button  a third time to turn the ventilated seat OFF.

**NOTE:**

The engine must be running for the ventilated seats to operate.

**Vehicles Equipped With Remote Start**

On models that are equipped with remote start, the ventilated seats can be programmed to come on during a remote start.

This feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in the Owner’s Manual on [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/) for further details.

**HEAD RESTRAINTS**

Head restraints are designed to reduce the risk of injury by restricting head movement in the event of a rear impact. Head restraints should be adjusted so that the top of the head restraint is located above the top of your ear.

**WARNING!**

- All occupants, including the driver, should not operate a vehicle or sit in a vehicle’s seat until the head restraints are placed in their proper positions in order to minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.

## WARNING!

- Head restraints should never be adjusted while the vehicle is in motion. Driving a vehicle with the head restraints improperly adjusted or removed could cause serious injury or death in the event of a collision.

### NOTE:

Do not reverse the head restraints (making the rear of the head restraint face forward) in an attempt to gain additional clearance to the back of your head.

### Front Adjustment

The front driver and passenger seats are equipped with Reactive Head Restraints (RHR). In the event of a rear impact, the RHRs will automatically extend forward minimizing the gap between the back of the occupant's head and the RHR.

The RHRs will automatically return to their normal position following a rear impact. If the RHRs do not return to their normal position, see your authorized dealer immediately.

To raise the head restraint, pull upward on the head restraint. To lower the head restraint, push the adjustment button, located at the base of the head restraint, and push downward on the head restraint.



Front Head Restraint

- 1— Adjustment Button  
2— Release Button

## WARNING!

- A loose head restraint thrown forward in a collision or hard stop could cause serious injury or death to occupants of the vehicle. Always securely stow removed head restraints in a location outside the occupant compartment.
- ALL the head restraints MUST be re-installed in the vehicle to properly protect the occupants. Follow the re-installation instructions above prior to operating the vehicle or occupying a seat.
- Do not place items over the top of the Reactive Head Restraint, such as coats, seat covers or portable DVD players. These items may interfere with the operation of the Reactive Head Restraint in the event of a collision and could result in serious injury or death.

### Front Removal

To remove the head restraint, raise it as far as it can go. Then, push the release button and the adjustment button at the base of each post while pulling the head restraint up. Seat-back angle may need to be adjusted to fully



remove the head restraint. To reinstall the head restraint, put the head restraint posts into the holes and push downward. Then, adjust the head restraint to the appropriate height.

### WARNING!

- All occupants, including the driver, should not operate a vehicle or sit in a vehicle's seat until the head restraints are placed in their proper positions in order to minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision.
- Do not place items over the top of the Active Head Restraint, such as coats, seat covers or portable DVD players. These items may interfere with the operation of the Active Head Restraint in the event of a collision and could result in serious injury or death.
- Active Head Restraints may be deployed if they are struck by an object such as a hand, foot or loose cargo. To avoid accidental deployment of the Active Head Restraint ensure that all cargo is secured, as loose cargo could contact the

### WARNING!

Active Head Restraint during sudden stops. Failure to follow this warning could cause personal injury if the Active Head Restraint is deployed.

### Rear Adjustment

The rear outboard head restraints have three positions up, mid and down. The center head restraint has only two positions, up and down. When the center seat is being occupied, the head restraint should be in the raised position. When there is no occupant in the center seat, the head restraint can be lowered for maximum visibility for the driver.

To raise the head restraint, pull upward on the head restraint. To lower the head restraint, push the adjustment button, located at the base of the head restraint, and push downward on the head restraint.



**Outboard Head Restraint**

- 1 — Release Button  
2 — Adjustment Button





**Front Head Restraint**

- 1— Adjustment Button
- 2— Release Button

### **WARNING!**

Sitting in a seat with the head restraint in its lowered position could result in serious injury or death in a collision. Always make sure the outboard head restraints are in their upright positions when the seat is to be occupied.

### **NOTE:**

For proper routing of a Child Seat Tether, refer to “Occupant Restraint Systems” in “Safety” for further information.

### **Rear Removal**

To remove the head restraint, raise it as far as it can go. Then, push the release button and the adjustment button at the base of each post while pulling the head restraint up. To reinstall the head restraint, put the head restraint posts into the holes and push downward. Then, adjust the head restraint to the appropriate height.

### **WARNING!**

ALL the head restraints **MUST** be reinstalled in the vehicle to properly protect the occupants. Follow the re-installation instructions above prior to operating the vehicle or occupying a seat.

## **STEERING WHEEL**

### **Adjustment**

This feature allows you to tilt the steering column upward or downward. It also allows you to lengthen or shorten the steering column. The tilt/telescoping lever is located below the steering wheel at the end of the steering column.



**Tilt/Telescoping Lever**



To unlock the steering column, push the control handle downward (toward the floor). To tilt the steering column, move the steering wheel upward or downward as desired. To lengthen or shorten the steering column, pull the steering wheel outward or push it inward as desired. To lock the steering column in position, push the control handle upward until fully engaged.

### WARNING!



Do not adjust the steering column while driving. Adjusting the steering column while driving or driving with the steering column unlocked, could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle. Failure to follow this warning may result in serious injury or death.

### Heated Steering Wheel

If your vehicle is equipped with a heated steering wheel, it contains a heating element that will keep your hands warm in cold weather.

The heated steering wheel has only one temperature setting. Once the heated steering wheel has been turned on, it can operate for an average of 80 minutes or more before automatically shutting off. This time may vary depending on environmental temperatures. The heated steering wheel can shut off early or may not turn on when the steering wheel is already warm.

The heated steering wheel control button is located within the Uconnect system. You can gain access to the control button through the climate screen or the controls screen.

- Press the heated steering wheel button  once to turn the heating element on.
- Press the heated steering wheel button  a second time to turn the heating element off.

### NOTE:

The engine must be running for the heated steering wheel to operate.

### Vehicles Equipped With Remote Start

On models that are equipped with remote start, the heated steering wheel can be programmed to come on during a remote start through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in the Owner’s Manual on [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/) for further details.

### WARNING!

- Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion, or other physical conditions must exercise care when using the steering wheel heater. It may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods.
- Do not place anything on the steering wheel that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or steering wheel covers of any type and material. This may cause the steering wheel heater to overheat.

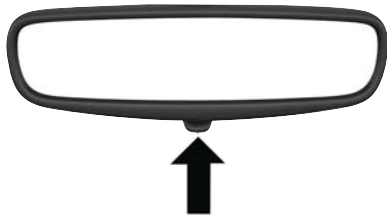
# MIRRORS

## Interior Mirrors

### Manual Mirror

The mirror head can be adjusted up, down, left, and right for various drivers. The mirror should be adjusted to center on the view through the rear window.

Headlight glare from vehicles behind you can be reduced by moving the small control under the mirror to the night position (toward the rear of the vehicle). The mirror should be adjusted while set in the day position (toward the windshield).



Adjusting Rearview Mirror

### Electrochromic Mirror

A single ball joint mirror is provided in the vehicle. It is a twist on mirror that has a fixed position at the windshield. The mirror installs on the windshield with a counter-clockwise rotation and requires no tools for mounting. The mirror head can be adjusted up, down, left, and right for various drivers. The mirror should be adjusted to center on the view through the rear window.



Electrochromic Mirror

### NOTE:

The automatic dimming feature is disabled when the vehicle is in REVERSE to improve rear view viewing.

The automatic dimming feature can be turned on or off through the touchscreen.

- Press the mirror dimmer button once to turn the feature on.
- Press the mirror dimmer button a second time to turn the feature off.

### CAUTION!

To avoid damage to the mirror during cleaning, never spray any cleaning solution directly onto the mirror. Apply the solution onto a clean cloth and wipe the mirror clean.



## Exterior Mirrors

### Power Mirrors

The power mirror switches are located on the driver's door trim panel.

To receive maximum benefit, adjust the outside mirror(s) to center on the adjacent lane of traffic and a slight overlap of the view obtained from the inside mirror.



**Power Mirror Switches**

- 1 — Mirror Direction Control
- 2 — Left And Right Mirror Select

#### NOTE:

The passenger side convex outside mirror will give a much wider view to the rear, and especially of the lane next to your vehicle.

### WARNING!

Vehicles and other objects seen in an outside convex mirror will look smaller and farther away than they really are. Relying too much on side convex mirrors could cause you to collide with another vehicle or other object. Use your inside mirror when judging the size or distance of a vehicle seen in a side convex mirror.

### Power Folding Mirrors — If Equipped

If equipped, the switch for the power folding mirrors is located between the power mirror switches L (left) and R (right). Push the switch once and the mirrors will fold in. Pushing the switch a second time will return the mirrors to the normal driving position.

#### NOTE:

If the vehicle speed is greater than 10 mph (16 km/h), the folding feature will be disabled.

If the mirrors are in the folded position, and the vehicle speed is equal or greater than 10 mph (16 km/h), they will automatically unfold.

## Resetting The Power Folding Outside Mirrors

To reset the power folding mirrors: Fold and unfold them by pushing the button (this may require multiple button pushes). This resets them to their normal position.

## Heated Mirrors — If Equipped

These mirrors are heated to melt frost or ice. This feature will be activated whenever you turn on the rear window defroster. Refer to “Climate Controls” in this chapter for further information.

# EXTERIOR LIGHTS

## Headlight Switch





Headlight Switch

- 1 — Rotate Headlight
- 2 — Push Fog Light Switch
- 3 — Ambient Light Dimmer
- 4 — Instrument Panel Dimmer

## Headlights

The headlight switch is located on the instrument panel to the left of the steering wheel.

Rotate the headlight switch to the first detent  for parking lights and to the second detent  for headlights.

## Daytime Running Lights (DRL) — If Equipped

The Daytime Running Lights will turn on when the engine is started and remain on unless the headlamps are turned on, the parking brake is applied, or the engine is shut off.

### NOTE:

If allowed by law in the country in which the vehicle was purchased, the Daytime Running Lights can be turned on and off using the Uconnect System, refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in the Owner’s Manual on [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/) for further details.



## High Beams



Push the multifunction lever toward the instrument panel to switch the headlights to high beams. Pulling the multifunction back toward the steering wheel will turn the low beams back on, or shut the high beams off.

## Flash-To-Pass

You can signal another vehicle with your headlights by lightly pulling the multifunction lever toward you. This will cause the headlights to turn on at high beam and remain on until the lever is released.

## Automatic Lighting

The Automatic High Beams system provides increased forward lighting at night by automating high beam control through the use of a digital camera mounted above the inside rearview mirror. This camera detects vehicle specific light and automatically switches from high beams to low beams until the approaching vehicle is out of view. This feature is programmable through the Uconnect

system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in the Owner’s Manual on [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/) for further details.

The headlight switch is located on the instrument panel to the left of the steering wheel.

When set to AUTO, the system automatically turns the headlights on or off based on ambient light levels.

## Parking Lights



Rotate the headlight switch clockwise to the first detent for parking light and instrument panel light operation. Rotate the headlight switch to the second detent for headlight, parking light and instrument panel light operation.

## Headlight Delay

This feature provides the safety of headlight illumination for up to 90 seconds (programmable) when leaving your vehicle in an unlit area.

To activate the delay feature, place the ignition in the OFF position while the headlights are still on. Then, turn off the headlights within 45 seconds. The delay interval begins when the headlight switch is turned off.

If you turn the headlights or parking lights on, or place the ignition in ACC or RUN, the system will cancel the delay.

If you turn the headlights off before the ignition, they will turn off in the normal manner.

### NOTE:

- The lights must be turned off within 45 seconds of placing the ignition in the OFF position to activate this feature.
- The headlight delay time is programmable using the Uconnect System, refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in the Owner’s Manual on [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/) for further details.

## Front Fog Lights



The front fog light switch is built into the headlight switch.

To activate the front fog lights, turn on the parking lights or the low beam headlights and push the headlight switch. To turn off the front fog lights, either push the headlight switch a second time or turn off the headlight switch.

An indicator light in the instrument cluster display illuminates when the fog lights are turned on.

### NOTE:

The fog lights will operate with the low beam headlights or parking lights on. However, selecting the high beam headlights will turn off the fog lights.

## Turn Signals



Move the multifunction lever up or down and the arrows on each side of the instrument cluster display flash to show proper operation of the front and rear turn signal lights.

### NOTE:

- If either light remains on and does not flash, or there is a very fast flash rate, check for a defective outside light bulb. If an indicator fails to light when the lever is moved, it would suggest that the indicator bulb is defective.
- When the Daytime Running Lights are on and a turn signal is activated, the Daytime Running Lamp will turn off on the side of the vehicle in which the turn signal is flashing. The Daytime Running Lamp will turn back on when the turn signal is turned off.

## Lane Change Assist

Tap the lever up or down once, without moving beyond the detent, and the turn signal (right or left) will flash three times. Then, automatically turn off.

## INTERIOR LIGHTS

### Courtesy Interior Lights

There are courtesy lights located above the front seats. The courtesy lights can be turned on by pushing the lens. To turn the lights off, push the lens a second time.

The front map/reading lights are mounted in the overhead console. Each light can be turned on by pushing a switch on either side of the console. To turn the lights off, push the switch a second time. These lights also turn on when a door is opened, or when the unlock button on the key fob is pushed, or when the dimmer control is turned completely upward to the second detent.



### Instrument Panel Dimmer Control

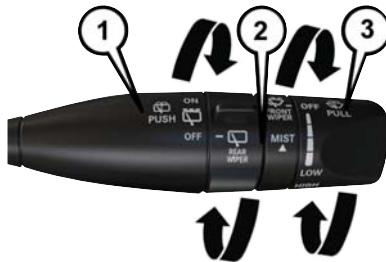
The instrument panel dimmer control is part of the headlight switch and is located on the driver's side of the instrument panel.



Instrument Panel Dimmer

With the parking lights or headlights on, rotating the instrument panel dimmer control upward will increase the brightness of the instrument panel lights and lighted cupholders — if equipped.

## WIPER AND WASHERS



Multifunction Lever

- 1 — Push For Rear Washer
- 2 — Rotate For Rear Wiper
- 3 — Rotate For Front Wiper

### Front Wipers

The windshield wiper/washer controls are located on the multifunction lever on the right side of the steering column. The front wipers

are operated by rotating a switch, located on the end of the lever. For information on the rear wiper/washer, refer to “Rear Wiper” in this section.

### Front Wiper Operation

#### Intermittent, Low And High Operation

Rotate the end of the lever to one of the first four detent positions for intermittent settings, the fifth detent for low wiper operation and the sixth detent for high wiper operation.

### Washer Operation

Pull the lever rearward toward you and hold for as long as spray is desired.

### Mist

Push the lever upward to the Mist position and release for a single wiping cycle.

### NOTE:

The mist feature does not activate the washer pump; therefore, no washer fluid will be sprayed on the windshield. The wash function must be activated in order to spray the windshield with washer fluid.



## Rain Sensing Wipers

This feature senses moisture on the vehicle's windshield and automatically activates the wipers for the driver when the switch is in the intermittent position. The feature is especially useful for road splash or overspray from the windshield washers of the vehicle ahead. Rotate the end of the multifunction lever to one of four settings to activate this feature.

### Automatic Wiping

The sensitivity of the system can be adjusted with the multifunction lever. Wiper delay position one is the least sensitive, and wiper delay position four is the most sensitive. Setting three should be used for normal rain conditions. Settings one and two can be used if the driver desires less wiper sensitivity. Setting four can be used if the driver desires more sensitivity. Place the wiper switch in the OFF position when not using the system.

### NOTE:

- The Rain Sensing feature will not operate when the wiper switch is in the low or high-speed position.
- The Rain Sensing feature may not function properly when ice or dried salt water is present on the windshield.
- Use of Rain-X or products containing wax or silicone may reduce Rain Sensing performance.
- The Rain Sensing feature can be turned on and off using the Uconnect System, refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in the Owner's Manual on [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals) for further details.

The Rain Sensing system has protection features for the wiper blades and arms, and will not operate under the following conditions:

- **Low Ambient Temperature** — When the ignition is first turned ON, the Rain Sensing system will not operate until the wiper switch is moved, vehicle speed is greater than 3 mph (5 km/h), or the outside temperature is greater than 32°F (0°C).

- **Transmission In NEUTRAL Position** — When the ignition is ON, and the automatic transmission is in the NEUTRAL position, the Rain Sensing system will not operate until the wiper switch is moved, vehicle speed is greater than 3 mph (5 km/h), or the gear selector is moved out of the NEUTRAL position.

**Remote Start Mode Inhibit** — On vehicles equipped with Remote Starting system, Rain Sensing wipers are not operational when the vehicle is in the remote start mode. Once the operator is in the vehicle and has placed the ignition switch in the RUN position, rain sensing wiper operation can resume, if it has been selected, and no other inhibit conditions (mentioned previously) exist.



## Rear Wiper

The rear wiper/washer controls are located on the windshield wiper/washer lever on the right side of the steering column. The rear wiper/washer is operated by rotating a switch, located at the middle of the lever.

### Rear Wiper Operation

Rotate the center portion of the lever upward to the first detent for intermittent operation and to the second detent for continuous rear wiper operation.

### Rear Washer Operation

Push the lever forward and hold while spray is desired. Once the switch is released, it will return to the OFF position and the wipers will cycle several times before returning to the parked position.

## CLIMATE CONTROLS


### Manual Climate Control Without A Touchscreen Overview

The controls for the manual heating and air conditioning system in this vehicle consist of a series of outer rotary dials and inner push knobs. These comfort controls can be set to obtain desired interior conditions.












Manual Climate Controls Without A Touchscreen

### Manual Climate Control Without A Touchscreen Descriptions


Icon	Description
	<p><b>Blower Control</b> Use this control to regulate the amount of air forced through the system in any mode you select. The blower speed increases as you move the control clockwise from the off position.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Depending on the configuration, your vehicle may be equipped with four blower speeds.</p>



Icon	Description
	<p><b>Temperature Control</b></p> <p>Use this control to regulate the temperature of the air inside the passenger compartment. Rotating the knob counter-clockwise, from top center into the blue area of the scale, indicates cooler temperatures. Rotating the knob clockwise, into the red area, indicates warmer temperatures.</p>
	<p><b>Modes Control Knob</b></p> <p>Turn the knob to adjust airflow distribution. The airflow distribution mode can be adjusted so air comes from the instrument panel outlets, floor outlets, defrost outlets and demist outlets.</p>
<p><b>Panel Mode</b></p> 	<p><b>Panel Mode</b></p> <p>Air comes from the outlets in the instrument panel. Each of these outlets can be individually adjusted to direct the flow of air. The air vanes of the center outlets and outboard outlets can be moved up and down or side to side to regulate airflow direction. There is a shut off wheel located below the air vanes to shut off or adjust the amount of airflow from these outlets.</p>
<p><b>Bi-Level Mode</b></p> 	<p><b>Bi-Level Mode</b></p> <p>Air comes from the instrument panel outlets and floor outlets. A slight amount of air is directed through the defrost and side window demister outlets.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> BI-LEVEL mode is designed under comfort conditions to provide cooler air out of the panel outlets and warmer air from the floor outlets.</p>
<p><b>Floor Mode</b></p> 	<p><b>Floor Mode</b></p> <p>Air comes from the floor outlets. A slight amount of air is directed through the defrost and side window demister outlets.</p>

Icon	Description
<p><b>Mix Mode</b></p> 	<p><b>Mix Mode</b> Air is directed through the floor, defrost, and side window demister outlets. This setting works best in cold or snowy conditions that require extra heat to the windshield. This setting is good for maintaining comfort while reducing moisture on the windshield.</p>
	<p><b>A/C Button</b> Push the A/C button to engage the Air Conditioning (A/C). A LED will illuminate when the A/C system is engaged.</p>
	<p><b>Recirculation Button</b> Push and release this button to change the system between recirculation mode and outside air mode. Recirculation can be used when outside conditions such as smoke, odors, dust, or high humidity are present.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Continuous use of the Recirculation mode may make the inside air stuffy and window fogging may occur. Extended use of this mode is not recommended.</li> <li>• The use of the Recirculation mode in cold or damp weather could cause windows to fog on the inside, because of moisture buildup inside the vehicle. Select the outside air position for maximum defogging.</li> <li>• Recirculation can be used in all modes except for Defrost.</li> <li>• The A/C can be deselected manually without disturbing the mode control selection.</li> </ul>
 <p><b>FRONT</b></p>	<p><b>Front Defrost Setting</b> Turn the Mode Control knob to the Front Defrost position. Air comes from the windshield and side window demist outlets. When the defrost setting is selected, the blower level will increase. Use Defrost mode with maximum temperature settings for best windshield and side window defrosting and defogging.</p>



Icon	Description
	<p><b>Rear Defrost Button</b> Push and release the Rear Defrost Control button to turn on the rear window defroster and the heated outside mirrors (if equipped). An indicator will illuminate when the rear window defroster is on. The rear window defroster automatically turns off after ten minutes.</p>

### Economy Mode

If ECONOMY mode is desired, push the A/C button to turn off the LED indicator and the A/C compressor. Rotate the temperature control knob to the desired temperature. Also, make sure to select only Panel, Bi-Level, or Floor modes.

### Stop/Start System — If Equipped

While in an Autostop, the Climate Controls system may automatically adjust airflow to maintain cabin comfort. Customer settings will be maintained upon return to an engine running condition.

### Windshield Wiper De-icer — If Equipped

The windshield wiper de-icer is a heating element located at the base of the windshield.

It operates automatically once the following conditions are met:

#### *Activation By Front Defrost*

- The wiper de-icer activates automatically during a cold weather manual start with **full defrost**, and when the **ambient temperature is below 33° F (0.6° C)**.

#### *Activation By Rear Defrost*

- The wiper de-icer activates automatically when the Rear Defrost is operating and the **ambient temperature is below 33° F (0.6° C)**.

#### *Activation By Remote Start Operation*

- When the Remote Start is activated and the **outside ambient temperature is less than 33° F (0.6° C)** the windshield wiper de-icer is activated. Upon exiting Remote Start, the climate control functions will resume their previous operation except, if the de-icer is active, the de-icer timer and operation will continue.

### CAUTION!

Failure to follow these cautions can cause damage to the heating elements:

- Use care when washing the inside of the rear window. Do not use abrasive window cleaners on the interior surface of the window. Use a soft cloth and a mild washing solution, wiping parallel to the heating elements. Labels can be peeled off after soaking with warm water.
- Do not use scrapers, sharp instruments, or abrasive window cleaners on the interior surface of the window.
- Keep all objects a safe distance from the window.

## Climate Controls With A Touchscreen Overview



5.0 With Manual Temperature Controls





8.4/8.4 NAV With Manual Temperature Controls





**Manual Temperature Faceplate Controls**





5.0 With Automatic Temperature Controls







8.4/8.4 NAV With Automatic Temperature Controls













Automatic Temperature Faceplate Controls

## Climate Control With A Touchscreen Descriptions



Icon	Description
	<p><b>MAX A/C Button</b> Press and release the button on the touchscreen, or push and release the button on the faceplate, to change the current setting, the indicator illuminates when A/C is on.</p>
	<p><b>A/C Button</b> Press and release to change the current setting, the indicator illuminates when A/C is on. Performing this function again will cause the A/C operation to switch into manual mode and the A/C indicator will turn off.</p>
	<p><b>Recirculation Button</b> Press and release this button to change the system between recirculation mode and outside air mode. Recirculation can be used when outside conditions such as smoke, odors, dust, or high humidity are present.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Continuous use of the Recirculation mode may make the inside air stuffy and window fogging may occur. Extended use of this mode is not recommended.</li> <li>• The use of the Recirculation mode in cold or damp weather could cause windows to fog on the inside, because of moisture buildup inside the vehicle. Select the outside air position for maximum defogging.</li> <li>• Recirculation can be used in all modes except for Defrost.</li> <li>• The A/C can be deselected manually without disturbing the mode control selection.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>AUTO Button — If Equipped</b> Automatically controls the interior cabin temperature by adjusting airflow distribution and amount. Performing this function will cause the system to switch between manual mode and automatic modes. Refer to “Automatic Operation” for more information.</p>



Icon	Description
	<p><b>Front Defrost Button</b></p> <p>Press and release the touchscreen button, or push and release the button on the faceplate, to change the current airflow setting to Defrost mode. The indicator illuminates when this feature is on. Air comes from the windshield and side window demist outlets. When the defrost button is selected, the blower level may increase. Use Defrost mode with maximum temperature settings for best windshield and side window defrosting and defogging. When toggling the front defrost mode button, the climate system will return to the previous setting.</p>
	<p><b>Rear Defrost Button</b></p> <p>Push and release the button on the touchscreen, or push and release the button on the faceplate, to turn on the rear window defroster and the heated outside mirrors (if equipped). An indicator will illuminate when the rear window defroster is on. The rear window defroster automatically turns off after ten minutes.</p>
<p>Uconnect 5.0</p>  <p>Uconnect 8.4</p> 	<p><b>Driver and Passenger Temperature Up and Down Buttons</b></p> <p>Provides the driver and passenger with independent temperature control. Push the up arrow button on the faceplate, press the up arrow button on the touchscreen, or press and slide the temperature bar towards the red arrow button on the touchscreen for warmer temperature settings. Push the down arrow button on the faceplate, press the down arrow button on the touchscreen, or press and slide the temperature bar towards the blue arrow button on the touchscreen for cooler temperature settings. When the SYNC feature is active, the passenger's temperature will move up and down with the driver's temperature, when it is increased and decreased, respectively.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The numbers within the temperature display will only appear if the system is equipped with an automatic climate control system.</p>

Icon	Description
<p><b>SYNC</b></p>	<p><b>SYNC Button — If Equipped</b></p> <p>Press the SYNC button on the touchscreen to toggle the SYNC feature on/off. The SYNC indicator is illuminated when this feature is enabled. SYNC is used to synchronize the passenger temperature setting with the driver temperature setting. Changing the passenger's temperature setting while in SYNC will automatically exit this feature.</p>
<p><b>Faceplate Knob</b></p>  <p><b>Touchscreen Buttons</b></p> 	<p><b>Blower Control</b></p> <p>Blower Control is used to regulate the amount of air forced through the climate system. There are seven blower speeds available. Adjusting the blower will cause automatic mode to switch to manual operation. The speeds can be selected using either the blower control knob on the faceplate or the buttons on the touchscreen.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Faceplate:</b> The blower speed increases as you turn the blower control knob clockwise from the lowest blower setting. The blower speed decreases as you turn the blower control knob counterclockwise.</li> <li>• <b>Touchscreen:</b> Use the small blower icon to reduce the blower setting and the large blower icon to increase the blower setting. Blower can also be selected by pressing the blower bar area between the icons.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Panel Mode</b></p> 	<p><b>Panel Mode</b></p> <p>Air comes from the outlets in the instrument panel. Each of these outlets can be individually adjusted to direct the flow of air. The air vanes of the center outlets and outboard outlets can be moved up and down or side to side to regulate airflow direction. There is a shut off wheel located below the air vanes to shut off or adjust the amount of airflow from these outlets.</p>
<p><b>Bi-Level Mode</b></p> 	<p><b>Bi-Level Mode</b></p> <p>Air comes from the instrument panel outlets and floor outlets. A slight amount of air is directed through the defrost and side window demister outlets.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b></p> <p>BI-LEVEL mode is designed under comfort conditions to provide cooler air out of the panel outlets and warmer air from the floor outlets.</p>



Icon	Description
<p><b>Floor Mode</b></p> 	<p><b>Floor Mode</b> Air comes from the floor outlets. A slight amount of air is directed through the defrost and side window demister outlets.</p>
<p><b>Mix Mode</b></p> 	<p><b>Mix Mode</b> Air is directed through the floor, defrost, and side window demister outlets. This setting works best in cold or snowy conditions that require extra heat to the windshield. This setting is good for maintaining comfort while reducing moisture on the windshield.</p>
<p><b>OFF</b></p>	<p><b>Climate Control OFF Button</b> Press and release this button to turn the Climate Controls off.</p>

### CAUTION!

Failure to follow these cautions can cause damage to the heating elements:

- Use care when washing the inside of the rear window. Do not use abrasive window cleaners on the interior surface of the window. Use a soft cloth and a mild washing solution, wiping parallel

### CAUTION!

to the heating elements. Labels can be peeled off after soaking with warm water.

- Do not use scrapers, sharp instruments, or abrasive window cleaners on the interior surface of the window.
- Keep all objects a safe distance from the window.

### Climate Control Functions

#### A/C (Air Conditioning)

The Air Conditioning (A/C) button allows the operator to manually activate or deactivate the air conditioning system. When the air conditioning system is turned on, cool dehumidified air will flow through the outlets into the cabin. For improved fuel economy, press the A/C button to turn off the air conditioning



and manually adjust the blower and airflow mode settings. Also, make sure to select only Panel, Bi-Level, or Floor modes.

#### NOTE:

- If fog or mist appears on the windshield or side glass, select Defrost mode, and increase blower speed if needed.
- If your air conditioning performance seems lower than expected, check the front of the A/C condenser (located in front of the radiator), for an accumulation of dirt or insects. Clean with a gentle water spray from the front of the radiator and through the condenser.

#### MAX A/C

MAX A/C sets the control for maximum cooling performance.

Press and release to toggle between MAX A/C and the prior settings. The button illuminates when MAX A/C is on.

In MAX A/C, the blower level and mode position can be adjusted to desired user settings. Pressing other settings will cause the MAX A/C operation to switch to the selected setting and MAX A/C to exit.

#### Recirculation

When outside air contains smoke, odors, or high humidity, or if rapid cooling is desired, you may wish to recirculate interior air by pressing the Recirculation control button. The Recirculation indicator will illuminate when this button is selected. Press the button a second time to turn off the Recirculation mode and allow outside air into the vehicle.

#### NOTE:

In cold weather, use of Recirculation mode may lead to excessive window fogging. The Recirculation feature may be unavailable (button on the touchscreen greyed out) if conditions exist that could create fogging on the inside of the windshield. On systems with Manual Climate Controls, the Recirculation mode is not allowed in Defrost mode to im-

prove window clearing operation. Recirculation will be disabled automatically if this mode is selected. Attempting to use Recirculation while in this mode will cause the LED in the control button to blink and then turn off.

#### Automatic Temperature Control (ATC) – If Equipped

##### Automatic Operation

1. Push the AUTO button on the faceplate, or the AUTO button on the touchscreen on the Automatic Temperature Control (ATC) Panel.
2. Next, adjust the temperature you would like the system to maintain by adjusting the driver and passenger temperature control buttons. Once the desired temperature is displayed, the system will achieve and automatically maintain that comfort level.
3. When the system is set up for your comfort level, it is not necessary to change the settings. You will experience the greatest efficiency by simply allowing the system to function automatically.



**NOTE:**

- It is not necessary to move the temperature settings for cold or hot vehicles. The system automatically adjusts the temperature, mode, and blower speed to provide comfort as quickly as possible.
- The temperature can be displayed in U.S. or Metric units by selecting the US/Metric customer-programmable feature. Refer to the “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in your Owner’s Manual on [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals) for further information.

To provide you with maximum comfort in the Automatic mode during cold start-ups, the blower fan will remain on low until the engine warms up. The blower will increase in speed and transition into Auto mode.

**Manual Operation Override**

This system offers a full complement of manual override features. The AUTO symbol in the front ATC display will be turned off when the system is being used in the manual mode.

**NOTE:**

The system will not automatically sense the presence of fog, mist or ice on the windshield. Defrost mode must be manually selected to clear the windshield and side glass.

**Operating Tips****NOTE:**

Refer to the chart at the end of this section for suggested control settings for various weather conditions.

**Summer Operation**

The engine cooling system must be protected with a high-quality antifreeze coolant to provide proper corrosion protection and to protect against engine overheating. OAT coolant (conforming to MS.90032) is recommended.

**Winter Operation**

To ensure the best possible heater and defroster performance, make sure the engine cooling system is functioning properly and the proper amount, type, and concentration of coolant is used. Use of the Air Recirculation mode during Winter months is not recommended, because it may cause window fogging.

**Vacation/Storage**

Before you store your vehicle, or keep it out of service (i.e., vacation) for two weeks or more, run the air conditioning system at idle for about five minutes, in fresh air with the blower setting on high. This will ensure adequate system lubrication to minimize the possibility of compressor damage when the system is started again.

## Window Fogging

Vehicle windows tend to fog on the inside in mild, rainy and/or humid weather. To clear the windows, select Defrost or Mix mode and increase the front blower speed. Do not use the Recirculation mode without A/C for long periods, as fogging may occur.

## Outside Air Intake













Make sure the air intake, located directly in front of the windshield, is free of obstructions such as leaves. Leaves collected in the air intake may reduce airflow, and if they enter the plenum, they could plug the water drains. In winter months, make sure the air intake is clear of ice, slush, and snow.

## Cabin Air Filter

The climate control system filters out dust and pollen from the air. Contact your authorized dealer to service your cabin air filter, and to have it replaced when needed.



## Operating Tips Chart

WEATHER	CONTROL SETTINGS
Hot weather and vehicle interior is very hot 	Set the mode control to  ,  on, and blower on high. Roll down the windows for a minute to flush out the hot air. Once comfort is achieved adjust controls for comfort.
Warm weather 	Turn  on and set the mode control to the  position.
Cool Sunny	Operate in  position.
Cool & Humid conditions 	Set the mode control to  and turn on  to keep windows clear.
Cold Weather	Set the mode control to the  position. If windshield fogging starts to occur, move the control towards the  position.

8000cb71

# WINDOWS

## Power Window Controls

The window controls on the driver's door control all the door windows.



**Power Window Switches**

- 1 — Front Power Window Switches
- 2 — Rear Power Window Switches

There are single window controls on each passenger door trim panel, which operate the passenger door windows. The window controls will operate only when the ignition is in the ACC or ON/RUN position.

### WARNING!

Never leave children unattended in a vehicle, and do not let children play with power windows. Do not leave the key fob in or near the vehicle, or in a location accessible to children, and do not leave the ignition of a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. Occupants, particularly unattended children, can become entrapped by the windows while operating the power window switches. Such entrapment may result in serious injury or death.

## Auto-Up Feature With Anti-Pinch Protection

### NOTE:

- If the window runs into any obstacle during auto-closure, it will reverse direction and then go back down. Remove the obstacle and use the window switch again to close the window.
- Any impact due to rough road conditions may trigger the auto-reverse function unexpectedly during auto-closure. If this happens, pull the switch lightly and hold to close the window manually.

### WARNING!

There is no anti-pinch protection when the window is almost closed. To avoid personal injury be sure to clear your arms, hands, fingers and all objects from the window path before closing.



### Reset Auto-Up

Should the Auto-Up feature stop working, the window probably needs to be reset. To reset Auto-Up:

1. Pull the window switch up to close the window completely and continue to hold the switch up for an additional two seconds after the window is closed.
2. Push the window switch down firmly to open the window completely and continue to hold the switch down for an additional two seconds after the window is fully open.

### Window Lockout Switch

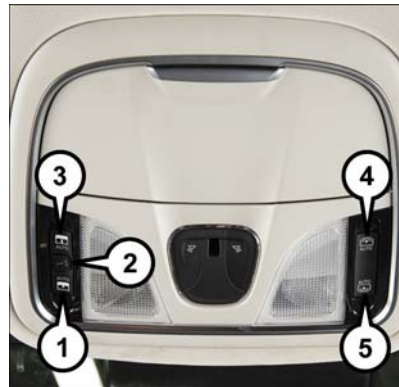
The window lockout switch on the driver's door trim panel allows you to disable the window controls on the rear passenger doors. To disable the window controls, push and release the window lockout button (the indicator light on the button will turn on). To enable the window controls, push and release the window lockout button again (the indicator light on the button will turn back off).



Power Window Lockout Button

## POWER SUNROOF

The power sunroof switches are located on the overhead console.



Power Sunroof Switches

- 1 — Closing Sunroof
- 2 — Venting Sunroof
- 3 — Opening Sunroof
- 4 — Opening Power Shade
- 5 — Closing Power Shade

## Opening

### Opening Sunroof — Express

- Push the sunroof switch rearward and release it within one-half second. The sunroof will automatically open to the halfway position and stop automatically.
- Push the sunroof switch a second time from the halfway position and the sunroof will automatically open to the full open position and stop automatically.

### Opening Sunroof — Manual

- Push and hold the sunroof switch rearward. The sunroof will open and stop automatically at the half-open position.
- Push and hold the sunroof switch rearward again and the sunroof will open automatically to the full-open position.

#### NOTE:

Any release of the sunroof switch will stop the movement and the sunroof will remain in a partially opened condition until the sunroof switch is pushed and held rearward again.

### Venting Sunroof — Express

Push and release the button and the sunroof will open to the vent position.

This is called “Express Vent” and will occur regardless of sunroof position. During Express Vent operation, any movement of the switch will stop the sunroof.

### Closing

#### Closing Sunroof — Express

Push the sunroof switch forward and release it within one-half second. The sunroof will close automatically from any position.

#### Closing Sunroof — Manual

To close the sunroof, push and hold the sunroof switch in the forward position.

#### NOTE:

Any release of the sunroof switch will stop the sunroof movement. The sunroof will remain in a partially closed condition until the switch is pushed and held forward again.

### Wind Buffeting

Wind buffeting can be described as a helicopter-type percussion sound. If buffeting occurs with the rear windows open, adjust the front and rear windows together.

If buffeting occurs with the sunroof open, adjust the sunroof opening, or adjust any window. This will minimize buffeting.

### Power Sun Shade

#### Express Open

Push the shade switch rearward and release it within one-half second and the shade will automatically open to the halfway position and stop automatically.

Push the switch a second time from the halfway position and the shade will automatically open to the full open position and stop automatically.



**Manual Open**

To open the shade, push and hold the switch rearward. The shade will open and stop automatically at the half-open position.

Push and hold the shade switch rearward again and the shade will open automatically to the full-open position.

**Express Close**

Push the switch forward and release it within one-half second and the shade will close automatically from any position.

**Manual Close**

To close the shade, push and hold the switch in the forward position.

**Pinch Protection Feature**

This feature will detect an obstruction in the opening of the sunroof during Express Close operation. If an obstruction in the path of the sunroof is detected, the sunroof will automatically retract. Remove the obstruction if this occurs. Next, push the switch forward and release to Express Close.

**NOTE:**

If three consecutive sunroof close attempts result in Pinch Protect reversals, the fourth close attempt will be a Manual Close movement with Pinch Protect disabled.

**WARNING!**

- Do not let children play with the sunroof. Never leave children unattended in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Do not leave the key fob in or near the vehicle, and do not leave the ignition of a vehicle equipped with Keyless Go in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. Occupants, particularly unattended children, can become entrapped by the power sunroof while operating the power sunroof switch. Such entrapment may result in serious injury or death.
- In a collision, there is a greater risk of being thrown from a vehicle with an open sunroof. You could also be severely injured or killed. Always fasten your seat belt properly and make sure all passengers are properly secured.
- Do not allow small children to operate the sunroof. Never allow your fingers, other body parts, or any object to project through the sunroof opening. Injury may result.



## Sunroof Maintenance

Use only a non-abrasive cleaner and a soft cloth to clean the glass panel.

## HOOD

### Opening The Hood

Two latches must be released to open the hood.

1. Pull the hood release lever located under the driver's side of the instrument panel.
2. Move to the outside of the vehicle and pull the safety latch release lever forward (toward you). The safety latch release lever is located behind the front edge of the hood, slightly off-center to the right.



**Safety Latch Location**

## Closing The Hood

### WARNING!

Be sure the hood is fully latched before driving your vehicle. If the hood is not fully latched, it could open when the vehicle is in motion and block your vision. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious injury or death.

### CAUTION!

To prevent possible damage, do not slam the hood to close it. Lower hood to approximately 12 inches (30 cm) and drop the hood to close. Make sure hood is fully closed for both latches. Never drive vehicle unless hood is fully closed, with both latches engaged.



## LIFTGATE

### Opening

#### To Unlock/Enter The Liftgate

The power liftgate may be opened by pushing the electronic liftgate release (refer to “Keyless Enter-N-Go — Passive Entry” located in “Getting To Know Your Vehicle”) or by pushing the liftgate button on the key fob. Push the liftgate button on the key fob twice within five seconds to open the power liftgate. Once the liftgate is open, pushing the button twice within five seconds a second time will close the liftgate.

The power liftgate may also be opened or closed by pushing the liftgate button located on the front overhead console. If the liftgate is fully open, the liftgate can be closed by pushing the liftgate button located on the left rear trim panel, near the liftgate opening. If the liftgate is in motion, pushing the liftgate button located on the left rear trim panel will reverse the liftgate.

The liftgate passive entry unlock feature is built into the electronic liftgate release. With a valid Passive Entry key fob within 5 ft (1.5 m) of the liftgate, push the electronic liftgate release to open with one fluid motion. Push the button on the key fob twice within five seconds to release the liftgate.



Liftgate Entry

### Closing

Grasp the liftgate closing handle and initiate lowering the liftgate. Release the handle when the liftgate takes over the closing effort.

#### To Lock The Liftgate

With a valid Passive Entry key fob within 5 ft (1.5 m) of the liftgate, pushing the Keyless Enter-N-Go — Passive Entry lock button located to the right of the outside handle release will lock the vehicle.

#### NOTE:

The liftgate unlock feature is built into the electronic liftgate release.

### Cargo Area Features

#### Cargo Load Floor

The cargo load floor system has a load capacity of 400 lbs (181 kg).

To provide additional storage area, each rear seat can be folded flat. This allows for extended cargo space and still maintains some rear seating room. Refer to “Seats” in this section for further information.

## Cargo Extension Panels

Cargo extension panels can be folded and unfolded. When the rear seats are moved to the more forward positions and the rear seat backs are folded down, the extension panels (2) can be unfolded manually by hand. The extension panels can be used to extend the load floor to the rear seats and/or hide the gap between the load floor and rear seats or to assist in loading large items into the cargo area.

## Cargo Tie-Down Hooks And Loops

The tie-downs located on the cargo area floor should be used to secure loads safely when the vehicle is moving.

Cargo tie-down loops are located on the trim panels.

### WARNING!

- Cargo tie-downs are not safe anchors for a child seat tether strap. In a sudden stop or accident, a tie-down could pull loose and allow the child seat to come loose. A child could be badly injured. Use only the anchors provided for child seat tethers.
- To help protect against personal injury, passengers should not be seated in the rear cargo area. The rear cargo space is intended for load carrying purposes only, not for passengers, who should sit in seats and use seat belts. The weight and position of cargo and passengers can change the vehicle center of gravity and vehicle handling. To avoid loss of control resulting in personal injury, follow these guidelines for loading your vehicle:
  - Do not carry loads that exceed the load limits described on the label attached to the left door or left door center pillar.
  - Always place cargo evenly on the cargo floor. Put heavier objects as low and as far forward as possible.

### WARNING!

- Place as much cargo as possible in front of the rear axle. Too much weight or improperly placed weight over or behind the rear axle can cause the vehicle to sway.
- Do not pile luggage or cargo higher than the top of the seatback. This could impair visibility or become a dangerous projectile in a sudden stop or accident.

## Rear Storage Bins


The rear storage bins are located in the rear of the vehicle on the sides of the load floor.




## UNIVERSAL GARAGE DOOR OPENER (HomeLink)



Universal Garage Door Opener (HomeLink)

- HomeLink  replaces up to three hand-held transmitters that operate devices such as garage door openers, motorized gates, lighting or home security systems. The HomeLink unit is powered by your vehicle's 12 Volt battery.

- The HomeLink buttons that are located in the overhead console or sunvisor designate the three different HomeLink channels.
- The HomeLink indicator  is located above the center button.

### Before You Begin Programming HomeLink

Ensure that your vehicle is parked outside of the garage before you begin programming.

For efficient programming and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal, it is recommended that a new battery be placed in the hand-held transmitter of the device that is being programmed to the HomeLink system.

To erase the channels, place the ignition switch into the ON/RUN position, then push and hold the two outside HomeLink buttons (I and III) for up to 20 seconds or until the red indicator flashes.

### NOTE:

Erasing all channels should only be performed when programming HomeLink for the first time. Do not erase channels when programming additional buttons.

If you have any problems, or require assistance, please call toll-free 1-800-355-3515 or, on the Internet at HomeLink.com for information or assistance.

### Programming A Rolling Code

### NOTE:

For programming Garage Door Openers that were manufactured after 1995. These Garage Door Openers can be identified by the "LEARN" or "TRAIN" button located where the hanging antenna is attached to the Garage Door Opener. It is NOT the button that is normally used to open and close the door. The name and color of the button may vary by manufacturer.

1. Place the ignition switch into the ON/RUN position.

2. Place the hand-held transmitter 1 to 3 inches (3 to 8 cm) away from the HomeLink button you wish to program while keeping the HomeLink indicator light in view.

3. Push and hold the HomeLink button you want to program while you push and hold the hand-held transmitter button.

4. Continue to hold both buttons and observe the indicator light. The HomeLink indicator will flash slowly and then rapidly after HomeLink has received the frequency signal from the hand-held transmitter. Release both buttons after the indicator light changes from slow to rapid.

5. At the garage door opener motor (in the garage), locate the “LEARN” or “TRAINING” button. This can usually be found where the hanging antenna wire is attached to the garage door opener motor. Firmly push and release the “LEARN” or “TRAINING” button.

**NOTE:**

You have 30 seconds in which to initiate the next step after the LEARN button has been pushed.

6. Return to the vehicle and push the programmed HomeLink button twice (holding the button for two seconds each time). If the device is plugged in and activates, programming is complete.

**NOTE:**

If the device does not activate, push the button a third time (for two seconds) to complete the training.

7. To program the remaining two HomeLink buttons, repeat each step for each remaining button. DO NOT erase the channels.

**Programming A Non-Rolling Code**

**NOTE:**

For programming Garage Door Openers manufactured before 1995.

1. Place the ignition switch to the ON/RUN position.

2. Place the hand-held transmitter 1 to 3 inches (3 to 8 cm) away from the HomeLink button you wish to program while keeping the HomeLink indicator light in view.

3. Push and hold the HomeLink button you want to program while you push and hold the hand-held transmitter button.

4. Continue to hold both buttons and observe the indicator light. The HomeLink indicator will flash slowly and then rapidly after HomeLink has received the frequency signal from the hand-held transmitter. Release both buttons after the indicator light changes from slow to rapid.

5. Push and hold the programmed HomeLink button and observe the indicator light. If the indicator light stays on constantly, programming is complete and the garage door (or device) should activate when the HomeLink button is pushed.

6. To program the two remaining HomeLink buttons, repeat each step for each remaining button. DO NOT erase the channels.



## Using HomeLink

To operate, push and release the programmed HomeLink button. Activation will now occur for the programmed device (i.e., garage door opener, gate operator, security system, entry door lock, home/office lighting, etc.). The hand-held transmitter of the device may also be used at any time.

### WARNING!

- Your motorized door or gate will open and close while you are programming the universal transceiver. Do not program the transceiver if people or pets are in the path of the door or gate.
- Do not run your vehicle in a closed garage or confined area while programming the transceiver. Exhaust gas from your vehicle contains Carbon Monoxide (CO) which is odorless and colorless. Carbon Monoxide is poisonous when inhaled and can cause you and others to be severely injured or killed.

## INTERNAL EQUIPMENT

### Power Outlets

There are three 12 Volt electrical power outlets on this vehicle.

The front 12 Volt power outlet is located below the climate controls in the Media Center, and is powered when the ignition switch is in the ON/RUN position. The outlet can operate a conventional cigar lighter unit or power accessories designed for use with a standard power outlet adapter.



Front Power Outlet

The center console 12 Volt power outlet is powered directly from the battery (power available at all times). Items plugged into this outlet may discharge the battery and/or prevent the engine from starting.



Center Console Power Outlet

There is also a 12 Volt power outlet located in the rear cargo area of the vehicle. This power outlet has power available directly from the battery (power available at all times). Items plugged into this outlet also may discharge the battery and/or prevent the engine from starting.

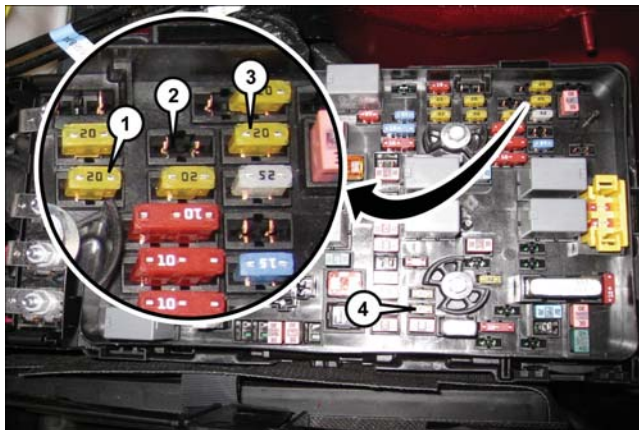


**Rear Cargo Power Outlet**

**NOTE:**

- Do not exceed the maximum power of 160 Watts (13 Amps) at 12 Volts. If the 160 Watt (13 Amp) power rating is exceeded, the fuse protecting the system will need to be replaced.
- Power outlets are designed for accessory plugs only. Do not insert any other object in the power outlet as this will damage the outlet and blow the fuse. Improper use of the power outlet can cause damage not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- The rear cargo power outlet can be switched to “battery” powered all the time by switching the power outlet right rear quarter panel fuse in the fuse panel.





**Power Outlets Fuse Locations**

- 1 — F75 Fuse 20A Yellow Front Power Outlet/Cigar Lighter Console Bin
  - 2 — F81 Fuse 20A Yellow Rear Power Outlet (battery powered at all times)
  - 3 — F91 Fuse 20A Yellow Rear Power Outlet (powered when the ignition switch is in the ON or ACC position)
  - 4 — F60 Fuse 20A Yellow Power Outlet Center Console
-



## Power Inverter



Power Inverter

A 115 Volt, 150 Watt power inverter outlet is located on the rear of the center console. This outlet can power cellular phones, electronics and other low power devices requiring power up to 150 Watts.

The power inverter is designed with built-in overload protection. If the power rating of 150 Watts is exceeded, the power inverter will automatically shut down. Once the electrical device has been removed from the outlet, the inverter should automatically reset.

If the power rating exceeds approximately 170 Watts, the power inverter may have to be reset manually. To reset the inverter manually, unplug the device and plug it in again. To avoid overloading the circuit, check the power ratings on electrical devices prior to using the inverter.

### WARNING!

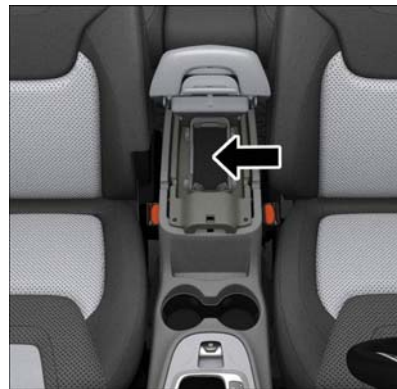
To Avoid Serious Injury or Death DO NOT:

- insert any objects into the receptacles
- touch with wet hands

Close the lid when not in use. If this outlet is mishandled, it may cause an electric shock and failure.

## Wireless Charging Pad – If Equipped

Your vehicle may be equipped with a wireless charging pad located inside the upper portion of the center console. This charging pad is designed to wirelessly charge your Qi enabled mobile phone. Qi is a standard that uses magnetic induction to transfer power to your mobile device.



Wireless Charging Pad



Your mobile phone must be designed for Qi wireless charging, be equipped with an aftermarket sleeve or equipped with a back plate from your mobile phone provider, or an online or local electronics retailer. The wireless charging pad is equipped with an anti-slip mat, an adjustable cradle to hold your mobile phone in place and an LED indicator light.

**NOTE:**

Visit [UconnectPhone.com](http://UconnectPhone.com) for supported mobile phones and compatible aftermarket sleeves.

**Wireless Charging Pad Operation**

To use the wireless charging pad, the coil in your mobile phone needs to align with the coil in the charging pad, which is located directly under the Qi logo. Since each mobile phone's coil location is different, you may need a few attempts to locate the correct spot for your mobile phone:

1. Place your mobile phone on the wireless charging pad, towards the Qi logo, so that the LED turns red. If the LED does not turn red, pick up the mobile phone and change its location.



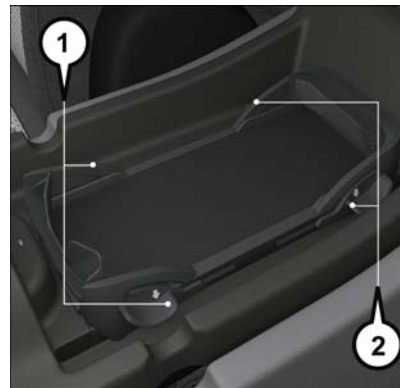
**Mobile Phone Alignment**

**NOTE:**

The mobile phone **must** be aligned around the Qi logo for the LED to transition from red to flashing green.

2. Once the LED transitions from red to flashing green, your mobile phone is correctly placed and charging.

3. If the LED does not transition from red to flashing green, and just turns off, pick up your mobile phone and reposition it on the charging pad.
4. Use the adjustable cradle to hold the mobile phone in position. The cradle moves by pushing down on the finger tabs and moving the cradle in or out.



**Adjustable Cradle**

- 1 — Front Cradle Adjustment  
2 — Rear Cradle Adjustment

**NOTE:**

The initial adjustment will only need to be done once as long as only one mobile phone is used. If a different mobile phone is used, the cradle will need to be readjusted.

The LED indicator will flash green while the mobile phone is charging. The Qi enabled phone is able to function normally as it is charging.

**WARNING!**

Do not place metal object(s) between the mobile phone and wireless charging pad. Metal object(s) such as coins, rings or keys will become very **HOT**. If metal object(s) become lodged between the mobile phone and wireless charging pad, carefully remove the mobile phone and allow the metal object(s) to cool before removing. Failure to wait until the object(s) cool could result in personal injury, including burns.

**CAUTION!**

Do not place your vehicle key fob on the wireless charging pad, the Keyless Enter-N-Go feature may not work properly while a mobile phone is being charged.





# GETTING TO KNOW YOUR INSTRUMENT PANEL

**INSTRUMENT CLUSTER . . . . .76**

**INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY —  
IF EQUIPPED . . . . .77**

Instrument Cluster Display Controls . . . .77

Instrument Cluster Display Selectable

Items . . . . .78

**WARNING/INDICATOR LIGHTS  
AND MESSAGES . . . . .78**

Red Telltale Lights . . . . .78

Yellow Telltale Lights . . . . .81

Blue Telltale Lights . . . . .85

Green Telltale Lights . . . . .85

White Telltale Lights . . . . .86

**ONBOARD DIAGNOSTIC SYSTEM —  
OBD II . . . . .87**

Onboard Diagnostic System (OBD II)

Cybersecurity . . . . .88



## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER



Instrument Cluster

- 1 — Tachometer
- 2 — Instrument Cluster Display
- 3 — Speedometer

- 4 — Fuel Gauge
- 5 — Temperature Gauge

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY – IF EQUIPPED

Your vehicle may be equipped with an instrument cluster display, which offers useful information to the driver. With the ignition in the STOP/OFF mode, opening/closing of a door will activate the display for viewing, and display the total miles, or kilometers, in the odometer. Your instrument cluster display is designed to display important information about your vehicle's systems and features. Using a driver interactive display located on the instrument panel, your instrument cluster display can show you how systems are working and give you warnings when they aren't. The steering wheel mounted controls allow you to scroll through and enter the main menus and submenus. You can access the specific information you want and make selections and adjustments.

### Instrument Cluster Display Controls



Instrument Cluster Display Controls

The instrument cluster display features a driver interactive display that is located in the instrument cluster. Pushing the instrument cluster display controls on the left side of the steering wheel allows the driver to select vehicle information and Personal Settings.

- Push the **up** button to scroll upward through the main menus (Speedometer, Vehicle Info, Driver Assist, Fuel Economy, Trip, Audio, Messages, Screen Set Up).
- Push the **down** arrow button to scroll downward through the main menu and submenus (Speedometer, Vehicle Info, Driver Assist, Fuel Economy, Trip, Audio, Messages, Screen Set Up).
- Push the **right** arrow button to access the information screens or submenu screens of a main menu item.
- Push the **left** arrow button to access the information screens or submenu screens of a main menu item.
- Push the **OK** button to access/select the information screens or submenu screens of a main menu item. Push and hold the **OK** arrow button for two seconds to reset displayed/selected features that can be reset.



## Instrument Cluster Display Selectable Items

The instrument cluster display can be used to view the following main menu items:

### NOTE:

Depending on the vehicles options, feature settings may vary.

Speedometer	Stop/Start
Vehicle Info	Audio
Driver Assist	Messages
Fuel Economy	Screen Setup
Trip	

### NOTE:

Refer to your Owner's Manual on [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals) for further information.

## WARNING/INDICATOR LIGHTS AND MESSAGES

The warning/indicator light switches on in the instrument panel together with a dedicated message and/or acoustic signal when applicable. These indications are indicative and precautionary and as such must not be considered as exhaustive and/or alternative to the information contained in the Owner Manual, which you are advised to read carefully in all cases. Always refer to the information in this chapter in the event of a failure indication.

All active telltales will display first, if applicable. The system check menu may appear different based upon equipment options and current vehicle status. Some telltales are optional and may not appear.

The following warning lamps and indicators will alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps will illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

## Red Telltale Lights

### — Seat Belt Reminder Warning Light

When the ignition switch is first turned to ON/RUN, this light will turn on for four to eight seconds as a bulb check. During the bulb check, if the driver's or passenger seat belt is unbuckled, a chime will sound. After the bulb check or when driving, if the driver's seat belt remains unbuckled, the Seat Belt Reminder Light will flash or remain on continuously and a chime will sound.

### — Air Bag Warning Light

This light will turn on for four to eight seconds as a bulb check when the ignition switch is first turned to ON/RUN. If the light is either not on during startup, stays on, or turns on while driving, have the system inspected at an authorized dealer as soon as possible. This light will illuminate with a single chime when a fault with the Air Bag Warning Light has been detected, it will stay on until the fault is cleared. If the light comes on intermittently or remains on while driving, have an authorized dealer service the vehicle immediately.



## BRAKE — Brake Warning Light

This light monitors various brake functions, including brake fluid level and parking brake application. If the brake light turns on it may indicate that the parking brake is applied, that the brake fluid level is low, or that there is a problem with the anti-lock brake system reservoir.

If the light remains on when the parking brake has been disengaged, and the fluid level is at the full mark on the master cylinder reservoir, it indicates a possible brake hydraulic system malfunction or that a problem with the Brake Booster has been detected by the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) / Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system. In this case, the light will remain on until the condition has been corrected. If the problem is related to the brake booster, the ABS pump will run when applying the brake, and a brake pedal pulsation may be felt during each stop.

The dual brake system provides a reserve braking capacity in the event of a failure to a portion of the hydraulic system. A leak in either half of the dual brake system is indicated by the Brake Warning Light, which will turn on when the brake fluid level in the master cylinder has dropped below a specified level.

The light will remain on until the cause is corrected.

### NOTE:

The light may flash momentarily during sharp cornering maneuvers, which change fluid level conditions. The vehicle should have service performed, and the brake fluid level checked.

If brake failure is indicated, immediate repair is necessary.

### WARNING!

Driving a vehicle with the red brake light on is dangerous. Part of the brake system may have failed. It will take longer to stop the vehicle. You could have a collision. Have the vehicle checked immediately.

Vehicles equipped with the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) are also equipped with Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD). In the event of an EBD failure, the Brake Warning Light will turn on along with the ABS Light. Immediate repair to the ABS system is required.

Operation of the Brake Warning Light can be checked by turning the ignition switch from the OFF position to the ON/RUN position. The light should illuminate for approximately two seconds. The light should then turn off unless the parking brake is applied or a brake fault is detected. If the light does not illuminate, have the light inspected by an authorized dealer.

The light also will turn on when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the ON/RUN position.

### NOTE:

This light shows only that the parking brake is applied. It does not show the degree of brake application.



### ● — Vehicle Security Light

This light will flash at a fast rate for approximately 15 seconds when the vehicle security alarm is arming, and then will flash slowly until the vehicle is disarmed.

### — Oil Pressure Warning Light

This light indicates low engine oil pressure. If the light turns on while driving, stop the vehicle and shut off the engine as soon as possible. A chime will sound when this light turns on.

Do not operate the vehicle until the cause is corrected. This light does not indicate how much oil is in the engine. The engine oil level must be checked under the hood.

### — Transmission Temperature Warning Light

This light indicates that there is excessive transmission fluid temperature that might occur with severe usage such as trailer towing. If this light turns on, stop the vehicle and run the engine at idle, with the transmission in NEUTRAL, until the light turns off. Once the light turns off, you may continue to drive normally.

### WARNING!

If you continue operating the vehicle when the Transmission Temperature Warning Light is illuminated you could cause the fluid to boil over, come in contact with hot engine or exhaust components and cause a fire.

### CAUTION!

Continuous driving with the Transmission Temperature Warning Light illuminated will eventually cause severe transmission damage or transmission failure.

### — Engine Temperature Warning Light

This light warns of an overheated engine condition. As engine coolant temperatures rise and the gauge approaches **H**, this indicator will illuminate and a single chime will sound after reaching a set threshold.

If the light turns on while driving, safely pull over and stop the vehicle. If the A/C system is on, turn it off. Also, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL and idle the vehicle.

If the temperature reading does not return to normal, turn the engine off immediately and call for service. Refer to “If Your Engine Overheats” in “In Case Of Emergency” for further information.

### — Oil Temperature Warning Light

This telltale indicates vehicle oil temperature is high. If the light turns on while driving, stop the vehicle and shut off the engine as soon as possible.

### — Battery Charge Warning Light

This light illuminates when the battery is not charging properly. If it stays on while the engine is running, there may be a malfunction with the charging system. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. This indicates a possible problem with the electrical system or a related component.

If jump starting is required, refer to “Jump-Starting” in “In Case Of Emergency.”

## — Electronic Throttle Control (ETC) Light

This light informs you of a problem with the Electronic Throttle Control (ETC) system. If a problem is detected while the vehicle is running, the light will either stay on or flash depending on the nature of the problem. Cycle the ignition key when the vehicle is safely and completely stopped and the transmission is placed in the PARK position. The light should turn off. If the light remains on with the vehicle under power, your vehicle will usually be drivable; however, see an authorized dealer for service as soon as possible.

If the light continues to flash when the vehicle is under power, immediate service is required and you may experience reduced performance, and your vehicle may require towing. The light will come on when the ignition is placed in the ON/RUN position and remain on briefly as a bulb check. If the light does not come on during starting, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

## — Electric Power Steering Fail Warning Light

This light is used to manage the electrical warning of the EPS (Electric Power Steering). Refer to “Electric Power Steering” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

## — Door Open Warning Light

This indicator will illuminate when a door is ajar/open and not fully closed.

If the vehicle is moving, there will also be a single chime.

## — Liftgate Open Warning Light

This indicator will turn when the liftgate is open.

If the vehicle is moving there will also be a single chime.

## Yellow Telltale Lights

### — Engine Malfunction Warning Light

The Engine Check/Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) is a part of an Onboard Diagnostic System called OBD II that monitors engine and automatic transmission control systems. The light will illuminate when the ignition is in the ON position before engine start. If the bulb does not come on when placing the ignition in the ON/RUN position, have the condition checked promptly.

Certain conditions, such as a loose or missing gas cap, poor quality fuel, etc., may illuminate the light after engine start. The vehicle should be serviced if the light stays on through several typical driving styles. In most situations, the vehicle will drive normally and will not require towing.

When the engine is running, the MIL may flash to alert serious conditions that could lead to immediate loss of power or severe catalytic converter damage. The vehicle should be serviced as soon as possible if this occurs.



**WARNING!**

A malfunctioning catalytic converter, as referenced above, can reach higher temperatures than in normal operating conditions. This can cause a fire if you drive slowly or park over flammable substances such as dry plants, wood, cardboard, etc. This could result in death or serious injury to the driver, occupants or others.

**CAUTION!**

Prolonged driving with the Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) on could cause damage to the vehicle control system. It also could affect fuel economy and driveability. If the MIL is flashing, severe catalytic converter damage and power loss will soon occur. Immediate service is required.


**— Electronic Stability Control (ESC)  
Indicator Light**

The “ESC Indicator Light” in the instrument cluster will come on when the ignition is placed in the ON/RUN position. It should go out when the engine is running. If the “ESC Indicator Light” comes on continuously with the engine running, a malfunction has been detected in the ESC system. If this light remains on after several ignition cycles, and the vehicle has been driven several miles (kilometers) at speeds greater than 30 mph (48 km/h), see your authorized dealer as soon as possible to have the problem diagnosed and corrected.

- The “ESC Off Indicator Light” and the “ESC Indicator Light” come on momentarily each time the ignition is placed in the ON/RUN position.
- Each time the ignition is placed in the ON/RUN position, the ESC system will be ON, even if it was turned off previously.

- The ESC system will make buzzing or clicking sounds when it is active. This is normal; the sounds will stop when ESC becomes inactive following the maneuver that caused the ESC activation.

This telltale indicates that an ESC event is active.


**— Electronic Stability Control (ESC)  
OFF Indicator Light — If Equipped**

This light indicates the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is off.

**(P!) — Electronic Park Brake Fail Light**

This telltale will turn on to indicate the Electronic Park Brake is not functioning properly and that service is required. Contact your authorized dealership.

## **(!) — Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) Warning Light**

The warning light switches on and a message is displayed to indicate that the tire pressure is lower than the recommended value and/or that slow pressure loss is occurring. In these cases, optimal tire duration and fuel consumption may not be guaranteed.

Should one or more tires be in the condition mentioned above, the display will show the indications corresponding to each tire in sequence.

### **CAUTION!**

Do not continue driving with one or more flat tires as handling may be compromised. Stop the vehicle, avoiding sharp braking and steering. If a tire puncture occurs, repair immediately using the dedicated tire repair kit and contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label.

(If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.



**CAUTION!**

The TPMS has been optimized for the original equipment tires and wheels. TPMS pressures and warning have been established for the tire size equipped on your vehicle. Undesirable system operation or sensor damage may result when using replacement equipment that is not of the same size, type, and/or style. Aftermarket wheels can cause sensor damage. Using aftermarket tire sealants may cause the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) sensor to become inoperable. After using an aftermarket tire sealant it is recommended that you take your vehicle to your authorized dealer to have your sensor function checked.

 — **Anti-Lock Brake (ABS) Indicator Light**

This light monitors the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS). The light will turn on when the ignition switch is placed in the ON/RUN position and may stay on for as long as four seconds.

If the ABS light remains on or turns on while driving, then the Anti-Lock portion of the brake system is not functioning and service is required. However, the conventional brake system will continue to operate normally if the brake warning light is not on.

If the ABS light is on, the brake system should be serviced as soon as possible to restore the benefits of Anti-Lock Brakes. If the ABS light does not turn on when the ignition switch is placed in the ON/RUN position, have the light inspected by an authorized dealer.

 — **Low Fuel Warning Light**

When the fuel level reaches approximately 2.4 gal (9.1 L) this light will turn on, and remain on until fuel is added.

A single warning chime will sound with Low Fuel Warning.

 — **Service Stop/Start System Indicator Light — If Equipped**

This telltale will turn on to indicate the Stop/Start system is not functioning properly and service is required.

 — **Service Forward Collision Warning (FCW) Light**

This light indicates a potential system fault with the FCW system. Refer to “Forward Collision Warning” in “Safety” for further information.

 — **Low Windshield Washer Fluid Indicator**

This indicator will illuminate when the windshield washer fluid is low.

 — **Service Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) System Indicator Light**

This light will turn on when a ACC is not operating and needs service. Refer to “Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) — If Equipped” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

 — **4WD Low Indicator Light — If Equipped**

This light alerts the driver that the vehicle is in the four-wheel drive LOW mode. The front and rear driveshafts are mechanically locked together forcing the front and rear wheels to

rotate at the same speed. Low range provides a greater gear reduction ratio to provide increased torque at the wheels.

Refer to “Four-Wheel Drive Operation — If Equipped” in “Starting And Operating” for further information on four-wheel drive operation and proper use.

**SVC  
4WD — SERV (Service) 4WD Indicator Light**

If the light stays on or comes on during driving, it means that the 4WD system is not functioning properly and that service is required. We recommend you drive to the nearest service center and have the vehicle serviced immediately.

** — LaneSense Indicator Light  
— If Equipped**

The LaneSense is solid yellow when the system senses a lane drift situation.

The LaneSense is flashing yellow when the system senses the lane has been approached and is in a lane departure situation.

Refer to “LaneSense — If Equipped” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

** — LaneSense Failure Indicator Light  
— If Equipped**

This light will turn on when the LaneSense system is not operating and needs service. Please see your authorized dealer.

** — Rear Axle Lock Indicator Light**

This light indicates when the rear axle lock has been activated.

** — Loose Fuel Filler Cap Indicator Light  
— If Equipped**

This light will illuminate when fuel filler cap is loose. Properly close the filler cap to disengage the light. If the light does not turn off, please see your authorized dealer.

**Blue Telltale Lights**

** — High Beam Indicator Light**

This indicator shows that the high beam headlights are on. Push the multifunction control lever away from you to switch the headlights to high beam. Pull the lever toward you to switch the headlights back to low beam. Pull the lever toward you for a temporary high beam on, “flash to pass” scenario.

**Green Telltale Lights**

** — Park/Headlight ON Indicator Light**

This indicator will illuminate when the park lights or headlights are turned on.

** — Front Fog Indicator Light  
— If Equipped**

This indicator will illuminate when the front fog lights are on.

** — Turn Signal Warning Lights**

The instrument cluster arrow will flash independently for the left or right turn signal as selected, as well as the exterior turn signal lamp(s) (front and rear) as selected when the multifunction lever is moved down (left) or up (right).

- A continuous chime will sound if the vehicle is driven more than 1 mile (1.6 km) with either turn signal on.
- Check for an inoperative outside light bulb if either indicator flashes at a rapid rate.



 — **Stop/Start Active Indicator Light**  
— If Equipped

This telltale will illuminate when the Stop/Start function is in “Autostop” mode.

 — **LaneSense Indicator Light**  
— If Equipped

The LaneSense indicator is solid green when both lane markings have been detected and the system is “armed” to provide visual warnings in the instrument cluster display and a torque warning in the steering wheel if an unintentional lane departure occurs. Refer to “LaneSense — If Equipped” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

 — **Cruise Control Set Indicator Light**  
— If Equipped

This light will turn on when the Speed Control is SET. Refer to “Speed Control — If Equipped” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

 — **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Set With Target Detected Light**  
— If Equipped

This light will turn on when the Adaptive Cruise Control is SET and the target vehicle is detected. Refer to “Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) — If Equipped” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

 — **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Set With No Target Detected Light**  
— If Equipped

This light will turn on when the Adaptive Cruise Control is SET and there is no target vehicle detected. Refer to “Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) — If Equipped” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

 — **ECO Mode Indicator Light**  
— If Equipped

This feature allows you to monitor when you are driving in a fuel efficient manner, and it can be used to modify driving habits in order to increase fuel economy.

## White Telltale Lights

 — **Cruise Control ON Indicator**

This light will turn on when the speed control is on, but not set.

 — **LaneSense Indicator Light**  
— If Equipped

When the LaneSense system is ON, the LaneSense indicator is solid white when only the left or right lane marking has been detected. When both lanes are detected the telltale will light up green, and the system will be ready to provide visual warnings in the instrument cluster display if an unintentional lane departure occurs. Refer to “LaneSense — If Equipped” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

 — **Hill Descent Control (HDC) Indicator Light**  
— If Equipped

This indicator shows when the Hill Descent Control (HDC) feature is turned on. The lamp will be on solid when HDC is armed. HDC can only be armed when the transfer case is in the “4WD LOW” position and the vehicle speed



is less than 30 mph (48 km/h). If these conditions are not met while attempting to use the HDC feature, the HDC indicator light will flash on/off.

### **CRUISE** — Cruise Indicator

This indicator shows that the Speed Control System is ON.

### — Selec Speed Control Indicator Light — If Equipped

This light will turn on when “Selec Speed Control” is activated.

To activate “Selec Speed Control”, assure the vehicle is Four Wheel Drive Low (4WD) and push the button on the Instrument Panel.

#### **NOTE:**

If the vehicle is not in 4WD Low, “To Enter Selec-Speed Shift to 4WD Low” will appear in the instrument cluster display.

### — Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Set Light — If Equipped

This light will turn on when the vehicle equipped with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) has reached the speed desired and the set button has been selected. Refer to “Adaptive Cruise Control” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

### — Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Ready Light — If Equipped

This light will turn on when the vehicle equipped with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) has been turned on and in the READY state. Refer to “Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) — If Equipped” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

## **ONBOARD DIAGNOSTIC SYSTEM – OBD II**

Your vehicle is equipped with a sophisticated Onboard Diagnostic system called OBD II. This system monitors the performance of the emissions, engine, and transmission control systems. When these systems are operating properly, your vehicle will provide excellent performance and fuel economy, as well as engine emissions well within current government regulations.

If any of these systems require service, the OBD II system will turn on the Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL). It will also store diagnostic codes and other information to assist your service technician in making repairs. Although your vehicle will usually be drivable and not need towing, see your authorized dealer for service as soon as possible.



**CAUTION!**

- Prolonged driving with the MIL on could cause further damage to the emission control system. It could also affect fuel economy and driveability. The vehicle must be serviced before any emissions tests can be performed.
- If the MIL is flashing while the engine is running, severe catalytic converter damage and power loss will soon occur. Immediate service is required.

**Onboard Diagnostic System (OBD II)  
Cybersecurity**

Your vehicle is required to have an Onboard Diagnostic system (OBD II) and a connection port to allow access to information related to the performance of your emissions controls. Authorized service technicians may need to access this information to assist with the diagnosis and service of your vehicle and emissions system.

**WARNING!**

- ONLY an authorized service technician should connect equipment to the OBD II connection port in order to diagnose or service your vehicle.
- If unauthorized equipment is connected to the OBD II connection port, such as a driver-behavior tracking device, it may:
  - Be possible that vehicle systems, including safety related systems, could be impaired or a loss of vehicle control could occur that may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.
  - Access, or allow others to access, information stored in your vehicle systems, including personal information.

For further information, refer to “Cybersecurity” in “Multimedia” in your Owner’s Manual at [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/).

# SAFETY

## SAFETY FEATURES . . . . .90

- Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) . . . . .90
- Electronic Brake Control System . . . . .91

## AUXILIARY DRIVING SYSTEMS . . . . .102

- Blind Spot Monitoring . . . . .102
- Forward Collision Warning (FCW) . . . . .103
- Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) . . . . .105

## OCCUPANT RESTRAINT SYSTEMS . . . . .109

- Occupant Restraint Systems Features . . . . .109
- Important Safety Precautions . . . . .110
- Seat Belt Systems . . . . .110
- Supplemental Restraint Systems (SRS) . . . . .118
- Child Restraints . . . . .132
- Transporting Pets . . . . .145

## SAFETY TIPS . . . . .146

- Transporting Passengers . . . . .146
- Exhaust Gas . . . . .146
- Safety Checks You Should Make Inside The Vehicle . . . . .146
- Periodic Safety Checks You Should Make Outside The Vehicle . . . . .148



## SAFETY FEATURES

### Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS)

The Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) provides increased vehicle stability and brake performance under most braking conditions. The system automatically prevents wheel lock, and enhances vehicle control during braking.

The ABS performs a self-check cycle to ensure that the ABS is working properly each time the vehicle is started and driven. During this self-check, you may hear a slight clicking sound as well as some related motor noises.

ABS is activated during braking when the system detects one or more wheels begin to lock. Road conditions such as ice, snow, gravel, bumps, railroad tracks, loose debris, or panic stops may increase the likelihood of ABS activation(s).

You also may experience the following when ABS activates:

- The ABS motor noise (it may continue to run for a short time after the stop).

- The clicking sound of solenoid valves.
- Brake pedal pulsations.
- A slight drop of the brake pedal at the end of the stop.

These are all normal characteristics of ABS.

#### WARNING!

- The ABS contains sophisticated electronic equipment that may be susceptible to interference caused by improperly installed or high output radio transmitting equipment. This interference can cause possible loss of anti-lock braking capability. Installation of such equipment should be performed by qualified professionals.
- Pumping of the Anti-Lock Brakes will diminish their effectiveness and may lead to a collision. Pumping makes the stopping distance longer. Just press firmly on your brake pedal when you need to slow down or stop.

#### WARNING!

- The ABS cannot prevent the natural laws of physics from acting on the vehicle, nor can it increase braking or steering efficiency beyond that afforded by the condition of the vehicle brakes and tires or the traction afforded.
- The ABS cannot prevent collisions, including those resulting from excessive speed in turns, following another vehicle too closely, or hydroplaning.
- The capabilities of an ABS equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner that could jeopardize the user's safety or the safety of others.

ABS is designed to function with the OEM tires. Modification may result in degraded ABS performance.

## Anti-Lock Brake Warning Light

The yellow “Anti-Lock Brake Warning Light” will turn on when the ignition is turned to the ON/RUN mode and may stay on for as long as four seconds.

If the “Anti-Lock Brake Warning Light” remains on or comes on while driving, it indicates that the anti-lock portion of the brake system is not functioning and that service is required. However, the conventional brake system will continue to operate normally if the “Brake System Warning Light” is not on.

If the “Anti-Lock Brake Warning Light” is on, the brake system should be serviced as soon as possible to restore the benefits of anti-lock brakes. If the “Anti-Lock Brake Warning Light” does not come on when the ignition is turned to the ON/RUN mode, have the light repaired as soon as possible.

## Electronic Brake Control System

Your vehicle is equipped with an advanced Electronic Brake Control system (EBC). This system includes Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD), Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), Brake Assist System (BAS), Hill Start

Assist (HSA), Traction Control System (TCS), Electronic Stability Control (ESC), and Electronic Roll Mitigation (ERM). These systems work together to enhance both vehicle stability and control in various driving conditions.

Your vehicle may also be equipped with Trailer Sway Control (TSC), Ready Alert Braking (RAB), Rain Brake Support (RBS), Dynamic Steering Torque (DST), Hill Descent Control (HDC), and Selec-Speed Control (SSC).

## Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD)

This function manages the distribution of the braking torque between the front and rear axles by limiting braking pressure to the rear axle. This is done to prevent overslip of the rear wheels to avoid vehicle instability, and to prevent the rear axle from entering ABS before the front axle.

## Brake System Warning Light

The red “Brake System Warning Light” will turn on when the ignition is turned to the ON/RUN mode and may stay on for as long as four seconds.

If the “Brake System Warning Light” remains on or comes on while driving, it indicates that the brake system is not functioning properly and that immediate service is required. If the “Brake System Warning Light” does not come on when the ignition is turned to the ON/RUN mode, have the light repaired as soon as possible.

## Brake Assist System (BAS)

The BAS is designed to optimize the vehicle’s braking capability during emergency braking maneuvers. The system detects an emergency braking situation by sensing the rate and amount of brake application and then applies optimum pressure to the brakes. This can help reduce braking distances. The BAS complements the anti-lock brake system (ABS). Applying the brakes very quickly results in the best BAS assistance. To receive the benefit of the system, you must apply continuous braking pressure during the stopping sequence, (do not “pump” the brakes). Do not reduce brake pedal pressure unless braking is no longer desired. Once the brake pedal is released, the BAS is deactivated.



**WARNING!**

The Brake Assist System (BAS) cannot prevent the natural laws of physics from acting on the vehicle, nor can it increase the traction afforded by prevailing road conditions. BAS cannot prevent collisions, including those resulting from excessive speed in turns, driving on very slippery surfaces, or hydroplaning. The capabilities of a BAS-equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner, which could jeopardize the user's safety or the safety of others.

**Hill Start Assist (HSA)**

The HSA system is designed to mitigate roll back from a complete stop while on an incline. If the driver releases the brake while stopped on an incline, HSA will continue to hold the brake pressure for a short period. If the driver does not apply the throttle before this time expires, the system will release brake pressure and the vehicle will roll down the hill as normal.

The following conditions must be met in order for HSA to activate:

- The feature must be enabled.
- The vehicle must be stopped.
- Park brake must be off.
- Driver door must be closed.
- The vehicle must be on a sufficient grade.
- The gear selection must match vehicle uphill direction (i.e., vehicle facing uphill is in forward gear; vehicle backing uphill is in REVERSE gear).
- HSA will work in REVERSE gear and all forward gears. The system will not activate if the transmission is in PARK or NEUTRAL. For vehicles equipped with a manual transmission, if the clutch is pressed, HSA will remain active.

**WARNING!**

There may be situations where the Hill Start Assist (HSA) will not activate and slight rolling may occur, such as on minor hills or with a loaded vehicle, or while pulling a trailer. HSA is not a substitute for

**WARNING!**

active driving involvement. It is always the driver's responsibility to be attentive to distance to other vehicles, people, and objects, and most importantly brake operation to ensure safe operation of the vehicle under all road conditions. Your complete attention is always required while driving to maintain safe control of your vehicle. Failure to follow these warnings can result in a collision or serious personal injury.

**Disabling And Enabling HSA**

This feature can be turned on or turned off. To change the current setting, proceed as follows:

- If disabling HSA using your instrument cluster display, refer to "Instrument Cluster Display" in "Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel" for further information.
- If disabling HSA using Uconnect Settings, refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Multimedia" for further information.

For vehicles not equipped with an instrument cluster display, perform the following steps:

1. Center the steering wheel (front wheels pointing straight forward).
2. Shift the transmission into PARK.
3. Apply the parking brake.
4. Start the engine.
5. Rotate the steering wheel slightly more than one-half turn to the left.
6. Push the “ESC Off” button located in the lower switch bank below the climate control four times within 20 seconds. The “ESC Off Indicator Light” should turn on and turn off two times.
7. Rotate the steering wheel back to center and then an additional slightly more than one-half turn to the right.
8. Turn the ignition to the OFF mode and then back to ON. If the sequence was completed properly, the “ESC Off Indicator Light” will blink several times to confirm HSA is disabled.
9. Repeat these steps if you want to return this feature to its previous setting.

### Towing With HSA

HSA will also provide assistance to mitigate roll back while towing a trailer.

#### **WARNING!**

- If you use a trailer brake controller with your trailer, the trailer brakes may be activated and deactivated with the brake switch. If so, there may not be enough brake pressure to hold both the vehicle and the trailer on a hill when the brake pedal is released. In order to avoid rolling down an incline while resuming acceleration, manually activate the trailer brake or apply more vehicle brake pressure prior to releasing the brake pedal.
- HSA is not a parking brake. Always apply the parking brake fully when exiting your vehicle. Also, be certain to place the transmission in PARK.
- Failure to follow these warnings can result in a collision or serious personal injury.

### Traction Control System (TCS)

This system monitors the amount of wheel spin of each of the driven wheels. If wheel spin is detected, the TCS may apply brake pressure to the spinning wheel(s) and/or reduce engine power to provide enhanced acceleration and stability. A feature of the TCS, Brake Limited Differential (BLD), functions similar to a limited slip differential and controls the wheel spin across a driven axle. If one wheel on a driven axle is spinning faster than the other, the system will apply the brake of the spinning wheel. This will allow more engine torque to be applied to the wheel that is not spinning. BLD may remain enabled even if TCS and ESC are in a reduced mode.

### Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

This system enhances directional control and stability of the vehicle under various driving conditions. ESC corrects for oversteering or understeering of the vehicle by applying the brake of the appropriate wheel(s) to assist in counteracting the oversteer or understeer condition. Engine power may also be reduced to help the vehicle maintain the desired path.



ESC uses sensors in the vehicle to determine the vehicle path intended by the driver and compares it to the actual path of the vehicle. When the actual path does not match the intended path, ESC applies the brake of the appropriate wheel to assist in counteracting the oversteer or understeer condition.

- Oversteer — when the vehicle is turning more than appropriate for the steering wheel position.
- Understeer — when the vehicle is turning less than appropriate for the steering wheel position.

The “ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light” located in the instrument cluster will start to flash as soon as the ESC system becomes active. The “ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light” also flashes when the TCS is active. If the “ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light” begins to flash during acceleration, ease up on the accelerator and apply as little throttle as possible. Be sure to adapt your speed and driving to the prevailing road conditions.

### WARNING!

- Electronic Stability Control (ESC) cannot prevent the natural laws of physics from acting on the vehicle, nor can it increase the traction afforded by prevailing road conditions. ESC cannot prevent accidents, including those resulting from excessive speed in turns, driving on very slippery surfaces, or hydroplaning. ESC also cannot prevent accidents resulting from loss of vehicle control due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Only a safe, attentive, and skillful driver can prevent accidents. The capabilities of an ESC equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner which could jeopardize the user’s safety or the safety of others.
- Vehicle modifications, or failure to properly maintain your vehicle, may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle, and may negatively affect the performance of the ESC system. Changes to the steering system, suspension, brak-

### WARNING!

ing system, tire type and size or wheel size may adversely affect ESC performance. Improperly inflated and unevenly worn tires may also degrade ESC performance. Any vehicle modification or poor vehicle maintenance that reduces the effectiveness of the ESC system can increase the risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

### ESC Operating Modes

#### NOTE:

Depending upon model and mode of operation, the ESC system may have multiple operating modes.

#### ESC On

This is the normal operating mode for the ESC. Whenever the vehicle is started, the ESC system will be in this mode. This mode should be used for most driving conditions. Alternate ESC modes should only be used for specific reasons as noted in the following paragraphs.



## Partial Off

The “Partial Off” mode is intended for times when a more spirited driving experience is desired. This mode may modify TCS and ESC thresholds for activation, which allows for more wheel spin than normally allowed. This mode may be useful if the vehicle becomes stuck.

To enter the “Partial Off” mode, momentarily push the “ESC Off” switch and the “ESC Off Indicator Light” will illuminate. To turn the ESC on again, momentarily push the “ESC Off” switch and the “ESC Off Indicator Light” will turn off.

### NOTE:

For vehicles with multiple partial ESC modes a momentary button push will toggle the ESC mode. Multiple momentary button pushed may be required to return to ESC On.

## WARNING!

- When in “Partial Off” mode, the TCS functionality of ESC, (except for the limited slip feature described in the TCS section), has been disabled and the “ESC Off Indicator Light” will be illuminated. When in “Partial Off” mode, the engine power reduction feature of TCS is disabled, and the enhanced vehicle stability offered by the ESC system is reduced.
- Trailer Sway control (TSC) is disabled when the ESC system is in the “Partial Off” mode.

### Full Off — If Equipped

This mode is intended for off-highway or off-road use only and should not be used on any public roadways. In this mode, TCS and ESC features are turned OFF. To enter the “Full Off” mode, push and hold the “ESC Off” switch for five seconds while the vehicle is stopped with the engine running. After five seconds, a chime will sound, the “ESC Off Indicator Light” will illuminate, and the

“ESC OFF” message will display in the instrument cluster. To turn ESC ON again, momentarily push the “ESC Off” switch.

### NOTE:

System may switch from ESC “Full Off” to “Partial Off” mode when vehicle exceeds a predetermined speed. When the vehicle speed slows below the predetermined speed the system will return to ESC “Full Off”.

“Full Off” can only be achieved in Track Mode if so equipped.

ESC modes may also be affected by drive modes if so equipped.

## WARNING!

- In the ESC “Full Off” mode, the engine torque reduction and stability features are disabled. Therefore, enhanced vehicle stability offered by the ESC system is unavailable. In an emergency evasive maneuver, the ESC system will not engage to assist in maintaining stability. ESC “Full Off” mode is intended for off-highway or off-road use only.



**WARNING!**

- With the ESC switched off, the enhanced vehicle stability offered by ESC is unavailable. In an emergency evasive maneuver, the ESC system will not engage to assist in maintaining stability. ESC “Full Off” mode is only intended for off-highway or off-road use.
- The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) cannot prevent the natural laws of physics from acting on the vehicle, nor can it increase the traction afforded by prevailing road conditions. ESC cannot prevent all accidents, including those resulting from excessive speed in turns, driving on very slippery surfaces, or hydroplaning. ESC also cannot prevent collisions.

**ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light and ESC OFF Indicator Light**

The “ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light” in the instrument cluster will come on when the ignition is turned to the ON mode. It should go out with the engine running. If the “ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light” comes on continuously with the engine running, a malfunction has been detected in the ESC system. If this light remains on after several ignition cycles, and the vehicle has been driven several miles (kilometers) at speeds greater than 30 mph (48 km/h), see your authorized dealer as soon as possible to have the problem diagnosed and corrected.

The “ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light” (located in the instrument cluster) starts to flash as soon as the tires lose traction and the ESC system becomes active. The “ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light” also flashes when TCS is active. If the “ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator

Light” begins to flash during acceleration, ease up on the accelerator and apply as little throttle as possible. Be sure to adapt your speed and driving to the prevailing road conditions.

**NOTE:**

- The “ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light” and the “ESC OFF Indicator Light” come on momentarily each time the ignition is turned ON.
- Each time the ignition is turned ON, the ESC system will be on even if it was turned off previously.
- The ESC system will make buzzing or clicking sounds when it is active. This is normal; the sounds will stop when ESC becomes inactive following the maneuver that caused the ESC activation.



The “ESC OFF Indicator Light” indicates the customer has elected to have the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) in a reduced mode.

## Electronic Roll Mitigation (ERM)

This system anticipates the potential for wheel lift by monitoring the driver's steering wheel input and the speed of the vehicle. When ERM determines that the rate of change of the steering wheel angle and vehicle's speed are sufficient to potentially cause wheel lift, it then applies the appropriate brake and may also reduce engine power to lessen the chance that wheel lift will occur. ERM can only reduce the chance of wheel lift occurring during severe or evasive driving maneuvers; it cannot prevent wheel lift due to other factors, such as road conditions, leaving the roadway, or striking objects or other vehicles.

### NOTE:

ERM is disabled anytime the ESC is in "Full Off" mode (if equipped). Refer to "Electronic Stability Control (ESC)" in this section for a complete explanation of the available ESC modes.

## WARNING!

Many factors, such as vehicle loading, road conditions and driving conditions, influence the chance that wheel lift or rollover may occur. ERM cannot prevent all wheel lift or roll overs, especially those that involve leaving the roadway or striking objects or other vehicles. The capabilities of an ERM-equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner which could jeopardize the user's safety or the safety of others.

## Trailer Sway Control (TSC)

TSC uses sensors in the vehicle to recognize an excessively swaying trailer and will take the appropriate actions to attempt to stop the sway. TSC will become active automatically once an excessively swaying trailer is recognized.

### NOTE:

TSC cannot stop all trailers from swaying. Always use caution when towing a trailer and follow the trailer tongue weight recommendations. Refer to "Trailer Towing" in "Starting And Operating" for further information.

When TSC is functioning, the "ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light" will flash, the engine power may be reduced and you may feel the brakes being applied to individual wheels to attempt to stop the trailer from swaying. TSC is disabled when the ESC system is in the "Partial Off" or "Full Off" modes.

## WARNING!

If TSC activates while driving, slow the vehicle down, stop at the nearest safe location, and adjust the trailer load to eliminate trailer sway.



### Ready Alert Braking (RAB)

Ready Alert Braking may reduce the time required to reach full braking during emergency braking situations. It anticipates when an emergency braking situation may occur by monitoring how fast the throttle is released by the driver. The EBC will prepare the brake system for a panic stop.

### Rain Brake Support (RBS)

Rain Brake Support may improve braking performance in wet conditions. It will periodically apply a small amount of brake pressure to remove any water buildup on the front brake rotors. It functions when the windshield wipers are in LO or HI speed. When Rain Brake Support is active, there is no notification to the driver and no driver interaction is required.

### Dynamic Steering Torque (DST)

Dynamic Steering Torque is a feature of the ESC and Electric Power Steering (EPS) modules that provides torque at the steering wheel for certain driving conditions in which the ESC module is detecting vehicle instability. The torque that the steering wheel receives is only meant to help the driver realize optimal steering behavior in order to reach/maintain vehicle stability. The only notification the driver receives that the feature is active is the torque applied to the steering wheel.

#### NOTE:

The DST feature is only meant to help the driver realize the correct course of action through small torques on the steering wheel, which means the effectiveness of the DST feature is highly dependent on the driver's sensitivity and overall reaction to the applied torque. It is very important to realize that this feature will not steer the vehicle, meaning the driver is still responsible for steering the vehicle.

### Hill Descent Control (HDC) — If Equipped

HDC is intended for low speed off road driving while in 4WD Low Range. HDC maintains vehicle speed while descending hills during various driving situations. HDC controls vehicle speed by actively controlling the brakes.

#### HDC has three states:

1. Off (feature is not enabled and will not activate).
2. Enabled (feature is enabled and ready but activation conditions are not met, or driver is actively overriding with brake or throttle application).
3. Active (feature is enabled and actively controlling vehicle speed).

#### Enabling HDC

HDC is enabled by pushing the HDC switch, but the following conditions must also be met to enable HDC:

- Driveline is in 4WD Low Range
- Vehicle speed is below 5 mph (8 km/h).
- Parking brake is released.
- Driver door is closed.

## Activating HDC

Once HDC is enabled it will activate automatically if driven down a grade of sufficient magnitude. The set speed for HDC is selectable by the driver, and can be adjusted by using the gear shift +/- . The following summarizes the HDC set speeds:

### HDC Target Set Speeds

- P = No set speed. HDC may be enabled but will not activate
- R = 0.6 mph (1 km/h)
- N = 1.2 mph (2 km/h)
- D = 0.6 mph (1 km/h)
- 1st = 0.6 mph (1 km/h)
- 2nd = 1.2 mph (2 km/h)
- 3rd = 1.8 mph (3 km/h)
- 4th = 2.5 mph (4 km/h)
- 5th = 3.1 mph (5 km/h)
- 6th = 3.7 mph (6 km/h)
- 7th = 4.3 mph (7 km/h)
- 8th = 5.0 mph (8 km/h)
- 9th = 5.6 mph (9 km/h) – If Equipped

### NOTE:

During HDC the +/- shifter input is used for HDC target speed selection, but will not affect the gear chosen by the transmission. When actively controlling HDC the transmission will shift appropriately for the driver-selected set speed and corresponding driving conditions.

### Driver Override

The driver may override HDC activation with throttle or brake application at anytime.

### Deactivating HDC

HDC will be deactivated but remain available if any of the following conditions occur:

- Driver overrides HDC set speed with throttle or brake application.
- Vehicle speed exceeds 20 mph (32 km/h) but remains below 40 mph (64 km/h).
- Vehicle is on a downhill grade of insufficient magnitude, is on level ground, or is on an uphill grade.
- Vehicle is shifted to park.

## Disabling HDC

HDC will be deactivated and disabled if any of the following conditions occur:

- The driver pushes the HDC switch.
- The driveline is shifted out of 4WD Low Range.
- The parking brake is applied.
- Driver door opens.
- The vehicle is driven greater than 20 mph (32 km/h) for greater than 70 seconds.
- The vehicle is driven greater than 40 mph (64 km/h) (HDC exits immediately).
- HDC detects excessive brake temperature.

### Feedback To The Driver

The instrument cluster has an HDC icon and the HDC switch has an LED icon, which offers feedback to the driver about the state HDC is in.

- The cluster icon and switch lamp will illuminate and remain on solid when HDC is enabled or activated. This is the normal operating condition for HDC.



- The cluster icon and switch lamp will flash for several seconds then extinguish when the driver pushes the HDC switch but enable conditions are not met.
- The cluster icon and switch lamp will flash for several seconds then extinguish when HDC disables due to excess speed.
- The cluster icon and switch lamp will flash when HDC deactivates due to overheated brakes. The flashing will stop and HDC will activate again once the brakes have cooled sufficiently.

### WARNING!

HDC is only intended to assist the driver in controlling vehicle speed when descending hills. The driver must remain attentive to the driving conditions and is responsible for maintaining a safe vehicle speed.

### Selec Speed Control (SSC) — If Equipped

SSC is intended for off road driving in 4WD Low Range only. SSC maintains vehicle speed by actively controlling engine torque and brakes.

SSC has three states:

1. Off (feature is not enabled and will not activate).
2. Enabled (feature is enabled and ready but activation conditions are not met, or driver is actively overriding with brake or throttle application).
3. Active (feature is enabled and actively controlling vehicle speed).

### Enabling SSC

SSC is enabled by pushing the SSC switch, but the following conditions must also be met to enable SSC:

- Driveline is in 4WD Low Range.
- Vehicle speed is below 5 mph (8 km/h).
- Parking brake is released.
- Driver door is closed.
- Driver is not applying throttle.

### Activating SSC

Once SSC is enabled it will activate automatically once the following conditions are met:

- Driver releases throttle.
- Driver releases brake.
- Transmission is in any selection other than P.
- Vehicle speed is below 20 mph (32 km/h).

The set speed for SSC is selectable by the driver, and can be adjusted by using the gear shift +/- . Additionally, the SSC set speed may be reduced when climbing a grade and the level of set speed reduction depends on the magnitude of grade. The following summarizes the SSC set speeds:

### SSC Target Set Speeds

- 1st = .6 mph (1 km/h)
- 2nd = 1.2 mph (2 km/h)
- 3rd = 1.8 mph (3 km/h)
- 4th = 2.5 mph (4 km/h)
- 5th = 3.1 mph (5 km/h)
- 6th = 3.7 mph (6 km/h)
- 7th = 4.3 mph (7 km/h)

- 8th = 5 mph (8 km/h)
- 9th = 5.6 mph (9 km/h) – If Equipped
- REVERSE = .6 mph (1 km/h)
- NEUTRAL = 1.2 mph (2 km/h)
- PARK = SSC remains enabled but not active

#### NOTE:

- During SSC the +/- shifter input is used for SSC target speed selection but will not affect the gear chosen by the transmission. While actively controlling SSC the transmission will shift appropriately for the driver-selected set speed and corresponding driving conditions.
- SSC performance is influenced by the Terrain Select mode. This difference may be notable to the driver and may be perceived as a varying level of aggressiveness.

#### Driver Override:

The driver may override SSC activation with throttle or brake application at any time.

#### Deactivating SSC

SSC will be deactivated but remain available if any of the following conditions occur:

- Driver overrides SSC set speed with throttle or brake application.
- Vehicle speed exceeds 20 mph (32 km/h) but remains below 40 mph (64 km/h).
- Vehicle is shifted to PARK.

#### Disabling SSC

SSC will deactivate and be disabled if any of the following conditions occur:

- The driver pushes the SSC switch.
- The driveline is shifted out of 4WD Low Range.
- The parking brake is applied.
- Driver door opens.
- The vehicle is driven greater than 20 mph (32 km/h) for greater than 70 seconds.
- The vehicle is driven greater than 40 mph (64 km/h) (SSC exits immediately).

#### Feedback To The Driver:

The instrument cluster has an SSC icon and the SSC switch has an LED which offer feedback to the driver about the state SSC is in.

- The cluster icon and switch lamp will illuminate and remain on solid when SSC is enabled or activated. This is the normal operating condition for SSC.
- The cluster icon and switch lamp will flash for several seconds then extinguish when the driver pushes the SSC switch but enable conditions are not met.
- The cluster icon and switch lamp will flash for several seconds then extinguish when SSC disables due to excess speed.
- The cluster icon and switch lamp will flash then extinguish when SSC deactivates due to overheated brakes.

#### WARNING!

SSC is only intended to assist the driver in controlling vehicle speed when driving in off road conditions. The driver must remain attentive to the driving conditions and is responsible for maintaining a safe vehicle speed.

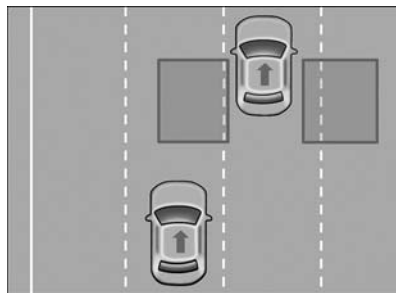


## AUXILIARY DRIVING SYSTEMS

### Blind Spot Monitoring

The Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) system uses two radar-based sensors, located inside the rear bumper fascia, to detect highway licensable vehicles (automobiles, trucks, motorcycles etc.) that enter the blind spot zones from the rear/front/side of the vehicle.

The BSM detection zone covers approximately one lane width on both sides of the vehicle 12 ft (3.8 m). The zone length starts at the outside rear view mirror and extends approximately 10 ft (3 m) beyond the rear bumper of the vehicle. The BSM system monitors the detection zones on both sides of the vehicle when the vehicle speed reaches approximately 6 mph (10 km/h) or higher and will alert the driver of vehicles in these areas.



Rear Detection Zones

When the vehicle is started, the BSM warning light will momentarily illuminate in both outside rear view mirrors to let the driver know that the system is operational. The BSM system sensors operate when the vehicle is in any forward gear or REVERSE and enters stand by mode when the vehicle is in PARK.

The BSM warning light, located in the outside mirrors, will illuminate if a vehicle moves into a blind spot zone.



BSM Warning Light

The BSM system can also be configured to sound an audible (chime) alert and mute the radio to notify you of objects that have entered the detection zones.

### Rear Cross Path (RCP)

The Rear Cross Path (RCP) feature is intended to aid the driver when backing out of parking spaces where the vision of oncoming vehicles may be blocked. Proceed slowly and cautiously out of the parking space until the rear end of the vehicle is exposed. The RCP system will then have a clear view of the cross traffic and if an oncoming vehicle is detected, will alert the driver. When RCP is on



and the vehicle is in REVERSE, the driver is alerted using both the visual and audible alarms, including reducing the radio volume.

Refer to “Blind Spot Monitoring” in “Safety” in the Owner's Manual on [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals) for further details.

### Modes Of Operation

Three selectable modes of operation are available in the Uconnect System. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in the Owner's Manual on [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals) for further details.

### Blind Spot Alert Lights Only

When operating in Blind Spot Alert mode, the BSM system will provide a visual alert in the appropriate side view mirror based on a detected object. However, when the system is operating in Rear Cross Path (RCP) mode, the system will respond with both visual and audible alerts when a detected object is present. Whenever an audible alert is requested, the radio is muted.

### Blind Spot Alert Lights/Chime

When operating in Blind Spot Alert Lights/Chime mode, the BSM system will provide a visual alert in the appropriate side view mirror based on a detected object. If the turn signal is then activated, and it corresponds to an alert present on that side of the vehicle, an audible chime will also be sounded. Whenever a turn signal and detected object are present on the same side at the same time, both the visual and audible alerts will be issued. In addition to the audible alert, the radio (if on) will also be muted.

#### NOTE:

Whenever an audible alert is requested by the BSM system, the radio is also muted.

When the system is in RCP, the system shall respond with both visual and audible alerts when a detected object is present. Whenever an audible alert is requested, the radio is also muted. Turn/hazard signal status is ignored; the RCP state always requests the chime.

### Blind Spot Alert Off

When the BSM system is turned off, there will be no visual or audible alerts from either the BSM or RCP systems.

#### NOTE:

The BSM system will store the current operating mode when the vehicle is shut off. Each time the vehicle is started the previously stored mode will be recalled and used.

### Forward Collision Warning (FCW)

The Forward Collision Warning (FCW) system provides the driver with audible and visual warnings within the instrument cluster display to warn the driver when it detects a potential frontal collision. The warnings are intended to provide the driver with enough time to react, avoid or mitigate the potential collision.

#### NOTE:

FCW monitors the information from the forward looking sensors, as well as the Electronic Brake Controller (EBC), to calculate the probability of a forward collision. When the system determines that a forward collision is probable, the driver will be provided with audible and visual warnings.



## Turning FCW On Or Off

The forward collision button is located in the Uconnect display in the controls settings.

- To turn the FCW system off, press the forward collision button once to turn the system OFF.
- To turn the FCW system back on, press the forward collision button again to turn the system on.

### NOTE:

- The default status of FCW is “on”, this allows the system to warn you of a possible collision with the vehicle in front of you.
- Changing the FCW status to “off” prevents the system from warning you of a possible collision with the vehicle in front of you. If FCW is set to off, “FCW OFF” will appear in the instrument cluster display.

## Changing FCW Status

The FCW feature has two settings and can be changed within the Uconnect System Screen:

- Far
- Near

### Far

The far setting provides warnings for potential collisions more distant in front of the vehicle, allowing the driver to have the most reaction time to avoid a collision.

More cautious drivers that do not mind frequent warnings may prefer this setting.

### NOTE:

This setting gives you the most reaction time.

### Near

Changing the FCW status to the “Near” setting, allows the system to warn you of a potential frontal collision when you are much closer.

This setting provides less reaction time than the “Far” setting, which allows for a more dynamic driving experience.

More dynamic or aggressive drivers that want to avoid frequent warnings may prefer this setting.

### NOTE:

Changing the Active Braking status to off prevents the system from providing autonomous braking, or additional brake support if the driver is not braking adequately in the event of a potential frontal collision. Active braking can be turned off in the Uconnect controls settings.

Refer to your Owner's Manual on [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/) for further details.

## WARNING!

Forward Collision Warning (FCW) is not intended to avoid a collision on its own, nor can FCW detect every type of potential collision. The driver has the responsibility to avoid a collision by controlling the vehicle via braking and steering. Failure to follow this warning could lead to serious injury or death.

## Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS)

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) will warn the driver of a low tire pressure based on the vehicle recommended cold placard pressure.

The tire pressure will vary with temperature by approximately 1 psi (7 kPa) for every 12°F (6.5°C). This means that when the outside temperature decreases, the tire pressure will decrease. Tire pressure should always be set based on cold inflation tire pressure. This is defined as the tire pressure after the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km) after a three hour period. The cold tire inflation pressure must not exceed the maximum inflation pressure molded into the tire sidewall. Refer to “Tires” in “Servicing And Maintenance” for information on how to properly inflate the vehicle’s tires. The tire pressure will also increase as the vehicle is driven. This is normal and there should be no adjustment for this increased pressure.

The TPMS will warn the driver of a low tire pressure if the tire pressure falls below the low-pressure warning limit for any reason, including low temperature effects and natural pressure loss through the tire.

The TPMS will continue to warn the driver of low tire pressure as long as the condition exists, and will not turn off until the tire pressure is at or above the recommended cold placard pressure. Once the low tire pressure warning (Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light) illuminates, you must increase the tire pressure to the recommended cold placard pressure in order for the “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light” to turn off.

### NOTE:

When filling warm tires, the tire pressure may need to be increased up to an additional 4 psi (30 kPa) above the recommended cold placard pressure in order to turn the Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light off.

The system will automatically update and the “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light” will turn off once the system receives the updated tire pressures. The vehicle may need to be driven for up to 20 minutes above 15.5 mph (25 km/h) in order for the TPMS to receive this information.

For example, your vehicle may have a recommended cold (parked for more than three hours) placard pressure of 33 psi (227 kPa). If the ambient temperature is 68°F (20°C) and the measured tire pressure is 28 psi (193 kPa), a temperature drop to 20°F (-7°C) will decrease the tire pressure to approximately 24 psi (165 kPa). This tire pressure is low enough to turn ON the “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light.” Driving the vehicle may cause the tire pressure to rise to approximately 28 psi (193 kPa), but the “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light” will still be on. In this situation, the “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light” will turn off only after the tires are inflated to the vehicle’s recommended cold placard pressure value.



**NOTE:**

When filling warm tires, the tire pressure may need to be increased up to an additional 4 psi (30 kPa) above the recommended cold placard pressure in order to turn the Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light off.

**CAUTION!**

- The TPMS has been optimized for the original equipment tires and wheels. TPMS pressures and warning have been established for the tire size equipped on your vehicle. Undesirable system operation or sensor damage may result when using replacement equipment that is not of the same size, type, and/or style. The TPM sensor is not designed for use on aftermarket wheels, and may contribute to a poor overall system performance. Customers are encouraged to use OEM wheels to assure TPMS feature operation.
- Using aftermarket tire sealants may cause the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) sensor to become inoperable. After using an aftermarket tire sealant it is recommended that you take

**CAUTION!**

your vehicle to an authorized dealer to have your sensor function checked.

- After inspecting or adjusting the tire pressure always reinstall the valve stem cap. This will prevent moisture and dirt from entering the valve stem, which could damage the TPMS sensor.

**NOTE:**

- The TPMS is not intended to replace normal tire care and maintenance, or to provide warning of a tire failure or condition.
- The TPMS should not be used as a tire pressure gauge while adjusting your tire pressure.
- Driving on a significantly underinflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Underinflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

- The TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure using an accurate tire pressure gauge, even if underinflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light".
- Seasonal temperature changes will affect tire pressure, and the TPMS will monitor the actual tire pressure in the tire.

**Premium System**

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) uses wireless technology with wheel rim mounted electronic sensors to monitor tire pressure levels. Sensors, mounted to each wheel as part of the valve stem, transmit tire pressure readings to the receiver module.

**NOTE:**

It is particularly important for you to check the tire pressure in all of the tires on your vehicle monthly and to maintain the proper pressure.

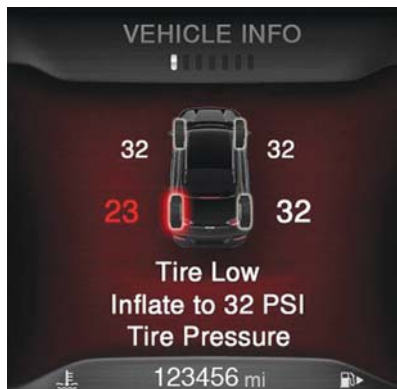
The TPMS consists of the following components:

- Receiver module
- Four tire pressure monitoring sensors
- Various tire pressure monitoring system messages, which display in the instrument cluster
- Tire pressure monitoring telltale light

### Tire Pressure Monitoring Low Pressure Warnings



The “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light” will illuminate in the instrument cluster and a chime will sound when tire pressure is low in one or more of the four active road tires. In addition, the instrument cluster will display a "Tire Low" message for a minimum of five seconds, an "Inflate to XX" message and a graphic showing the pressure values of each tire with the low tire pressure values in a different color.



### Tire Pressure Monitoring Low Pressure Warning

Should this occur, you should stop as soon as possible and inflate the tires with low pressure (those in a different color in the instrument cluster graphic) to the vehicle's recommended cold placard pressure value as shown in the "Inflate to XX" message. Once the system receives the updated tire pressures, the system will automatically update, the pressure values in the graphic display in

the instrument cluster will return to their original color, and the “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light” will turn off.

### NOTE:

When filling warm tires, the tire pressure may need to be increased up to an additional 4 psi (30 kPa) above the recommended cold placard pressure in order to turn the Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light off. The vehicle may need to be driven for up to 20 minutes above 15.5 mph (25 km/h) in order for the TPMS to receive this information.

### Service TPMS Warning

When a system fault is detected, the “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light” will flash on and off for 75 seconds and then remain on solid. The system fault will also sound a chime. In addition, the instrument cluster will display a "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message for a minimum of five seconds and then display dashes (- -) in place of the pressure value to indicate which sensor is not being received.



If the ignition key is cycled, this sequence will repeat, providing the system fault still exists. If the system fault no longer exists, the “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light” will no longer flash, and the “SERVICE TPM SYSTEM” message will no longer display, and a pressure value will display in place of the dashes. A system fault can occur due to any of the following:

- Jamming due to electronic devices or driving next to facilities emitting the same radio frequencies as the TPMS sensors.
- Installing some form of aftermarket window tinting that affects radio wave signals.
- Lots of snow or ice around the wheels or wheel housings.
- Using tire chains on the vehicle.
- Using wheels/tires not equipped with TPMS sensors.

### **Vehicles With Compact Spare or Non-Matching Full Size Spare**

1. The compact spare tire or non-matching full size does not have a tire pressure monitoring sensor. Therefore, the TPMS will not monitor the pressure in the compact spare tire.
2. If you install the compact or non-matching full size spare tire in place of a road tire that has a pressure below the low-pressure warning limit, upon the next ignition key cycle, the “TPMS Telltale Light” will remain on and a chime will sound. In addition, the graphic in the instrument cluster will still display a different color pressure value and an “Inflate to XX” message.
3. After driving the vehicle for up to 20 minutes above 15.5 mph (25 km/h), the “TPMS Telltale Light” will flash on and off for 75 seconds and then remain on solid. In addition, the instrument cluster will display a “Service Tire Pressure System” message for five seconds and then display dashes (- -) in place of the pressure value.
4. For each subsequent ignition key cycle, a chime will sound, the “TPMS Telltale Light” will flash on and off for 75 seconds and then remain on solid, and the instrument cluster will display a “SERVICE TPM SYSTEM” message for five seconds and then display dashes (- -) in place of the pressure value.
5. Once you repair or replace the original road tire and reinstall it on the vehicle in place of the compact spare or non-matching full size, the TPMS will update automatically. In addition, the “TPMS Telltale Light” will turn off and the graphic in the instrument cluster will display a new pressure value instead of dashes (- -), as long as no tire pressure is below the low-pressure warning limit in any of the four active road tires. The vehicle may need to be driven for up to 20 minutes above 15.5 mph (25 km/h) in order for the TPMS to receive this information.

## TPMS Deactivation — If Equipped

The TPMS can be deactivated if replacing all four wheel and tire assemblies (road tires) with wheel and tire assemblies that do not have TPMS Sensors, such as when installing winter wheel and tire assemblies on your vehicle.

To deactivate the TPMS, first replace all four wheel and tire assemblies (road tires) with tires not equipped with Tire Pressure Monitoring (TPM) Sensors. Then, drive the vehicle for 20 minutes above 15.5 mph (25 km/h). The TPMS will chime, the "TPM Telltale Light" will flash on and off for 75 seconds and then remain on. The instrument cluster will display the "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message and then display dashes (--) in place of the pressure values.

Beginning with the next ignition cycle, the TPMS will no longer chime or display the "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message in the instrument cluster but dashes (--) will remain in place of the pressure values.

To reactivate the TPMS, replace all four wheel and tire assemblies (road tires) with tires equipped with TPM sensors. Then, drive

the vehicle for up to 20 minutes above 15.5 mph (25 km/h). The TPMS will chime, the "TPM Telltale Light" will flash on and off for 75 seconds and then turn off. The instrument cluster will display the "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message and then display pressure values in place of the dashes. On the next ignition cycle the "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message will no longer be displayed as long as no system fault exists.

## General Information

The following regulatory statement applies to all radio frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## NOTE:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

## OCCUPANT RESTRAINT SYSTEMS

Some of the most important safety features in your vehicle are the restraint systems:

### Occupant Restraint Systems Features

- Seat Belt Systems
- Supplemental Restraint Systems (SRS) Air Bags
- Child Restraints

Some of the safety features described in this section may be standard equipment on some models, or may be optional equipment on others. If you are not sure, ask your authorized dealer.



## Important Safety Precautions

Please pay close attention to the information in this section. It tells you how to use your restraint system properly, to keep you and your passengers as safe as possible.

Here are some simple steps you can take to minimize the risk of harm from a deploying air bag:

1. Children 12 years old and under should always ride buckled up in a vehicle with a rear seat.
2. If a child from 2 to 12 years old (not in a rear-facing child restraint) must ride in the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible and use the proper child restraint (refer to “Child Restraints” in this section for further information).
3. Children that are not big enough to wear the vehicle seat belt properly (refer to “Child Restraints” in this section for further information) should be secured in a vehicle with a rear seat in child restraints or belt-positioning booster seats. Older

children who do not use child restraints or belt-positioning booster seats should ride properly buckled up in a vehicle with a rear seat.

4. Never allow children to slide the shoulder belt behind them or under their arm.
5. You should read the instructions provided with your child restraint to make sure that you are using it properly.
6. All occupants should always wear their lap and shoulder belts properly.
7. The driver and front passenger seats should be moved back as far as practical to allow the front air bags room to inflate.
8. Do not lean against the door or window. If your vehicle has side air bags, and deployment occurs, the side air bags will inflate forcefully into the space between occupants and the door and occupants could be injured.
9. If the air bag system in this vehicle needs to be modified to accommodate a disabled person, refer to the “Customer Assistance” section for customer service contact information.

### WARNING!

- Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying passenger front air bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.
- Only use a rear-facing child restraint in a vehicle with a rear seat.

## Seat Belt Systems


Buckle up even though you are an excellent driver, even on short trips. Someone on the road may be a poor driver and could cause a collision that includes you. This can happen far away from home or on your own street.

Research has shown that seat belts save lives, and they can reduce the seriousness of injuries in a collision. Some of the worst injuries happen when people are thrown from the vehicle. Seat belts reduce the possibility of ejection and the risk of injury caused by striking the inside of the vehicle. Everyone in a motor vehicle should be belted at all times.



## Enhanced Seat Belt Use Reminder System (BeltAlert)

### Driver And Passenger BeltAlert — If Equipped

 BeltAlert is a feature intended to remind the driver and outboard front seat passenger (if equipped with outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert) to buckle their seat belts. The Belt Alert feature is active whenever the ignition switch is in the START or ON/RUN position.

### Initial Indication

If the driver is unbuckled when the ignition switch is first in the START or ON/RUN position, a chime will signal for a few seconds. If the driver or outboard front seat passenger (if equipped with outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert) is unbuckled when the ignition switch is first in the START or ON/RUN position the Seat Belt Reminder Light will turn on and remain on until both outboard front seat belts are buckled. The outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert is not active when an outboard front passenger seat is unoccupied.

### BeltAlert Warning Sequence

The BeltAlert warning sequence is activated when the vehicle is moving above a specified vehicle speed range and the driver or outboard front seat passenger is unbuckled (if equipped with outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert) (the outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert is not active when the outboard front passenger seat is unoccupied). The BeltAlert warning sequence starts by blinking the Seat Belt Reminder Light and sounding an intermittent chime. Once the BeltAlert warning sequence has completed, the Seat Belt Reminder Light will remain on until the seat belts are buckled. The BeltAlert warning sequence may repeat based on vehicle speed until the driver and occupied outboard front seat passenger seat belts are buckled. The driver should instruct all occupants to buckle their seat belts.

### Change Of Status

If the driver or outboard front seat passenger (if equipped with outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert) unbuckles their seat belt while the vehicle is traveling, the BeltAlert warning sequence will begin until the seat belts are buckled again.

The outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert is not active when the outboard front passenger seat is unoccupied. BeltAlert may be triggered when an animal or other items are placed on the outboard front passenger seat or when the seat is folded flat (if equipped). It is recommended that pets be restrained in the rear seat (if equipped) in pet harnesses or pet carriers that are secured by seat belts, and cargo is properly stowed.

BeltAlert can be activated or deactivated by your authorized dealer. FCA US LLC does not recommend deactivating BeltAlert.



**NOTE:**

If BeltAlert has been deactivated and the driver or outboard front seat passenger (if equipped with outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert) is unbuckled the Seat Belt Reminder Light will turn on and remain on until the driver and outboard front seat passenger seat belts are buckled.

**Lap/Shoulder Belts**

All seating positions in your vehicle are equipped with lap/shoulder belts.

The seat belt webbing retractor will lock only during very sudden stops or collisions. This feature allows the shoulder part of the seat belt to move freely with you under normal conditions. However, in a collision the seat belt will lock and reduce your risk of striking the inside of the vehicle or being thrown out of the vehicle.

**WARNING!**

- Relying on the air bags alone could lead to more severe injuries in a collision. The air bags work with your seat belt to restrain you properly. In some collisions, the air bags won't deploy at all. Always wear your seat belt even though you have air bags.
- In a collision, you and your passengers can suffer much greater injuries if you are not properly buckled up. You can strike the interior of your vehicle or other passengers, or you can be thrown out of the vehicle. Always be sure you and others in your vehicle are buckled up properly.
- It is dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.
- Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.

**WARNING!**

- Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly. Occupants, including the driver, should always wear their seat belts whether or not an air bag is also provided at their seating position to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in the event of a crash.
- Wearing your seat belt incorrectly could make your injuries in a collision much worse. You might suffer internal injuries, or you could even slide out of the seat belt. Follow these instructions to wear your seat belt safely and to keep your passengers safe, too.
- Two people should never be belted into a single seat belt. People belted together can crash into one another in a collision, hurting one another badly. Never use a lap/shoulder belt or a lap belt for more than one person, no matter what their size.

## WARNING!

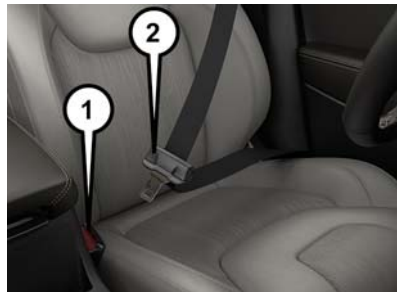
- A lap belt worn too high can increase the risk of injury in a collision. The seat belt forces won't be at the strong hip and pelvic bones, but across your abdomen. Always wear the lap part of your seat belt as low as possible and keep it snug.
- A twisted seat belt may not protect you properly. In a collision, it could even cut into you. Be sure the seat belt is flat against your body, without twists. If you can't straighten a seat belt in your vehicle, take it to your authorized dealer immediately and have it fixed.
- A seat belt that is buckled into the wrong buckle will not protect you properly. The lap portion could ride too high on your body, possibly causing internal injuries. Always buckle your seat belt into the buckle nearest you.
- A seat belt that is too loose will not protect you properly. In a sudden stop, you could move too far forward, increasing the possibility of injury. Wear your seat belt snugly.

## WARNING!

- A seat belt that is worn under your arm is dangerous. Your body could strike the inside surfaces of the vehicle in a collision, increasing head and neck injury. A seat belt worn under the arm can cause internal injuries. Ribs aren't as strong as shoulder bones. Wear the seat belt over your shoulder so that your strongest bones will take the force in a collision.
- A shoulder belt placed behind you will not protect you from injury during a collision. You are more likely to hit your head in a collision if you do not wear your shoulder belt. The lap and shoulder belt are meant to be used together.
- A frayed or torn seat belt could rip apart in a collision and leave you with no protection. Inspect the seat belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays, or loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the seat belt system. Seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision.

## Lap/Shoulder Belt Operating Instructions

1. Enter the vehicle and close the door. Sit back and adjust the seat.
2. The seat belt latch plate is above the back of the front seat, and next to your arm in the rear seat (for vehicles equipped with a rear seat). Grasp the latch plate and pull out the seat belt. Slide the latch plate up the webbing as far as necessary to allow the seat belt to go around your lap.



**Pulling Out The Latch Plate**

- 1 — Seat Belt Buckle  
2 — Seat Belt Latch Plate



3. When the seat belt is long enough to fit, insert the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a “click.”



**Inserting Latch Plate Into Buckle**

- 2 — Insert the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a “click.”
- 

4. Position the lap belt so that it is snug and lies low across your hips, below your abdomen. To remove slack in the lap belt portion, pull up on the shoulder belt. To loosen the lap belt if it is too tight, tilt the latch plate and pull on the lap belt. A snug seat belt reduces the risk of sliding under the seat belt in a collision.
5. Position the shoulder belt across the shoulder and chest with minimal, if any slack so that it is comfortable and not resting on your neck. The retractor will withdraw any slack in the shoulder belt.
6. To release the seat belt, push the red button on the buckle. The seat belt will automatically retract to its stowed position. If necessary, slide the latch plate down the webbing to allow the seat belt to retract fully.

### **Lap/Shoulder Belt Untwisting Procedure**

Use the following procedure to untwist a twisted lap/shoulder belt.

1. Position the latch plate as close as possible to the anchor point.
2. At about 6 to 12 inches (15 to 30 cm) above the latch plate, grasp and twist the seat belt webbing 180 degrees to create a fold that begins immediately above the latch plate.
3. Slide the latch plate upward over the folded webbing. The folded webbing must enter the slot at the top of the latch plate.
4. Continue to slide the latch plate up until it clears the folded webbing and the seat belt is no longer twisted.

## Adjustable Upper Shoulder Belt Anchorage

In the driver and front passenger seats, the top of the shoulder belt can be adjusted upward or downward to position the seat belt away from your neck. Push or squeeze the anchorage button to release the anchorage, and move it up or down to the position that serves you best.



Adjustable Anchorage

As a guide, if you are shorter than average, you will prefer the shoulder belt anchorage in a lower position, and if you are taller than average, you will prefer the shoulder belt anchorage in a higher position. After you release the anchorage button, try to move it up or down to make sure that it is locked in position.

### NOTE:

The adjustable upper shoulder belt anchorage is equipped with an Easy Up feature. This feature allows the shoulder belt anchorage to be adjusted in the upward position without pushing or squeezing the release button. To verify the shoulder belt anchorage is latched, pull downward on the shoulder belt anchorage until it is locked into position.

### WARNING!

- Wearing your seat belt incorrectly could make your injuries in a collision much worse. You might suffer internal injuries, or you could even slide out of the seat belt. Follow these instructions to wear

### WARNING!

your seat belt safely and to keep your passengers safe, too.

- Position the shoulder belt across the shoulder and chest with minimal, if any slack so that it is comfortable and not resting on your neck. The retractor will withdraw any slack in the shoulder belt.
- Misadjustment of the seat belt could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt in a crash.

### Seat Belt Extender

If a seat belt is not long enough to fit properly, even when the webbing is fully extended and the adjustable upper shoulder belt anchorage (if equipped) is in its lowest position, your authorized dealer can provide you with a Seat Belt Extender. The Seat Belt Extender should be used only if the existing seat belt is not long enough. When the Seat Belt Extender is not required for a different occupant, it must be removed.



**WARNING!**

- ONLY use a Seat Belt Extender if it is physically required in order to properly fit the original seat belt system. DO NOT USE the Seat Belt Extender if, when worn, the distance between the front edge of the Seat Belt Extender buckle and the center of the occupant's body is LESS than 6 inches.
- Using a Seat Belt Extender when not needed can increase the risk of serious injury or death in a collision. Only use the Seat Belt Extender when the lap belt is not long enough and only use in the recommended seating positions. Remove and store the Seat Belt Extender when not needed.

**Seat Belts And Pregnant Women****Pregnant Women And Seat Belts**

Seat belts must be worn by all occupants including pregnant women: the risk of injury in the event of an accident is reduced for the mother and the unborn child if they are wearing a seat belt.

Position the lap belt snug and low below the abdomen and across the strong bones of the hips. Place the shoulder belt across the chest and away from the neck. Never place the shoulder belt behind the back or under the arm.

**Seat Belt Pretensioner**

The front seat belt system is equipped with pretensioning devices that are designed to remove slack from the seat belt in the event of a collision. These devices may improve the performance of the seat belt by removing slack from the seat belt early in a collision. Pretensioners work for all size occupants, including those in child restraints.

**NOTE:**

These devices are not a substitute for proper seat belt placement by the occupant. The seat belt still must be worn snugly and positioned properly.

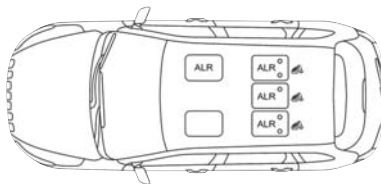
The pretensioners are triggered by the Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC). Like the air bags, the pretensioners are single use items. A deployed pretensioner or a deployed air bag must be replaced immediately.

## Energy Management Feature

This vehicle has a seat belt system with an Energy Management feature in the front seating positions that may help further reduce the risk of injury in the event of a collision. The seat belt system has a retractor assembly that is designed to release webbing in a controlled manner.

## Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR)

The seat belts in the passenger seating positions are equipped with a Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) which is used to secure a child restraint system. For additional information, refer to “Installing Child Restraints Using The Vehicle Seat Belt” under the “Child Restraints” section of this manual. The table below defines the type of feature for each seating position.



### ALR — Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor

If the passenger seating position is equipped with an ALR and is being used for normal usage, only pull the seat belt webbing out far enough to comfortably wrap around the occupant's mid-section so as to not activate the ALR. If the ALR is activated, you will hear a clicking sound as the seat belt retracts. Allow the webbing to retract completely in this case and then carefully pull out only the amount of webbing necessary to comfortably wrap around the occupant's mid-section. Slide the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click."

In Automatic Locking Mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The seat belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. Use the Automatic Locking Mode anytime a child restraint is installed in a seating position that has a seat belt with this feature. Children 12 years old and under should always be properly restrained in a vehicle with a rear seat.

### WARNING!

- Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying passenger front air bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.
- Only use a rear-facing child restraint in a vehicle with a rear seat.

### How To Engage The Automatic Locking Mode

1. Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire seat belt is extracted.



3. Allow the seat belt to retract. As the seat belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the seat belt is now in the Automatic Locking Mode.

### How To Disengage The Automatic Locking Mode

Unbuckle the combination lap/shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the Automatic Locking Mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.

#### WARNING!

- The seat belt assembly must be replaced if the switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) feature or any other seat belt function is not working properly when checked according to the procedures in the Service Manual.
- Failure to replace the seat belt assembly could increase the risk of injury in collisions.
- Do not use the Automatic Locking Mode to restrain occupants who are wearing the seat belt or children who are using booster seats. The locked mode is only

#### WARNING!


used to install rear-facing or forward-facing child restraints that have a harness for restraining the child.

### Supplemental Restraint Systems (SRS)

Some of the safety features described in this section may be standard equipment on some models, or may be optional equipment on others. If you are not sure, ask your authorized dealer.


The air bag system must be ready to protect you in a collision. The Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) monitors the internal circuits and interconnecting wiring associated with the electrical Air Bag System Components. Your vehicle may be equipped with the following Air Bag System Components:

#### Air Bag System Components

- Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC)
- Air Bag Warning Light 
- Steering Wheel and Column
- Instrument Panel
- Knee Impact Bolsters

- Driver and Front Passenger Air Bags
- Supplemental Side Air Bags
- Supplemental Knee Air Bags
- Front and Side Impact Sensors
- Seat Belt Pretensioners
- Seat Track Position Sensors
- Seat Belt Buckle Switch
- Occupant Classification System

#### Air Bag Warning Light

 The ORC monitors the readiness of the electronic parts of the air bag system whenever the ignition switch is in the START or ON/RUN position. If the ignition switch is in the OFF position or in the ACC position, the air bag system is not on and the air bags will not inflate.

The ORC contains a backup power supply system that may deploy the air bag system even if the battery loses power or it becomes disconnected prior to deployment.

The ORC turns on the Air Bag Warning Light in the instrument panel for approximately four to eight seconds for a self-check when the ignition switch is first in the ON/RUN



position. After the self-check, the Air Bag Warning Light will turn off. If the ORC detects a malfunction in any part of the system, it turns on the Air Bag Warning Light, either momentarily or continuously. A single chime will sound to alert you if the light comes on again after initial startup.

The ORC also includes diagnostics that will illuminate the instrument panel Air Bag Warning Light if a malfunction is detected that could affect the air bag system. The diagnostics also record the nature of the malfunction. While the air bag system is designed to be maintenance free, if any of the following occurs, have an authorized dealer service the air bag system immediately.

- The Air Bag Warning Light does not come on during the four to eight seconds when the ignition switch is first in the ON/RUN position.
- The Air Bag Warning Light remains on after the four to eight-second interval.
- The Air Bag Warning Light comes on intermittently or remains on while driving.

**NOTE:**

If the speedometer, tachometer, or any engine related gauges are not working, the Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) may also be disabled. In this condition the air bags may not be ready to inflate for your protection. Have an authorized dealer service the air bag system immediately.

**WARNING!**

Ignoring the Air Bag Warning Light in your instrument panel could mean you won't have the air bag system to protect you in a collision. If the light does not come on as a bulb check when the ignition is first turned on, stays on after you start the vehicle, or if it comes on as you drive, have an authorized dealer service the air bag system immediately.

**Redundant Air Bag Warning Light**



If a fault with the Air Bag Warning Light is detected, which could affect the Supplemental Restraint System (SRS), the Redundant Air Bag Warning Light will illuminate on the instrument panel. The Redundant Air Bag Warning Light will stay on until the fault is cleared. In addition, a single chime will sound to alert you that the Redundant Air Bag Warning Light has come on and a fault has been detected. If the Redundant Air Bag Warning Light comes on intermittently or remains on while driving have an authorized dealer service the vehicle immediately. For additional information regarding the Redundant Air Bag Warning Light, refer to “Warning/Indicator Lights And Messages” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” section of this manual.



## Front Air Bags

This vehicle has front air bags and lap/shoulder belts for both the driver and front passenger. The front air bags are a supplement to the seat belt restraint systems. The driver front air bag is mounted in the center of the steering wheel. The passenger front air bag is mounted in the instrument panel, above the glove compartment. The words “SRS AIRBAG” or “AIRBAG” are embossed on the air bag covers.



### Front Air Bag And Knee Impact Bolster Locations

- 1 — Driver And Passenger Front Air Bags
- 2 — Supplemental Passenger Knee Air Bag/Passenger Knee Impact Bolster
- 3 — Supplemental Driver Knee Air Bag/Driver Knee Impact Bolster

### WARNING!

- Being too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel during front air bag deployment could cause serious injury, including death. Air bags need room to inflate. Sit back, comfortably extending your arms to reach the steering wheel or instrument panel.
- Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying passenger front air bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.
- Only use a rear-facing child restraint in a vehicle with a rear seat.

### Driver And Passenger Front Air Bag Features

The Advanced Front Air Bag system has multistage driver and front passenger air bags. This system provides output appropriate to the severity and type of collision as determined by the Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC), which may receive information from the front impact sensors (if equipped) or other system components.

The first stage inflator is triggered immediately during an impact that requires air bag deployment. A low energy output is used in less severe collisions. A higher energy output is used for more severe collisions.

This vehicle may be equipped with a driver and/or front passenger seat belt buckle switch that detects whether the driver or front passenger seat belt is buckled. The seat belt buckle switch may adjust the inflation rate of the Advanced Front Air Bags.

This vehicle may be equipped with driver and/or front passenger seat track position sensors that may adjust the inflation rate of the Advanced Front Air Bags based upon seat position.

This vehicle is equipped with a right front passenger Occupant Classification System (“OCS”) that is designed to provide Passenger Advanced Front Air Bag output appropriate to the occupant’s seated weight input, as determined by the OCS.

## WARNING!

- No objects should be placed over or near the air bag on the instrument panel or steering wheel because any such objects could cause harm if the vehicle is in a collision severe enough to cause the air bag to inflate.
- Do not put anything on or around the air bag covers or attempt to open them manually. You may damage the air bags and you could be injured because the air bags may no longer be functional. The protective covers for the air bag cushions are designed to open only when the air bags are inflating.
- Relying on the air bags alone could lead to more severe injuries in a collision. The air bags work with your seat belt to restrain you properly. In some collisions, air bags won’t deploy at all. Always wear your seat belts even though you have air bags.

## Front Air Bag Operation

Front Air Bags are designed to provide additional protection by supplementing the seat belts. Front air bags are not expected to reduce the risk of injury in rear, side, or rollover collisions. The front air bags will not deploy in all frontal collisions, including some that may produce substantial vehicle damage — for example, some pole collisions, truck underrides, and angle offset collisions.

On the other hand, depending on the type and location of impact, front air bags may deploy in crashes with little vehicle front-end damage but that produce a severe initial deceleration.

Because air bag sensors measure vehicle deceleration over time, vehicle speed and damage by themselves are not good indicators of whether or not an air bag should have deployed.

Seat belts are necessary for your protection in all collisions, and also are needed to help keep you in position, away from an inflating air bag.




When the ORC detects a collision requiring the front air bags, it signals the inflator units. A large quantity of non-toxic gas is generated to inflate the front air bags.

The steering wheel hub trim cover and the upper right side of the instrument panel separate and fold out of the way as the air bags inflate to their full size. The front air bags fully inflate in less time than it takes to blink your eyes. The front air bags then quickly deflate while helping to restrain the driver and front passenger.

### Occupant Classification System (OCS) — Front Passenger Seat

The OCS is part of a Federally regulated safety system for this vehicle. It is designed to provide Passenger Advanced Front Air Bag output appropriate to the occupant's seated weight, as determined by the OCS.

The Occupant Classification System (OCS) consists of the following:

- Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC)
- Occupant Classification Module (OCM) and Sensor located in the front passenger seat
- Air Bag Warning Light 

### Occupant Classification Module (OCM) And Sensor

The Occupant Classification Module (OCM) is located underneath the front passenger seat. The Sensor is located beneath the passenger seat cushion foam. Any weight on the seat will be sensed by the Sensor. The OCM uses input from the Sensor to determine the front passenger's most probable classification. The OCM communicates this information to the ORC. The ORC may reduce the inflation rate of the Passenger Advanced Front Air Bag deployment based on occupant classification. In order for the OCS to operate as designed, it is important for the front passenger to be seated properly and properly wearing the seat belt.

The OCS will NOT prevent deployment of the Passenger Advanced Front Air Bag. The OCS may reduce the inflation rate of the Passenger Advanced Front Air Bag if the OCS estimates that:

- The front passenger seat is unoccupied or has very light objects on it; or
- The front passenger seat is occupied by a small passenger, including a child; or

- The front passenger seat is occupied by a rear-facing child restraint; or
- The front passenger is not properly seated or his or her weight is taken off of the seat for a period of time.

Front Passenger Seat Occupant Status	Front Passenger Air Bag Output
Rear-facing child restraint	Reduced-power deployment
Child, including a child in a forward-facing child restraint or booster seat*	Reduced-power deployment OR Full-power deployment
Properly seated adult	Full-power deployment OR reduced-power deployment
Unoccupied seat	Reduced-power deployment

\* It is possible for a child to be classified as an adult, allowing a full-power Passenger Advanced Front Air Bag deployment. Never allow children to ride in the front passenger seat and never install a child restraint system, including a rear-facing child restraint, in the front passenger seat.

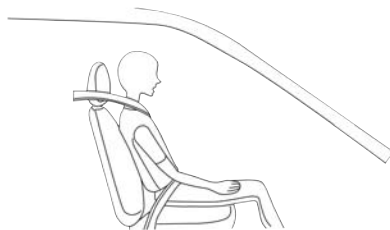
## WARNING!

- Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying passenger front air bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.
- Only use a rear-facing child restraint in a vehicle with a rear seat.
- Children 12 years or younger should always ride buckled up in a vehicle with a rear seat.

The OCS determines the front passenger's most probable classification. The OCS estimates the seated weight on the front passenger seat and where that weight is located. The OCS communicates the classification status to the ORC. The ORC uses the classification to determine whether the Passenger Advanced Front Air Bag inflation rate should be adjusted.

In order for the OCS to operate as designed, it is important for the front passenger to be seated properly and properly wearing the seat belt. Properly seated passengers are:

- Sitting upright
- Facing forward
- Sitting in the center of the seat with their feet comfortably on or near the floor
- Sitting with their back against the seatback and the seatback in an upright position



Seated Properly

## Lighter Weight Passengers (Including Small Adults)

When a lighter weight passenger, including a small adult, occupies the front passenger seat, the OCS may reduce the inflation rate of the Passenger Advanced Front Air Bag. This does not mean that the OCS is working improperly.

### Do not decrease OR increase the front passenger's seated weight on the front passenger seat

The front passenger's seated weight must be properly positioned on the front passenger seat. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or death. The OCS determines the most probable classification of the occupant that it detects. The OCS will detect the front passenger's decreased or increased seated weight, which may result in an adjusted inflation rate of the Passenger Advanced Front Air Bag in a collision. This does not mean that the OCS is working improperly. Decreasing the front passenger's seated weight on the front passenger seat may result in a reduced-power deployment of the Passenger Advanced Front Air Bag. Increasing the front passenger's seated

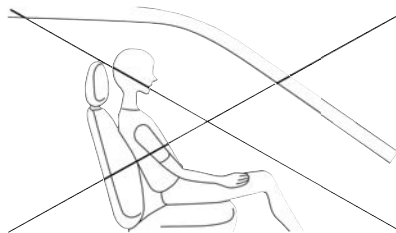


weight on the front passenger seat may result in a full-power deployment of the Passenger Advanced Front Air Bag.

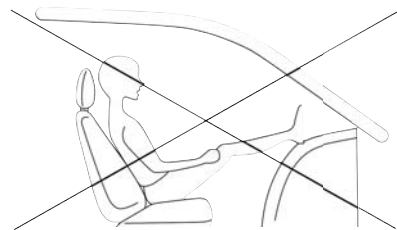
Examples of improper front passenger seating include:

- The front passenger's weight is transferred to another part of the vehicle (like the door, arm rest or instrument panel).
- The front passenger leans forward, sideways, or turns to face the rear of the vehicle.
- The front passenger's seatback is not in the full upright position.
- The front passenger carries or holds an object while seated (e.g., backpack, box, etc.).
- Objects are lodged under the front passenger seat.
- Objects are lodged between the front passenger seat and center console.
- Accessories that may change the seated weight on the front passenger seat are attached to the front passenger seat.
- Anything that may decrease or increase the front passenger's seated weight.

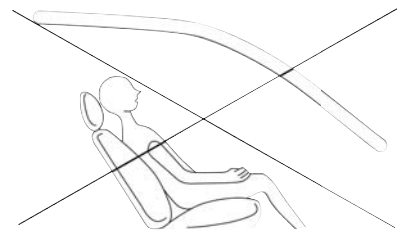
The OCS determines the front passenger's most probable classification. If an occupant in the front passenger seat is seated improperly, the occupant may provide an output signal to the OCS that is different from the occupant's properly seated weight input, for example:



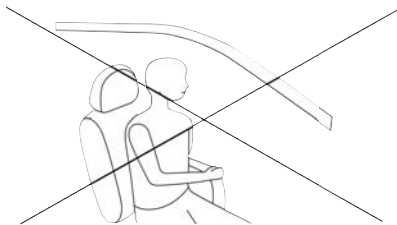
**Not Seated Properly**



**Not Seated Properly**



**Not Seated Properly**



**Not Seated Properly**


### **WARNING!**


- If a child restraint system, child, small teenager or adult in the front passenger seat is seated improperly, the occupant may provide an output signal to the OCS that is different from the occupant's properly seated weight input. This may result in serious injury or death in a collision.
- Always wear your seat belt and sit properly, with the seatback in an upright position, your back against the seatback, sitting upright, facing forward, in

### **WARNING!**

the center of the seat, with your feet comfortably on or near the floor.

- Do not carry or hold any objects (e.g., backpacks, boxes, etc.) while seated in the front passenger seat. Holding an object may provide an output signal to the OCS that is different than the occupant's properly seated weight input, which may result in serious injury or death in a collision.
- Placing an object on the floor under the front passenger seat may prevent the OCS from working properly, which may result in serious injury or death in a collision. Do not place any objects on the floor under the front passenger seat.

The Air Bag Warning Light  in the instrument panel will turn on whenever the OCS is unable to classify the front passenger seat status. A malfunction in the OCS may affect the operation of the air bag system.

If the Air Bag Warning Light  does not come on, or stays on after you start the vehicle, or it comes on as you drive, take the vehicle to an authorized dealer for service immediately.

The passenger seat assembly contains critical OCS components that may affect the Passenger Advanced Front Air Bag inflation. In order for the OCS to properly classify the seated weight of a front seat passenger, the OCS components must function as designed. Do not make any modifications to the front passenger seat components, assembly, or to the seat cover. If the seat, trim cover, or cushion needs service for any reason, take the vehicle to your authorized dealer. Only FCA US LLC approved seat accessories may be used.

The following requirements must be strictly followed:

- Do not modify the front passenger seat assembly or components in any way.



- Do not use prior or future model year seat covers or cushions not designated by FCA US LLC for the specific model being repaired. Always use the correct seat cover and cushion specified for the vehicle.
- Do not replace the seat cover or cushion with an aftermarket seat cover or cushion.
- Do not add a secondary seat cover or mat.
- At no time should any Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) component or SRS related component or fastener be modified or replaced with any part except those which are approved by FCA US LLC.

**WARNING!**

- Unapproved modifications or service procedures to the passenger seat assembly, its related components, seat cover or cushion may inadvertently change the air bag deployment in case of a frontal collision. This could result in death or serious injury to the front passenger if the vehicle is involved in a collision. A modified vehicle may not comply with required Federal Motor Vehicle Safety

**WARNING!**

Standards (FMVSS) and/or Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (CMVSS).

- If it is necessary to modify the air bag system for persons with disabilities, contact your authorized dealer.

### Occupant Classification System (OCS) – Front Passenger Seat Equipped With Flip 'n Stow

The front passenger seat may be equipped with Flip 'n Stow Front Passenger Seat Storage (refer to "Internal Equipment" in Getting To Know Your Vehicle" for additional information). Make sure that objects inside the Flip 'n Stow Front Passenger Seat Storage bin do not interfere with the latch before closing the seat. In addition, after closing the Front Passenger Seat Storage bin, make sure the front passenger seat cushion is pushed downward and fully latched to the base. Over-stuffing the storage bin may result in the OCS inaccurately classifying the front passenger's seated weight.

**WARNING!**

Make sure that objects inside the Flip 'n Stow Front Passenger Seat Storage bin do not interfere with the latch before closing the seat. In addition, after closing the Front Passenger Seat Storage bin, make sure the front passenger seat cushion is pushed downward and fully latched to the base. Over-stuffing the storage bin, or a not fully latched passenger seat cushion, may result in misclassification of the front passenger's weight. This may result in serious injury or death in a collision.

### Knee Impact Bolsters

The Knee Impact Bolsters help protect the knees of the driver and front passenger, and position the front occupants for improved interaction with the front air bags.

**WARNING!**

- Do not drill, cut, or tamper with the knee impact bolsters in any way.



## WARNING!

- Do not mount any accessories to the knee impact bolsters such as alarm lights, stereos, citizen band radios, etc.

### Supplemental Knee Air Bags

#### Supplemental Driver And Front Passenger Knee Air Bags

This vehicle is equipped with a Supplemental Driver Knee Air Bag mounted in the instrument panel below the steering column and a Supplemental Passenger Knee Air Bag mounted in the instrument panel below the glove compartment. The Supplemental Knee Air Bags provide enhanced protection during a frontal impact by working together with the seat belts, pretensioners, and front air bags.

### Supplemental Side Air Bags

Your vehicle is equipped with two types of side air bags:

1. **Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Air Bags (SABs):** Located in the outboard side of the front seats. The SABs are marked with a “SRS AIRBAG” or “AIRBAG” label sewn into the outboard side of the seats.



Front Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Air Bag Label

The SABs may help to reduce the risk of occupant injury during certain side impacts and/or vehicle rollover events, in addition to the injury reduction potential provided by the seat belts and body structure.

When the SAB deploys, it opens the seam on the outboard side of the seatback's trim cover (front seats) and the seam on the outboard side of the seat cushion's trim cover (outboard rear seats — if equipped with rear SABs). The inflating SAB deploys through the seat seam into the space between the occupant and the door. The SAB moves at a very high speed and with such a high force that it could injure occupants if they are not seated properly, or if items are positioned in the area where the SAB inflates. Children are at an even greater risk of injury from a deploying air bag.



**WARNING!**

Do not use accessory seat covers or place objects between you and the Side Air Bags; the performance could be adversely affected and/or objects could be pushed into you, causing serious injury.

2. **Supplemental Side Air Bag Inflatable Curtains (SABICs):** Located above the side windows. The trim covering the SABICs is labeled “SRS AIRBAG” or “AIRBAG.”



**Supplemental Side Air Bag Inflatable Curtain (SABIC) Label Location**

SABICs may help reduce the risk of head or other injuries to front and rear seat outboard occupants in certain side impacts and/or vehicle rollover events, in addition to the injury reduction potential provided by the seat belts and body structure.

The SABICs deploy downward, covering the side windows. An inflating SABIC pushes the outside edge of the trim out of the way and covers the window. The SABICs inflate with enough force to injure occupants if they are not belted and seated properly, or if items are positioned in the area where the SABICs inflate. Children are at an even greater risk of injury from a deploying air bag.

**WARNING!**

- Do not stack luggage or other cargo up high enough to block the deployment of the SABICs. The trim covering above the side windows where the SABIC and its deployment path are located should remain free from any obstructions.

**WARNING!**

- In order for the SABICs to work as intended, do not install any accessory items in your vehicle which could alter the roof. Do not add an aftermarket sunroof to your vehicle. Do not add roof racks that require permanent attachments (bolts or screws) for installation on the vehicle roof. Do not drill into the roof of the vehicle for any reason.

The SABICs and SABs (“Side Air Bags”) are designed to activate in certain side impacts and certain rollover events. The Occupant Restraint Controller (“ORC”) determines whether the deployment of the Side Air Bags in a particular side impact or rollover event is appropriate, based on the severity and type of collision. Vehicle damage by itself is not a good indicator of whether or not Side Air Bags should have deployed.

Side Air Bags are a supplement to the seat belt restraint system. Side Air Bags deploy in less time than it takes to blink your eyes.

## WARNING!

- Occupants, including children, who are up against or very close to Side Air Bags can be seriously injured or killed. Occupants, including children, should never lean on or sleep against the door, side windows, or area where the side air bags inflate, even if they are in an infant or child restraint.
- Seat belts (and child restraints where appropriate) are necessary for your protection in all collisions. They also help keep you in position, away from an inflating Side Air Bag. To get the best protection from the Side Air Bags, occupants must wear their seat belts properly and sit upright with their backs against the seats. Children must be properly restrained in a child restraint or booster seat that is appropriate for the size of the child.

## WARNING!

- Side Air Bags need room to inflate. Do not lean against the door or window. Sit upright in the center of the seat.
- Being too close to the Side Air Bags during deployment could cause you to be severely injured or killed.
- Relying on the Side Air Bags alone could lead to more severe injuries in a collision. The Side Air Bags work with your seat belt to restrain you properly. In some collisions, Side Air Bags won't deploy at all. Always wear your seat belt even though you have Side Air Bags.

### NOTE:

Air bag covers may not be obvious in the interior trim, but they will open during air bag deployment.

### Side Impacts

In side impacts, the side impact sensors aid the ORC in determining the appropriate response to impact events. The system is calibrated to deploy the Side Air Bags on the impact side of the vehicle during impacts

that require Side Air Bag occupant protection. In side impacts, the Side Air Bags deploy independently; a left side impact deploys the left Side Air Bags only and a right side impact deploys the right Side Air Bags only.

The Side Air Bags will not deploy in all side collisions, including some collisions at certain angles, or some side collisions that do not impact the area of the passenger compartment. The Side Air Bags may deploy during angled or offset frontal collisions where the front air bags deploy.

### Rollover Events

Side Air Bags are designed to activate in certain rollover events. The ORC determines whether the deployment of the Side Air Bags in a particular rollover event is appropriate, based on the severity and type of collision. Vehicle damage by itself is not a good indicator of whether or not Side Air Bags should have deployed.

The Side Air Bags will not deploy in all rollover events. The rollover sensing-system determines if a rollover event may be in progress and whether deployment is appro-




appropriate. A slower-developing event may deploy the seat belt pretensioners on both sides of the vehicle. A faster-developing event may deploy the seat belt pretensioners as well as the Side Air Bags on both sides of the vehicle. The rollover sensing-system may also deploy the seat belt pretensioners, with or without the Side Air Bags, on both sides of the vehicle if the vehicle experiences a near rollover event.

The SABICs may help reduce the risk of partial or complete ejection of vehicle occupants through side windows in certain rollover or side impact events.

The Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) monitors the internal circuits and interconnecting wiring associated with electrical Air Bag System Components listed below:

### Air Bag System Components

- Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC)
- Air Bag Warning Light 
- Steering Wheel and Column
- Instrument Panel
- Knee Impact Bolsters

- Driver and Front Passenger Air Bags
- Supplemental Side Air Bags
- Supplemental Knee Air Bags
- Front and Side Impact Sensors
- Seat Belt Pretensioners
- Seat Track Position Sensors
- Seat Belt Buckle Switch
- Occupant Classification System

### If A Deployment Occurs

The front air bags are designed to deflate immediately after deployment.

#### NOTE:

Front and/or side air bags will not deploy in all collisions. This does not mean something is wrong with the air bag system.

If you do have a collision which deploys the air bags, any or all of the following may occur:

- The air bag material may sometimes cause abrasions and/or skin reddening to the occupants as the air bags deploy and unfold. The abrasions are similar to friction rope burns or those you might get sliding along a carpet or gymnasium floor. They

are not caused by contact with chemicals. They are not permanent and normally heal quickly. However, if you haven't healed significantly within a few days, or if you have any blistering, see your doctor immediately.

- As the air bags deflate, you may see some smoke-like particles. The particles are a normal by-product of the process that generates the non-toxic gas used for air bag inflation. These airborne particles may irritate the skin, eyes, nose, or throat. If you have skin or eye irritation, rinse the area with cool water. For nose or throat irritation, move to fresh air. If the irritation continues, see your doctor. If these particles settle on your clothing, follow the garment manufacturer's instructions for cleaning.

Do not drive your vehicle after the air bags have deployed. If you are involved in another collision, the air bags will not be in place to protect you.

## WARNING!

Deployed air bags and seat belt pretensioners cannot protect you in another collision. Have the air bags, seat belt pretensioners, and the seat belt retractor assemblies replaced by an authorized dealer immediately. Also, have the Occupant Restraint Controller System serviced as well.

### NOTE:

- Air bag covers may not be obvious in the interior trim, but they will open during air bag deployment.
- After any collision, the vehicle should be taken to an authorized dealer immediately.

## Enhanced Accident Response System

In the event of an impact, if the communication network remains intact, and the power remains intact, depending on the nature of the event, the ORC will determine whether to have the Enhanced Accident Response System perform the following functions:

- Cut off fuel to the engine.
- Flash hazard lights as long as the battery has power or until the hazard light button is pressed. The hazard lights can be deactivated by pressing the hazard light button.
- Turn on the interior lights, which remain on as long as the battery has power.
- Unlock the power door locks.

### Enhanced Accident Response System Reset Procedure

In order to reset the Enhanced Accident Response System functions after an event, the ignition switch must be changed from ignition START or ON/RUN to ignition OFF. Carefully check the vehicle for fuel leaks in the engine compartment and on the ground near the engine compartment and fuel tank before resetting the system and starting the engine.

## Maintaining Your Air Bag System

### WARNING!

- Modifications to any part of the air bag system could cause it to fail when you need it. You could be injured if the air bag system is not there to protect you. Do not modify the components or wiring, including adding any kind of badges or stickers to the steering wheel hub trim cover or the upper right side of the instrument panel. Do not modify the front bumper, vehicle body structure, or add aftermarket side steps or running boards.
- It is dangerous to try to repair any part of the air bag system yourself. Be sure to tell anyone who works on your vehicle that it has an air bag system.
- Do not attempt to modify any part of your air bag system. The air bag may inflate accidentally or may not function properly if modifications are made. Take your vehicle to your authorized dealer for any air bag system service. If your seat, including your trim cover and cushion,



**WARNING!**

needs to be serviced in any way (including removal or loosening/tightening of seat attachment bolts), take the vehicle to an authorized dealer. Only manufacturer approved seat accessories may be used. If it is necessary to modify the air bag system for persons with disabilities, contact an authorized dealer.

**Event Data Recorder (EDR)**

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;

- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

**NOTE:**

EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

**Child Restraints**

Everyone in your vehicle needs to be buckled up at all times, including babies and children. Every state in the United States, and every Canadian province, requires that small children ride in proper restraint systems. This is the law, and you can be prosecuted for ignoring it.

Children 12 years or younger should ride properly buckled up in a rear seat, if available. According to crash statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats rather than in the front.

**WARNING!**

In a collision, an unrestrained child can become a projectile inside the vehicle. The force required to hold even an infant on your lap could become so great that you could not hold the child, no matter how strong you are. The child and others could be badly injured. Any child riding in your vehicle should be in a proper restraint for the child's size.

There are different sizes and types of restraints for children from newborn size to the child almost large enough for an adult safety belt. Always check the child seat Owner's Manual to make sure you have the correct seat for your child. Carefully read and follow all the instructions and warnings in the child restraint Owner's Manual and on all the labels attached to the child restraint.

Before buying any restraint system, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets all applicable Safety Standards. You should also make sure that you can install it in the vehicle where you will use it.

**NOTE:**

- For additional information, refer to [www.safercar.gov/parents/index.htm](http://www.safercar.gov/parents/index.htm) or call: 1-888-327-4236
- Canadian residents should refer to Transport Canada's website for additional information: <http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/motorvehiclesafety/safedrivers-childsafety-index-53.htm>

**Summary Of Recommendations For Restraining Children In Vehicles**

	<b>Child Size, Height, Weight or Age</b>	<b>Recommended Type of Child Restraint</b>
Infants and Toddlers	Children who are two years old or younger and who have not reached the height or weight limits of their child restraint	Either an Infant Carrier or a Convertible Child Restraint, facing rearward in the rear seat of the vehicle
Small Children	Children who are at least two years old or who have out-grown the height or weight limit of their rear-facing child restraint	Forward-Facing Child Restraint with a five-point Harness, facing forward in the rear seat of the vehicle
Larger Children	Children who have out-grown their forward-facing child restraint, but are too small to properly fit the vehicle's seat belt	Belt Positioning Booster Seat and the vehicle seat belt, seated in the rear seat of the vehicle
Children Too Large for Child Restraints	Children 12 years old or younger, who have out-grown the height or weight limit of their booster seat	Vehicle Seat Belt, seated in the rear seat of the vehicle



## Infant And Child Restraints

Safety experts recommend that children ride rear-facing in the vehicle until they are two years old or until they reach either the height or weight limit of their rear-facing child restraint. Two types of child restraints can be used rear-facing: infant carriers and convertible child seats.

The infant carrier is only used rear-facing in the vehicle. It is recommended for children from birth until they reach the weight or height limit of the infant carrier. Convertible child seats can be used either rear-facing or forward-facing in the vehicle. Convertible child seats often have a higher weight limit in the rear-facing direction than infant carriers do, so they can be used rear-facing by children who have outgrown their infant carrier but are still less than at least two years old. Children should remain rear-facing until they reach the highest weight or height allowed by their convertible child seat.

### WARNING!

- Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying passenger front air bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.
- Only use a rear-facing child restraint in a vehicle with a rear seat.

## Older Children And Child Restraints

Children who are two years old or who have outgrown their rear-facing convertible child seat can ride forward-facing in the vehicle. Forward-facing child seats and convertible child seats used in the forward-facing direction are for children who are over two years old or who have outgrown the rear-facing weight or height limit of their rear-facing convertible child seat. Children should remain in a forward-facing child seat with a harness for as long as possible, up to the highest weight or height allowed by the child seat.

All children whose weight or height is above the forward-facing limit for the child seat should use a belt-positioning booster seat until the vehicle's seat belts fit properly. If the child cannot sit with knees bent over the vehicle's seat cushion while the child's back is against the seatback, they should use a belt-positioning booster seat. The child and belt-positioning booster seat are held in the vehicle by the seat belt.

### WARNING!

- Improper installation can lead to failure of an infant or child restraint. It could come loose in a collision. The child could be badly injured or killed. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.
- After a child restraint is installed in the vehicle, do not move the vehicle seat forward or rearward because it can loosen the child restraint attachments. Remove the child restraint before adjusting the vehicle seat position. When



## WARNING!

the vehicle seat has been adjusted, re-install the child restraint.

- When your child restraint is not in use, secure it in the vehicle with the seat belt or LATCH anchorages, or remove it from the vehicle. Do not leave it loose in the vehicle. In a sudden stop or accident, it could strike the occupants or seatbacks and cause serious personal injury.

### Children Too Large For Booster Seats

Children who are large enough to wear the shoulder belt comfortably, and whose legs are long enough to bend over the front of the seat when their back is against the seatback, should use the seat belt in a rear seat. Use this simple 5-step test to decide whether the child can use the vehicle's seat belt alone:

1. Can the child sit all the way back against the back of the vehicle seat?

2. Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the front of the vehicle seat – while they are still sitting all the way back?
3. Does the shoulder belt cross the child's shoulder between their neck and arm?
4. Is the lap part of the belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs and not their stomach?
5. Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If the answer to any of these questions was "no," then the child still needs to use a booster seat in this vehicle. If the child is using the lap/shoulder belt, check seat belt fit periodically and make sure the seat belt buckle is latched. A child's squirming or slouching can move the belt out of position. If the shoulder belt contacts the face or neck, move the child closer to the center of the vehicle, or use a booster seat to position the seat belt on the child correctly.

## WARNING!

Never allow a child to put the shoulder belt under an arm or behind their back. In a crash, the shoulder belt will not protect a child properly, which may result in serious injury or death. A child must always wear both the lap and shoulder portions of the seat belt correctly.



### Recommendations For Attaching Child Restraints

Restraint Type	Combined Weight of the Child + Child Restraint	Use Any Attachment Method Shown With An "X" Below			
		LATCH – Lower Anchors Only	Seat Belt Only	LATCH – Lower Anchors + Top Tether Anchor	Seat Belt + Top Tether Anchor
Rear-Facing Child Restraint	Up to 65 lbs (29.5 kg)	X	X		
Rear-Facing Child Restraint	More than 65 lbs (29.5 kg)		X		
Forward-Facing Child Restraint	Up to 65 lbs (29.5 kg)			X	X
Forward-Facing Child Restraint	More than 65 lbs (29.5 kg)				X

## Lower Anchors And Tethers For Children (LATCH) Restraint System

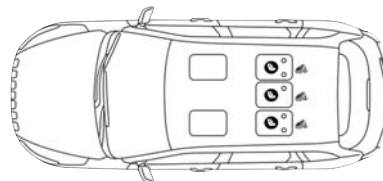


LATCH Label



Your vehicle is equipped with the child restraint anchorage system called LATCH, which stands for Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children. The LATCH system has three vehicle anchor points for installing LATCH-equipped child seats.

There are two lower anchorages located at the back of the seat cushion where it meets the seatback and one top tether anchorage located behind the seating position. These anchorages are used to install LATCH-equipped child seats without using the vehicle's seat belts. Some seating positions may have a top tether anchorage but no lower anchorages. In these seating positions, the seat belt must be used with the top tether anchorage to install the child restraint. Please see the following table for more information.

## LATCH Positions For Installing Child Restraints In This Vehicle



### Second Row LATCH Positions

-  Lower Anchorage Symbol (2 Anchorages Per Seating Position)
-  Top Tether Anchorage Symbol



<b>Frequently Asked Questions About Installing Child Restraints With LATCH</b>		
What is the weight limit (child's weight + weight of the child restraint) for using the LATCH anchorage system to attach the child restraint?	65 lbs (29.5 kg)	Use the LATCH anchorage system until the combined weight of the child and the child restraint is 65 lbs (29.5 kg). Use the seat belt and tether anchor instead of the LATCH system once the combined weight is more than 65 lbs (29.5 kg).
Can the LATCH anchorages and the seat belt be used together to attach a rear-facing or forward-facing child restraint?	No	Do not use the seat belt when you use the LATCH anchorage system to attach a rear-facing or forward-facing child restraint. Booster seats may be attached to the LATCH anchorages if allowed by the booster seat manufacturer. See your booster seat owner's manual for more information.
Can two child restraints be attached using a common lower LATCH anchorage?	No	Never "share" a LATCH anchorage with two or more child restraints. If the center position does not have dedicated LATCH lower anchorages, use the seat belt to install a child seat in the center position next to a child seat using the LATCH anchorages in an outboard position.
Can the rear-facing child restraint touch the back of the front passenger seat?	Yes	The child seat may touch the back of the front passenger seat if the child restraint manufacturer also allows contact. See your child restraint owner's manual for more information.
Can the head restraints be removed?	Yes	All rear head restraints may be removed.

## Locating The LATCH Anchorages



The lower anchorages are round bars that are found at the rear of the seat cushion where it meets the seatback. They are just visible when you lean into the rear seat to install the child restraint. You will easily feel them if you run your finger along the gap between the seatback and seat cushion.



**Lower Anchors**

## Locating The Upper Tether Anchorages



There are tether strap anchorages behind each rear seating position located on the back of the seat.



**Tether Anchorage Locations**

LATCH-compatible child restraint systems will be equipped with a rigid bar or a flexible strap on each side. Each will have a hook to attach to the lower anchorage and a way to tighten the connection to the anchorage. Forward-facing child restraints

and some rear-facing child restraints will also be equipped with a tether strap. The tether strap will have a hook at the end to attach to the top tether anchorage and a way to tighten the strap after it is attached to the anchorage.

## Center Seat LATCH

This vehicle has 5 lower LATCH anchorages in the rear seat. Anchorages A and B are used for the right outboard position behind the front passenger (1). Anchorages D and E are used for the left outboard position behind the driver (3). Anchorages C and D are used for the center seating position (2). Do not install a LATCH-compatible child restraint using anchorages B and C. This is not a LATCH-compatible position in your vehicle.

You can install up to two child seats using the LATCH system at the same time. If you can fit three child restraints in your vehicle, you must use the seatbelt to install the center child restraint and you must use the LATCH anchors for position (3) behind the driver. You can use either the LATCH anchors or the vehicle's seat belt for installing the third child seat in position (1) behind the front passenger.





**Lower Anchors**

Options for installing two child seats using the LATCH anchorages in this vehicle:

1. Right and left outboard seating positions (1 and 3): Install the child seats in the right and left outboard seating positions using lower anchorages A and B, and D and E. Do not use the center seat anchorage, C. If the child seats do not block the center seat belt webbing and buckle, the center seat belt can be used to restrain an occupant or child restraint in the center seating position.

2. Right outboard and center seating positions (1 and 2): Install the first child seat in the right outboard seating position using lower anchorages A and B. Install the second child seat using the center anchorages, C and D. Do not use the outer anchorage closest to the opposite door, E. Do not use the remaining left outboard seating position (3) for any occupant. The center child restraint will block the seat belt buckle for this position.

#### **WARNING!**

- Use anchorages C and D to install a LATCH-compatible child restraint in the center seating position (2). Do not install a LATCH-compatible child restraint using anchorages B and C. This is not a LATCH-compatible position in your vehicle.
- A child restraint installed in the center position (2) will block the seat belt buckle for the empty left outboard seat behind the driver (3). Do not use this seat for another occupant.
- Never use the same lower anchorage to attach more than one child restraint.

#### **WARNING!**

- If you are installing three child restraints next to each other, you must use the seat belt and the center tether anchor for the center position. You must use the LATCH anchors to install the child seat in position (3), behind the driver. You may use either the LATCH anchors or the vehicle's seat belt for installing the child seat in position (1), behind the front passenger. Please refer to "Installing the LATCH-Compatible Child Restraint System" for typical installation instructions.

Always follow the directions of the child restraint manufacturer when installing your child restraint. Not all child restraint systems will be installed as described here.

## To Install A LATCH-Compatible Child Restraint

If the selected seating position has a Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) seat belt, stow the seat belt, following the instructions below. See the section “Installing Child Restraints Using The Vehicle Seat Belt” to check what type of seat belt each seating position has.

1. Loosen the adjusters on the lower straps and on the tether strap of the child seat so that you can more easily attach the hooks or connectors to the vehicle anchorages.
2. Place the child seat between the lower anchorages for that seating position. For some second row seats, you may need to recline the seat and/or raise the head restraint to get a better fit. If the rear seat can be moved forward and rearward in the vehicle, you may wish to move it to its rear-most position to make room for the child seat. You may also move the front seat forward to allow more room for the child seat.
3. Attach the lower hooks or connectors of the child restraint to the lower anchorages in the selected seating position.
4. If the child restraint has a tether strap, connect it to the top tether anchorage. See the section “Installing Child Restraints Using The Top Tether Anchorage” for directions to attach a tether anchor.
5. Tighten all of the straps as you push the child restraint rearward and downward into the seat. Remove slack in the straps according to the child restraint manufacturer’s instructions.
6. Test that the child restraint is installed tightly by pulling back and forth on the child seat at the belt path. It should not move more than 1 inch (25.4 mm) in any direction.

## How To Stow An Unused Switchable-ALR (ALR) Seat Belt:

When using the LATCH attaching system to install a child restraint, stow all ALR seat belts that are not being used by other occupants or being used to secure child restraints. An unused belt could injure a child if they play with it and accidentally lock the seat belt retractor. Before installing a child restraint using the LATCH system, buckle the seat belt behind the child restraint and out of the child’s reach. If the buckled seat belt interferes with the child restraint installation, instead of buckling it behind the child restraint, route the seat belt through the child restraint belt path and then buckle it. Do not lock the seat belt. Remind all children in the vehicle that the seat belts are not toys and that they should not play with them.



**WARNING!**

- Improper installation of a child restraint to the LATCH anchorages can lead to failure of the restraint. The child could be badly injured or killed. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.
- Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly-fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

**Installing Child Restraints Using The Vehicle Seat Belt**

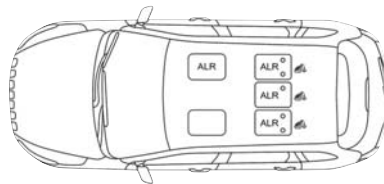
Child restraint systems are designed to be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap/shoulder belt.

**WARNING!**

- Improper installation or failure to properly secure a child restraint can lead to failure of the restraint. The child could be badly injured or killed.
- Follow the child restraint manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.

The seat belts in the passenger seating positions are equipped with a Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) that is designed to keep the lap portion of the seat belt tight around the child restraint so that it is not necessary to use a locking clip. The ALR retractor can be "switched" into a locked mode by pulling all of the webbing out of the retractor and then letting the webbing retract back into the retractor. If it is locked, the ALR will make a clicking noise while the webbing is pulled back into the retractor. Refer to the "Automatic Locking Mode" description in "Switchable Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR)" under "Occupant Restraint Systems" for additional information on ALR.

Please see the table below and the following sections for more information.

**Frequently Asked Questions About Installing Child Restraints With Seat Belts****Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) Locations**

ALR = Switchable Locking Retractor  
 Top Tether Anchorage Symbol



### Frequently Asked Questions About Installing Child Restraints With Seat Belts

What is the weight limit (child's weight + weight of the child restraint) for using the Tether Anchor with the seat belt to attach a forward facing child restraint?	Weight limit of the Child Restraint	Always use the tether anchor when using the seat belt to install a forward facing child restraint, up to the recommended weight limit of the child restraint.
Can the rear-facing child restraint touch the back of the front passenger seat?	Yes	Contact between the front passenger seat and the child restraint is allowed, if the child restraint manufacturer also allows contact.
Can the head restraints be removed?	Yes	All rear head restraints may be removed.
Can the buckle stalk be twisted to tighten the seat belt against the belt path of the child restraint?	No	Do not twist the buckle stalk in a seating position with an ALR retractor.

### Installing A Child Restraint With A Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR):

Child restraint systems are designed to be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap/shoulder belt.

#### WARNING!

- Improper installation or failure to properly secure a child restraint can lead to failure of the restraint. The child could be badly injured or killed.
- Follow the child restraint manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.

1. Place the child seat in the center of the seating position. For some second row seats, you may need to recline the seat and/or raise the head restraint to get a better fit. If the rear seat can be moved

forward and rearward in the vehicle, you may wish to move it to its rear-most position to make room for the child seat. You may also move the front seat forward to allow more room for the child seat.

2. Pull enough of the seat belt webbing from the retractor to pass it through the belt path of the child restraint. Do not twist the belt webbing in the belt path.
3. Slide the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click."
4. Pull on the webbing to make the lap portion tight against the child seat.

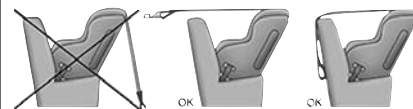


5. To lock the seat belt, pull down on the shoulder part of the belt until you have pulled all the seat belt webbing out of the retractor. Then, allow the webbing to retract back into the retractor. As the webbing retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This means the seat belt is now in the Automatic Locking mode.
  6. Try to pull the webbing out of the retractor. If it is locked, you should not be able to pull out any webbing. If the retractor is not locked, repeat step 5.
  7. Finally, pull up on any excess webbing to tighten the lap portion around the child restraint while you push the child restraint rearward and downward into the vehicle seat.
8. If the child restraint has a top tether strap and the seating position has a top tether anchorage, connect the tether strap to the anchorage and tighten the tether strap. See the section “Installing Child Restraints Using the Top Tether Anchorage” for directions to attach a tether anchor.
  9. Test that the child restraint is installed tightly by pulling back and forth on the child seat at the belt path. It should not move more than 1 inch (25.4 mm) in any direction.
- Any seat belt system will loosen with time, so check the belt occasionally, and pull it tight if necessary.

### Installing Child Restraints Using The Top Tether Anchorage

#### WARNING!

Do not attach a tether strap for a rear-facing car seat to any location in front of the car seat, including the seat frame or a tether anchorage. Only attach the tether strap of a rear-facing car seat to the tether anchorage that is approved for that seating position, located behind the top of the vehicle seat. See the section “Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren (LATCH) Restraint System” for the location of approved tether anchorages in your vehicle.



1. Look behind the seating position where you plan to install the child restraint to find the tether anchorage. You may need to move the seat forward to provide better access to the tether anchorage. If there is no top tether anchorage for that seating position, move the child restraint to another position in the vehicle if one is available.
2. Route the tether strap to provide the most direct path for the strap between the anchor and the child seat. If your vehicle is equipped with adjustable rear head restraints, raise the head restraint, and where possible, route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the two posts. If not possible, lower the head restraint and pass the tether strap around the outboard side of the head restraint.



**Tether Anchorage Locations**

3. Attach the tether strap hook of the child restraint to the top tether anchorage as shown in the diagram.
4. Remove slack in the tether strap according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

## **WARNING!**

- An incorrectly anchored tether strap could lead to increased head motion and possible injury to the child. Use only the anchorage position directly behind the child seat to secure a child restraint top tether strap.
- If your vehicle is equipped with a split rear seat, make sure the tether strap does not slip into the opening between the seatbacks as you remove slack in the strap.

## **Transporting Pets**

Air Bags deploying in the front seat could harm your pet. An unrestrained pet will be thrown about and possibly injured, or injure a passenger during panic braking or in a collision.

Pets should be restrained in the rear seat in pet harnesses or pet carriers that are secured by seat belts.



## SAFETY TIPS

### Transporting Passengers

NEVER TRANSPORT PASSENGERS IN THE CARGO AREA.

#### WARNING!

- Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat build-up may cause serious injury or death.
- It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.
- Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.
- Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.

### Exhaust Gas

#### WARNING!

Exhaust gases can injure or kill. They contain carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless. Breathing it can make you unconscious and can eventually poison you. To avoid breathing (CO), follow these safety tips:

- Do not run the engine in a closed garage or in confined areas any longer than needed to move your vehicle in or out of the area.
- If you are required to drive with the trunk/liftgate/rear doors open, make sure that all windows are closed and the climate control BLOWER switch is set at high speed. DO NOT use the recirculation mode.
- If it is necessary to sit in a parked vehicle with the engine running, adjust your heating or cooling controls to force outside air into the vehicle. Set the blower at high speed.

The best protection against carbon monoxide entry into the vehicle body is a properly maintained engine exhaust system.

Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system, when exhaust fumes can be detected inside the vehicle, or when the underside or rear of the vehicle is damaged, have a competent mechanic inspect the complete exhaust system and adjacent body areas for broken, damaged, deteriorated, or mispositioned parts. Open seams or loose connections could permit exhaust fumes to seep into the passenger compartment. In addition, inspect the exhaust system each time the vehicle is raised for lubrication or oil change. Replace as required.


### Safety Checks You Should Make Inside The Vehicle

#### Seat Belts

Inspect the seat belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays, and loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the system.

Front seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision. Rear seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision if they have been damaged (i.e., bent retractor, torn webbing, etc.). If there is any question regarding seat belt or retractor condition, replace the seat belt.

### Air Bag Warning Light

The Air Bag warning light  will turn on for four to eight seconds as a bulb check when the ignition switch is first turned to ON/RUN. If the light is either not on during starting, stays on, or turns on while driving, have the system inspected at an authorized dealer as soon as possible. This light will illuminate with a single chime when a fault with the Air Bag Warning Light has been detected, it will stay on until the fault is cleared. If the light comes on intermittently or remains on while driving, have an authorized dealer service the vehicle immediately. Refer to “Occupant Restraint Systems” in “Safety” for further information.

### Defroster


Check operation by selecting the defrost mode and place the blower control on high speed. You should be able to feel the air directed against the windshield. See your authorized dealer for service if your defroster is inoperable.

### Floor Mat Safety Information

Always use floor mats designed to fit your vehicle. Only use a floor mat that does not interfere with the operation of the pedal assemblies. Only use a floor mat that is securely attached using the floor mat fasteners so it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedal assemblies or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

### WARNING!

An improperly attached, damaged, folded, or stacked floor mat, or damaged floor mat fasteners may cause your floor mat to interfere with the accelerator, brake, or clutch pedals and cause a loss of vehicle control. To prevent SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH:

- ALWAYS securely attach  your floor mat using the floor mat fasteners. DO NOT install your floor mat upside down or turn your floor mat over. Lightly pull to confirm mat is secured using the floor mat fasteners on a regular basis.
- ALWAYS REMOVE THE EXISTING FLOOR MAT FROM THE VEHICLE  before installing any other floor mat. NEVER install or stack an additional floor mat on top of an existing floor mat.
- ONLY install floor mats designed to fit your vehicle. NEVER install a floor mat that cannot be properly attached and secured to your vehicle. If a floor mat needs to be replaced, only use a FCA approved floor mat for the specific make, model, and year of your vehicle.



**WARNING!**

- ONLY use the driver's side floor mat on the driver's side floor area. To check for interference, with the vehicle properly parked with the engine off, fully depress the accelerator, the brake, and the clutch pedal (if present) to check for interference. If your floor mat interferes with the operation of any pedal, or is not secure to the floor, remove the floor mat from the vehicle and place the floor mat in your trunk.
- ONLY use the passenger's side floor mat on the passenger's side floor area.
- ALWAYS make sure objects cannot fall or slide into the driver's side floor area when the vehicle is moving. Objects can become trapped under accelerator, brake, or clutch pedals and could cause a loss of vehicle control.
- NEVER place any objects under the floor mat (e.g., towels, keys, etc.). These objects could change the position of the floor mat and may cause interference with the accelerator, brake, or clutch pedals.

**WARNING!**

- If the vehicle carpet has been removed and re-installed, always properly attach carpet to the floor and check the floor mat fasteners are secure to the vehicle carpet. Fully depress each pedal to check for interference with the accelerator, brake, or clutch pedals then re-install the floor mats.
- It is recommended to only use mild soap and water to clean your floor mats. After cleaning, always check your floor mat has been properly installed and is secured to your vehicle using the floor mat fasteners by lightly pulling mat.

**Periodic Safety Checks You Should Make Outside The Vehicle****Tires**

Examine tires for excessive tread wear and uneven wear patterns. Check for stones, nails, glass, or other objects lodged in the tread or sidewall. Inspect the tread for cuts

and cracks. Inspect sidewalls for cuts, cracks, and bulges. Check the wheel nuts for tightness. Check the tires (including spare) for proper cold inflation pressure.

**Lights**

Have someone observe the operation of brake lights and exterior lights while you work the controls. Check turn signal and high beam indicator lights on the instrument panel.

**Door Latches**

Check for proper closing, latching, and locking.

**Fluid Leaks**

Check area under vehicle after overnight parking for fuel, coolant, oil, or other fluid leaks. Also, if gasoline fumes are detected or if fuel, or brake fluid leaks are suspected. The cause should be located and corrected immediately.

# STARTING AND OPERATING

## STARTING THE ENGINE . . . . .151

Normal Starting — Gasoline Engine . . .	151
Extreme Cold Weather (Below -22°F Or -30°C) . . . . .	151
Extended Park Starting. . . . .	151
If Engine Fails To Start . . . . .	152
After Starting. . . . .	152

## PARKING BRAKE . . . . .152

Electric Park Brake (EPB) . . . . .	152
-------------------------------------	-----

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION . . .154

Key Ignition Park Interlock . . . . .	156
Brake/Transmission Shift Interlock System . . . . .	156
Nine-Speed Automatic Transmission . .	156

## FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE OPERATION. . . . .157

1-Speed Four-Wheel Drive (4X4) — If Equipped . . . . .	157
2-Speed Four-Wheel Drive (4x4) — If Equipped. . . . .	158
Shift Positions . . . . .	159
Shifting Procedures. . . . .	159

Rear Electronic Locker (E-Locker) System — If Equipped . . . . .	161
---	-----

## SELEC-TERRAIN . . . . .162

Description . . . . .	162
-----------------------	-----

## STOP/START SYSTEM — IF EQUIPPED . . . . .163

Automatic Mode . . . . .	163
Possible Reasons The Engine Does Not Autostop . . . . .	163
To Start The Engine While In Autostop Mode . . . . .	164
To Manually Turn Off The Stop/Start System . . . . .	165
To Manually Turn On The Stop/Start System . . . . .	165

## SPEED CONTROL. . . . .165

Activation . . . . .	166
Setting A Desired Speed . . . . .	166
Varying The Speed . . . . .	166
Resume . . . . .	167
Accelerating For Passing . . . . .	167
Deactivation . . . . .	167

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (ACC) . . . . .167

Activation . . . . .	168
Setting A Desired ACC Speed . . . . .	168
Varying The Speed . . . . .	168
Resume . . . . .	169
Deactivation . . . . .	170
Setting The Following Distance . . . . .	170
Changing Modes . . . . .	170

## PARKSENSE REAR PARK ASSIST . . . . .171

ParkSense Sensors . . . . .	171
Enabling And Disabling ParkSense . .	171
Instrument Cluster Display — Warning . . . . .	172
ParkSense System Usage Precautions. . . . .	172

## PARKSENSE FRONT AND REAR PARK ASSIST . . . . .173

ParkSense Sensors . . . . .	173
Enabling And Disabling ParkSense . .	174
Engagement/Disengagement . . . . .	174



Operation With A Trailer . . . . .	174
General Warnings . . . . .	175
<b>PARKSENSE ACTIVE PARK ASSIST . . . . .</b>	<b>175</b>
Enabling And Disabling ParkSense Active Park Assist . . . . .	175
<b>LANESENSE . . . . .</b>	<b>176</b>
LaneSense Operation . . . . .	176
Turning LaneSense On Or Off . . . . .	176
LaneSense Warning Message . . . . .	177

Changing LaneSense Status . . . . .	179
<b>PARKVIEW REAR BACK-UP CAMERA . . . . .</b>	<b>179</b>
Symbols And Messages On The Display . . . . .	179
<b>REFUELING THE VEHICLE . . . . .</b>	<b>180</b>
<b>TRAILER TOWING . . . . .</b>	<b>182</b>
Trailer Towing Weights (Maximum Trailer Weight Ratings) . . . . .	182

<b>RECREATIONAL TOWING (BEHIND MOTORHOME, ETC.) . . . . .</b>	<b>183</b>
Towing This Vehicle Behind Another Vehicle . . . . .	183
Recreational Towing — Front-Wheel Drive (FWD) Models . . . . .	184
Recreational Towing — 4x4 Models With 1-Speed Power Transfer Unit . . . . .	184
Recreational Towing — 4x4 Models With 2-Speed Power Transfer Unit . . . . .	184



## STARTING THE ENGINE

Before starting your vehicle, adjust your seat, adjust both inside and outside mirrors, and fasten your seat belts.

### WARNING!

- When leaving the vehicle, always remove the key fob from the ignition and lock your vehicle. If equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go, always make sure the keyless ignition node is in “OFF” mode, remove the key fob from the vehicle and lock the vehicle.
- Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle.
- Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the gear selector.
- Do not leave the key fob in or near the vehicle, or in a location accessible to

### WARNING!

children, and do not leave the ignition of a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.

Start the engine with the gear selector in the NEUTRAL or PARK position. Apply the brake before shifting to any driving range.

### Normal Starting – Gasoline Engine

#### NOTE:

Normal starting of either a cold or a warm engine is obtained without pumping or pushing the accelerator pedal.

Place your foot on the brake and place the ignition to the START mode and release when the engine starts. If the engine fails to start within 10 seconds:

1. Place the ignition in the OFF mode
2. Wait 10 to 15 seconds
3. Repeat the “Normal Starting” procedure

### Tip Start Feature

Place the ignition in the START mode and release it as the starter engages. The starter motor will automatically disengage itself once engine is running. If the engine fails to start, the starter will disengage automatically in 10 seconds. If this occurs:

1. Place the ignition in the OFF mode.
2. Wait 10 to 15 seconds.
3. Repeat the “Normal Starting” procedure.

### Extreme Cold Weather (Below -22°F Or -30°C)

To ensure reliable starting at these temperatures, use of an externally powered electric engine block heater (available from your authorized dealer) is recommended.

### Extended Park Starting

#### NOTE:

Extended Park condition occurs when the vehicle has not been started or driven for at least 30 days.



1. Install a battery charger or jumper cables to the battery to ensure a full battery charge during the crank cycle.
2. Place the ignition to the START mode and release it when the engine starts.
3. If the engine fails to start within 10 seconds, place the ignition in the OFF mode, wait five seconds to allow the starter to cool, then repeat the Extended Park Starting procedure.
4. If the engine fails to start after eight attempts, allow the starter to cool for at least 10 minutes, then repeat the procedure.

**CAUTION!**

To prevent damage to the starter, do not crank continuously for more than 10 seconds at a time. Wait 10 to 15 seconds before trying again.

**If Engine Fails To Start****WARNING!**

- Never pour fuel or other flammable liquid into the throttle body air inlet opening in an attempt to start the vehicle. This could result in flash fire causing serious personal injury.
- Do not attempt to push or tow your vehicle to get it started. Vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission cannot be started this way. Unburned fuel could enter the catalytic converter and once the engine has started, ignite and damage the converter and vehicle.
- If the vehicle has a discharged battery, booster cables may be used to obtain a start from a booster battery or the battery in another vehicle. This type of start can be dangerous if done improperly. Refer to “Jump-Starting Procedure” in “In Case Of Emergency” for further information.

**After Starting**

The idle speed is controlled automatically, and it will decrease as the engine warms up.

**PARKING BRAKE****Electric Park Brake (EPB)**

Your vehicle is equipped with a new Electric Park Brake System (EPB) that offers greater convenience. The park brake switch is located in the center console.



**Parking Brake Switch**

To apply the park brake manually, pull up on the switch momentarily. The BRAKE telltale light in the instrument cluster and an indicator on the switch will illuminate.

To release the park brake manually, the ignition must be in ON/RUN. Then put your foot on the brake pedal and push the park brake switch down momentarily. Once the park brake is fully disengaged, the BRAKE telltale light and the switch indicator will extinguish.

The park brake can also be automatically released. With the engine running and the transmission in gear, release the brake pedal and depress the throttle pedal. For safety reasons, your seat belt must also be fastened.

#### NOTE:

- You may hear a slight whirring sound from the back of the vehicle while the parking brake engages or disengages.
- If your foot is on the brake pedal while you are engaging or disengaging the parking brake, you may notice a small amount of brake pedal movement.

- The new Auto Park Brake feature can be used to apply the park brake automatically every time you park the vehicle. Auto Park Brake can be enabled and disabled in the Settings menu in Uconnect.
- The parking brake can be engaged even when the ignition is OFF, however, it can only be disengaged when the ignition is in the ON/RUN mode.
- SafeHold a new feature that will automatically apply the park brake under certain conditions. The EPB monitors the status of the driver's seat belt, driver's door and pedal positions to determine if the driver may have exited while the vehicle is still capable of moving and will then automatically apply the park brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling.
- The EPB fault light will illuminate if the EPB switch is held for longer than 20 seconds in either the released or applied position. The light will extinguish upon releasing the switch.
- Refer to the Starting And Operating section in the Owner's information for further details.

#### CAUTION!

If the Brake System Warning Light remains on with the parking brake released, a brake system malfunction is indicated. Have the brake system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately.

#### WARNING!

- Never use the PARK position as a substitute for the parking brake. Always apply the parking brake fully when exiting the vehicle to guard against vehicle movement and possible injury or damage.
- When exiting the vehicle, always make sure the ignition is in the OFF mode, remove the key fob from the vehicle, and lock your vehicle.
- Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should



**WARNING!**

be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the transmission gear selector.

- Do not leave the key fob in or near the vehicle, (or in a location accessible to children), and do not leave the ignition in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.
- Be sure the parking brake is fully disengaged before driving; failure to do so can lead to brake failure and a collision.
- Always fully apply the parking brake when leaving your vehicle, or it may roll and cause damage or injury. Also be certain to leave the transmission in PARK. Failure to do so may allow the vehicle to roll and cause damage or injury.
- Driving the vehicle with the parking brake engaged, or repeated use of the parking brake to slow the vehicle may cause serious damage to the brake system.

**Auto Park Brake**

The electric park brake can be programmed to be applied automatically whenever the vehicle is at a standstill and the automatic transmission is placed in PARK, whenever the ignition is turned "OFF". Auto Park Brake is enabled and disabled by customer selection through the customer programmable features section of the Uconnect Settings.

Any single auto park brake application can be bypassed by pushing the EPB switch to the release position while the transmission is placed in PARK.

**SafeHold**

SafeHold is a safety feature of the Electric Park Brake System that will engage the park brake automatically if the vehicle is left unsecured while the ignition is in ON/RUN.

For automatic transmissions, the park brake will automatically engage if all of the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is at a standstill.
- There is no attempt to depress the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

- The seat belt is unbuckled.
- The driver door is open.

SafeHold can be temporarily bypassed by pushing the Electric Park Brake Switch while the driver door is open. Once manually bypassed, SafeHold will be enabled again once the vehicle reaches 12 mph (20 km/h) or the ignition is turned to the OFF position and back to ON again.

**AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION****WARNING!**

- It is dangerous to shift out of PARK or NEUTRAL if the engine speed is higher than idle speed. If your foot is not firmly pressing the brake pedal, the vehicle could accelerate quickly forward or in reverse. You could lose control of the vehicle and hit someone or something. Only shift into gear when the engine is idling normally and your foot is firmly pressing the brake pedal.

## WARNING!

- Unintended movement of a vehicle could injure those in or near the vehicle. As with all vehicles, you should never exit a vehicle while the engine is running. Before exiting a vehicle, always come to a complete stop, then apply the parking brake, shift the transmission into PARK, turn the engine OFF, and remove the key fob. When the ignition is in the LOCK/OFF (key removal) position, (or, with Keyless Enter-N-Go, when the ignition is in the OFF mode) the transmission is locked in PARK, securing the vehicle against unwanted movement.
- When leaving the vehicle, always make sure the ignition is in the OFF mode, remove the key fob from the vehicle, and lock the vehicle.
- Never use the PARK position as a substitute for the parking brake. Always apply the parking brake fully when exiting the vehicle to guard against vehicle movement and possible injury or damage.

## WARNING!

- Your vehicle could move and injure you and others if it is not in PARK. Check by trying to move the gear selector out of PARK with the brake pedal released. Make sure the transmission is in PARK before exiting the vehicle.
- Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the transmission gear selector.
- Do not leave the key fob in or near the vehicle (or in a location accessible to children), and do not leave the ignition (in a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go) in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.

## CAUTION!

Damage to the transmission may occur if the following precautions are not observed:

- Shift into or out of PARK or REVERSE only after the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
- Do not shift between PARK, REVERSE, NEUTRAL, or DRIVE when the engine is above idle speed.
- Before shifting into any gear, make sure your foot is firmly pressing the brake pedal.

### NOTE:

You must press and hold the brake pedal while shifting out of PARK.



### Key Ignition Park Interlock

This vehicle is equipped with a Key Ignition Park Interlock which requires the transmission to be in PARK before the ignition can be turned to the LOCK/OFF (key removal) position. The key fob can only be removed from the ignition when the ignition is in the LOCK/OFF position, and the transmission is locked in PARK whenever the ignition is in the LOCK/OFF position.

### Brake/Transmission Shift Interlock System

This vehicle is equipped with a Brake Transmission Shift Interlock system (BTSI) that holds the transmission gear selector in PARK unless the brakes are applied. To shift the transmission out of PARK, the ignition must be in the ON/RUN mode (engine running or not) and the brake pedal must be pressed.

The brake pedal must also be pressed to shift from NEUTRAL into DRIVE or REVERSE when the vehicle is stopped or moving at low speeds.

### Nine-Speed Automatic Transmission

The transmission gear range (PRND) is displayed both beside the gear selector and in the instrument cluster. To select a gear range, press the lock button on the gear selector and move the selector rearward or forward. You must also press the brake pedal to shift the transmission out of PARK (or NEUTRAL, when the vehicle is stopped or moving at low speeds). Select the DRIVE range for normal driving.

#### NOTE:

In the event of a mismatch between the gear selector position and the actual transmission gear (for example, driver selects REVERSE while driving forward), the position indicator will blink continuously until the selector is returned to the proper position, or the requested shift can be completed.

The electronically-controlled transmission adapts its shift schedule based on driver inputs, along with environmental and road conditions. The transmission electronics are self-calibrating; therefore, the first few shifts

on a new vehicle may be somewhat abrupt. This is a normal condition, and precision shifts will develop within a few hundred miles (kilometers).

The nine-speed transmission has been developed to meet the needs of current and future FWD/AWD vehicles. Software and calibration is refined to optimize the customer's driving experience and fuel economy. By design, some vehicle and driveline combinations utilize 9th gear only in very specific driving situations and conditions.

Only shift from DRIVE to PARK or REVERSE when the accelerator pedal is released and the vehicle is stopped. Be sure to keep your foot on the brake pedal when shifting between these gears.

The transmission gear selector has PARK, REVERSE, NEUTRAL, DRIVE, and Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift positions. Manual downshifts can be made using the ERS shift control. Moving the gear selector into the ERS (-/+ ) position (beside the DRIVE position) activates ERS mode, displays the current gear in the instrument cluster, and prevents automatic upshifts beyond this

gear. In ERS mode, toggling the gear selector forward (-) or rearward (+) will change the highest available gear. Refer to “Electronic Range Select (ERS) Operation” in this section for further information.

**NOTE:**

If the gear selector cannot be moved to the PARK, REVERSE, or NEUTRAL position (when pushed forward) it is probably in the ERS (+/-) position (beside the DRIVE position). In ERS mode, the transmission gear limit (1, 2, 3, etc.) is displayed in the instrument cluster. Move the gear selector to the right (into the DRIVE [D] position) for access to PARK, REVERSE, and NEUTRAL.



**Gear Selector**

## FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE OPERATION

### 1-Speed Four-Wheel Drive (4X4) – If Equipped

This feature provides on-demand four-wheel drive (4X4). The system is automatic with no driver inputs or additional driving skills required. Under normal driving conditions, the front wheels provide most of the traction.

If the front wheels begin to lose traction, power is shifted automatically to the rear wheels. The greater the front wheel traction loss, the greater the power transfer to the rear wheels.



**1-Speed 4X4 Switch**

Additionally, on dry pavement under heavy throttle input (where one may have no wheel spin), torque will be sent to the rear in a pre-emptive effort to improve vehicle launch and performance characteristics.



**CAUTION!**

All wheels must have the same size and type tires. Unequal tire sizes must not be used. Unequal tire size may cause failure of the power transfer unit.

### 2-Speed Four-Wheel Drive (4x4) – If Equipped



**2-Speed 4x4 Switch**



**2-Speed 4x4 Switch (with Rear Lock)**

The Four-Wheel Drive is fully automatic in the normal driving mode. The Selec-Terrain buttons provide three selectable mode positions:

- 4WD LOW
- REAR LOCK (If Equipped)
- NEUTRAL

When additional traction is required, the 4WD LOW range position can be used to provide an additional gear reduction which allows for increased torque to be delivered to both the front and rear wheels. 4WD LOW is intended for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Driving in 4WD LOW on dry, hard-surfaced roads may cause increased tire wear and damage to driveline components.

When operating your vehicle in 4WD LOW, the engine speed is approximately three times that of the normal driving mode at a given road speed. Take care not to overspeed the engine and do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

Proper operation of four-wheel drive vehicles depends on tires of equal size, type, and circumference on each wheel. Any difference will adversely affect shifting and cause damage to the driveline components.

Because four-wheel drive provides improved traction, there is a tendency to exceed safe turning and stopping speeds. Do not go faster than road conditions permit.



## Shift Positions

For additional information on the appropriate use of each 4WD system mode position, see the information below:

### NEUTRAL

This range disengages the driveline from the powertrain. It is to be used for flat towing behind another vehicle. Refer to “Recreational Towing” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

#### WARNING!

You or others could be injured or killed if you leave the vehicle unattended with the power transfer unit in the NEUTRAL (N) position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The NEUTRAL (N) position disengages both the front and rear drive-shafts from the powertrain and will allow the vehicle to roll, even if the transmission is in PARK. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

### 4WD LOW

This range is for low speed four-wheel drive. It provides an additional gear reduction which allows for increased torque to be delivered to both the front and rear wheels while providing maximum pulling power for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

#### NOTE:

Refer to “Selec-Terrain — If Equipped” for further information on the various positions and their intended usages.

### Shifting Procedures

#### Shifting Into 4X4 LOW

With the vehicle at speeds of 0 to 3 mph (0 to 5 km/h), the ignition in the ON mode and the engine running, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL, and push the “4WD LOW” button once. The “4WD LOW” indicator light in the instrument cluster will begin to flash and remain on solid when the shift is complete.



Selec-Terrain Switch

#### NOTE:

If shift conditions/interlocks are not met, a message will flash from the instrument cluster display with instructions on how to complete the requested shift. Refer to “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting To know Your Instrument Panel” for further information.



### Shifting Out Of 4X4 LOW

With the vehicle at speeds of 0 to 3 mph (0 to 5 km/h), the ignition in the ON mode and the engine running, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL, and push the “4WD LOW” button once. The “4WD LOW” indicator light in the instrument cluster will flash and go out when the shift is complete.

#### NOTE:

- If shift conditions/interlocks are not met, a message will flash from the instrument cluster display with instructions on how to complete the requested shift. Refer to “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” for further information.
- Shifting into or out of 4WD LOW is possible with the vehicle completely stopped; however, difficulty may occur due to the mating clutch teeth not being properly aligned. Several attempts may be required for clutch teeth alignment and shift completion to occur. The preferred method is with the vehicle rolling 0 to

3 mph (0 to 5 km/h). If the vehicle is moving faster than 3 mph (5 km/h), the 4WD system will not allow the shift.

### NEUTRAL Shift Procedure

#### WARNING!

You or others could be injured or killed if you leave the vehicle unattended with the power transfer unit in the NEUTRAL (N) position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The NEUTRAL (N) position disengages both the front and rear drive-shafts from the powertrain and will allow the vehicle to roll, even if the transmission is in PARK. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop and shift the transmission to PARK.
2. Turn the engine OFF.
3. Turn the ignition to the ON/RUN mode, but do not start the engine.
4. Press and hold the brake pedal.
5. Shift the transmission into NEUTRAL.

6. Using a ballpoint pen or similar object, push and hold the recessed power transfer unit NEUTRAL (N) button (located by the selector switch) for four seconds. The light behind the NEUTRAL (N) symbol will blink, indicating shift in progress. The light will stop blinking (stay on solid) when the shift to NEUTRAL (N) is complete.



Neutral Switch

7. After the shift is completed and the NEUTRAL (N) light stays on, release the NEUTRAL (N) button.
8. Start the engine.
9. Release the parking brake.
10. Shift the transmission into REVERSE.
11. Release the brake pedal for five seconds and ensure that there is no vehicle movement.
12. Shift the transmission to NEUTRAL.
13. Apply the parking brake.
14. Shift the transmission into PARK, turn the engine OFF, and remove the key kob.

Repeat steps 1-7 to shift out of NEUTRAL.

#### **NOTE:**

When towing this vehicle behind another vehicle, the Mopar flat tow wiring kit must be used, and the parking brake must be released. Refer to "Recreational Towing" in "Starting and Operating" for further instructions.

### **Rear Electronic Locker (E-Locker) System – If Equipped**

The Rear E-Locker System features a mechanical locking rear differential to provide better traction in the 4WD LOW position. The "REAR LOCK" button is on the Selec-Terrain Knob.

#### **Activating The Rear E-Locker**

To activate the Rear E-Locker System, the following conditions must be met:

1. The 4WD system must be in 4WD LOW.
2. The ignition in the ON mode and the engine running.
3. Vehicle speed must be below 15 MPH (24 km/h).
4. To engage Rear E-Locker, push the REAR LOCK button once.

#### **Deactivating The Rear E-Locker System**

To deactivate the Rear E-Locker System, the following conditions must be met:

1. Rear E-Locker must be engaged, and the REAR LOCK indicator light on.

2. The ignition in the ON mode and the engine running.
3. To disengage Rear E-Locker, push the REAR LOCK button once.

#### **NOTE:**

- It may also be necessary to drive slowly steering back and forth to complete engagement and disengagement of the E-Locker.
- When engaging Rear E-Locker, the indicator lights in the instrument cluster and on the REAR LOCK button will begin to flash. When the shift is complete the REAR LOCK indicator lights will remain on.
- When disengaging Rear E-Locker, the indicator lights in the instrument cluster and on the REAR LOCK button will begin to flash. When the shift is complete the REAR LOCK indicator lights will remain off.
- Shifting into or out of Rear E-Locker is possible with the vehicle completely stopped; however, difficulty may occur due to the mating clutch teeth not being properly aligned. Several attempts may be required for clutch teeth alignment and



shift completion to occur. The preferred method is for the vehicle to be rolling, below 15 MPH (24 km/h), while including right and left steering maneuvers to allow for the clutch teeth to align.

- The Rear E-Locker System must be disengaged prior to taking the vehicle out of 4WD LOW range. If 4WD LOW shift conditions/interlocks are not met, a message will flash from the instrument cluster display with instructions on how to complete the requested shift.

## SELEC-TERRAIN

### Description

Selec-Terrain combines the capabilities of the vehicle control systems, along with driver input, to provide the best performance for all terrains.

Rotate the Selec-Terrain knob to select the desired mode.



Selec-Terrain Switch

Selec-Terrain offers the following modes:

- **Auto** — Fully automatic full time four-wheel drive operation can be used on and off road. Balances traction with seamless steering feel to provide improved handling and acceleration over two-wheel drive vehicles.
- **Snow** — Tuning set for additional stability in inclement weather. Use on and off road on loose traction surfaces such as snow. When in SNOW mode (depending on cer-

tain operating conditions), the transmission may use second gear (rather than first gear) during launches, to minimize wheel slippage.

- **Sport** — This mode alters the transmission's automatic shift schedule for sportier driving. Upshift speeds are increased to make full use of available engine power.

### NOTE:

SPORT mode is not available when 4WD LOW is selected.

- **Sand/Mud** — Off-road calibration for use on low traction surfaces such as mud, sand, or wet grass. Driveline is maximized for traction. Some binding may be felt on less forgiving surfaces. The electronic brake controls are set to limit traction control management of throttle and wheel spin.
- **Rock** — Off-road calibration only available in 4WD LOW range. Traction based tuning with improved steer-ability for use on high traction off-road surfaces. Use for low speed obstacles such as large rocks, deep ruts, etc.

## NOTE:

- Rock mode is only available on the vehicles equipped with the Off-Road package.
- Activate the Hill Descent Control or Select Speed Control for steep downhill control. See “Electronic Brake Control System” in “Safety” for further information.

## STOP/START SYSTEM – IF EQUIPPED

The Stop/Start function was developed to reduce fuel consumption. The system will stop the engine automatically during a vehicle stop if the required conditions are met. Releasing the brake pedal or pressing the accelerator pedal will automatically restart the engine.

### Automatic Mode

The Stop/Start feature is enabled after every normal customer engine start. At that time, the system will go into STOP/START READY and if all other conditions are met, can go into a STOP/START AUTOSTOP ACTIVE “Autostop” mode.

### To Activate The Autostop Mode, The Following Must Occur:

- The system must be in STOP/START READY state. A STOP/START READY message will be displayed in the instrument cluster display within the Stop/Start section. Refer to “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” in your Owner’s information at [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals) for further details.
- The vehicle must be completely stopped.
- The gear selector must be in a forward gear and the brake pedal depressed.

The engine will shut down, the tachometer will move to the zero position and the Stop/Start telltale will illuminate indicating you are in Autostop. Customer settings will be maintained upon return to an engine running condition.

Refer to the “Stop/Start System” in the “Starting And Operating” section located in your Owner’s information for further details.

### Possible Reasons The Engine Does Not Autostop

Prior to engine shut down, the system will check many safety and comfort conditions to see if they are fulfilled. Detailed information about the operation of the Stop/Start system may be viewed in the instrument cluster display Stop/Start Screen. In the following situations the engine will not stop:

- Driver’s seat belt is not buckled.
- Driver’s door is not closed.
- Battery temperature is too warm or cold.
- Battery charge is low.
- The vehicle is on a steep grade.
- Cabin heating or cooling is in process and an acceptable cabin temperature has not been achieved.
- HVAC is set to full defrost mode at a high blower speed.
- HVAC set to MAX A/C.
- Engine has not reached normal operating temperature.
- The transmission is not in a forward or reverse gear.



- Hood is open.
- Vehicle is in 4LO transfer case mode (if equipped with 4WD).
- Brake pedal is not pressed with sufficient pressure with vehicle in DRIVE position.

**Other Factors Which Can Inhibit Autostop Include:**

- Accelerator pedal input.
- Engine temp too high.
- 5 mph threshold not achieved from previous AUTOSTOP.
- Steering angle beyond threshold.
- ACC is on and speed is set.

It may be possible for the vehicle to be driven several times without the STOP/START system going into a STOP/START READY state under more extreme conditions of the items listed above.

**To Start The Engine While In Autostop Mode**

While in a forward gear, the engine will start when the brake pedal is released or the throttle pedal is depressed. The transmission will automatically re-engage upon engine restart.

**Conditions That Will Cause The Engine To Start Automatically While In Autostop Mode:**

- The transmission gear selector is moved out of DRIVE except in the PARK position.
- To maintain cabin temperature comfort.
- HVAC is set to full defrost mode.
- HVAC system temperature or fan speed is manually adjusted.
- Battery voltage drops too low.
- Low brake vacuum (e.g. after several brake pedal applications).
- STOP/START OFF switch is pushed.
- A STOP/START system error occurs.
- 4WD system is put into 4LO mode (if equipped with 4WD).

**Conditions That Force An Application Of The Electric Park Brake While In Autostop Mode:**

- The driver's door is open and brake pedal released.
- The driver's door is open and the driver's seat belt is unbuckled.
- The engine hood has been opened.
- A STOP/START system error occurs.

If the Electric Park Brake is applied with the engine off, the engine may require a manual restart and the electric park brake may require a manual release (depress brake pedal and push Electric Park Brake switch). Refer to "Instrument Cluster Display" in "Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel" in your Owner's manual at [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals) for further information.

## To Manually Turn Off The Stop/Start System

1. Push the STOP/START Off switch (located on the switch bank). The light on the switch will illuminate.



**STOP/START OFF Switch**

2. The “STOP/START OFF” message will appear in the instrument cluster display. Refer to “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” in your Owner’s manual at [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals) for further information.

3. At the next vehicle stop (after turning off the STOP/START system), the engine will not be stopped.
4. The STOP/START system will reset itself back to the ON mode every time the ignition is turned off and back on.

## To Manually Turn On The Stop/Start System

Push the STOP/START Off switch (located on the switch bank). The light on the switch will turn off.

For complete details on the Stop/Start System, refer to the “Stop/Start System” in the “Starting And Operating” section located in your Owner’s manual at [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals).

## SPEED CONTROL

The Speed Control switches are located on the right side of the steering wheel.



**Speed Control Switches**

- 1 — Push Cancel
- 2 — Push Set+/Accel
- 3 — Push Resume
- 4 — Push On/Off
- 5 — Push Set-/Decel



**Activation**

Push the on/off button to activate the Speed Control, “CRUISE CONTROL READY” will appear on the instrument cluster display to indicate the Speed Control is on. Push the on/off button a second time to turn the system off, “CRUISE CONTROL OFF” will appear on the instrument cluster display to indicate the Speed Control is off. The system should be turned off when not in use.

**WARNING!**

Leaving the Speed Control system on when not in use is dangerous. You could accidentally set the system or cause it to go faster than you want. You could lose control and have an accident. Always leave the system off when you are not using it.

**Setting A Desired Speed**

Turn the Speed Control on. When the vehicle has reached the desired speed, push the SET (+) or SET (-) button and release. Release the accelerator and the vehicle will operate at the selected speed. Once a speed has been set, a message “CRUISE CONTROL

SET TO MPH (km/h)” will appear indicating what speed was set. A cruise indicator lamp, along with set speed will also appear and stay on in the instrument cluster display when the speed is set.

**Varying The Speed**

Once the Speed Control has been activated, the speed can be increased or decreased.

**To Increase Speed**

When the Speed Control is set, you can increase speed by pushing the SET (+) button.

The driver's preferred units can be selected through the instrument panel settings if equipped. Refer to “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” in the Owner's Manual at [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/) for more information. The speed increment shown is dependant on the chosen speed unit of U.S. (mph) or Metric (km/h):

**U.S. Speed (mph)**

- Pushing the SET (+) button once will result in a 1 mph increase in set speed. Each subsequent tap of the button results in an increase of 1 mph.

- If the button is continually pushed, the set speed will continue to increase until the button is released, then the new set speed will be established.

**Metric Speed (km/h)**

- Pushing the SET (+) button once will result in a 1 km/h increase in set speed. Each subsequent tap of the button results in an increase of 1 km/h.
- If the button is continually pushed, the set speed will continue to increase until the button is released, then the new set speed will be established.

**To Decrease Speed**

When the Speed Control is set, you can decrease speed by pushing the SET (-) button.

The driver's preferred units can be selected through the instrument panel settings if equipped. Refer to “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” in the Owner's Manual at [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/) for more information. The speed increment shown is dependant on the chosen speed unit of U.S. (mph) or Metric (km/h):



## U.S. Speed (mph)

- Pushing the SET (-) button once will result in a 1 mph decrease in set speed. Each subsequent tap of the button results in a decrease of 1 mph.
- If the button is continually pushed, the set speed will continue to decrease until the button is released, then the new set speed will be established.

## Metric Speed (km/h)

- Pushing the SET (-) button once will result in a 1 km/h decrease in set speed. Each subsequent tap of the button results in a decrease of 1 km/h.
- If the button is continually pushed, the set speed will continue to decrease until the button is released, then the new set speed will be established.

## Resume

To resume a previously selected set speed in memory, push and release the RES button.

## Accelerating For Passing

Press the accelerator as you would normally. When the pedal is released, the vehicle will return to the set speed.

## Deactivation

A soft tap on the brake pedal, pushing the CANC button, or normal brake pressure while slowing the vehicle will deactivate the Speed Control without erasing the set speed from memory.

Pushing the on/off button or turning the ignition switch OFF erases the set speed from memory.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (ACC)

If your vehicle is equipped with Adaptive Cruise Control, the controls operate exactly the same as the Speed Control with only a couple of differences. With this option, you can set a specified distance you would like to maintain between you and the vehicle in front of you.



### Adaptive Cruise Switches

- 1 — Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) On/Off
- 2 — Distance Setting – Decrease
- 3 — Distance Setting – Increase

If the ACC sensor detects a vehicle ahead, ACC will apply limited braking or acceleration automatically to maintain a preset following distance, while matching the speed of the vehicle ahead.



If the sensor does not detect a vehicle ahead of you, ACC will maintain a fixed set speed.

### Activation

Push and release the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) on/off button.

“ACC READY” will appear in the instrument cluster display to indicate the ACC is on.

### Setting A Desired ACC Speed

When the vehicle reaches the speed desired, push the SET (+) button or the SET (-) button and release. The instrument cluster display will show the set speed.

If the system is set when the vehicle speed is below 20 mph (32 km/h), the set speed shall be defaulted to 20 mph (32 km/h). If the system is set when the vehicle speed is above 20 mph (32 km/h), the set speed shall be the current speed of the vehicle.

#### NOTE:

ACC cannot be set if there is a stationary vehicle in front of your vehicle in close proximity.

Remove your foot from the accelerator pedal. If you do not, the vehicle may continue to accelerate beyond the set speed. If this occurs:

- The message “DRIVER OVERRIDE” will appear in the instrument cluster display.
- The system will not be controlling the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead. The vehicle speed will only be determined by the position of the accelerator pedal.

### Varying The Speed

Once the ACC has been activated, the speed can be increased or decreased.

#### NOTE:

- When you override and push the SET (+) button or SET (-) buttons, the new set speed will be the current speed of the vehicle.
- When you use the SET (-) button to decelerate, if the engine’s braking power does not slow the vehicle sufficiently to reach the set speed, the brake system will automatically slow the vehicle.

- The ACC system applies the brake down to a full stop when following a target vehicle. If an ACC host vehicle follows a target vehicle to a standstill, the host vehicle will release the vehicle brakes two seconds after coming to a full stop.
- The ACC system maintains set speed when driving up hill and down hill. However, a slight speed change on moderate hills is normal. In addition, downshifting may occur while climbing uphill or descending downhill. This is normal operation and necessary to maintain set speed. When driving up hill and down hill, the ACC system will cancel if the braking temperature exceeds normal range (overheated).

### To Increase Speed

While ACC is set, you can increase the set speed by pushing the SET (+) button.

The driver’s preferred units can be selected through the instrument panel settings if equipped. Refer to “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” in the Owner’s Manual at [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/) for more information.

The speed increment shown is dependant on the chosen speed unit of U.S. (mph) or Metric (km/h):

### U.S. Speed (mph)

- Pushing the SET (+) button once will result in a 1 mph increase in set speed. Each subsequent tap of the button results in an increase of 1 mph.
- If the button is continually pushed, the set speed will continue to increase in 5 mph increments until the button is released. The increase in set speed is reflected in the instrument cluster display.

### Metric Speed (km/h)

- Pushing the SET (+) button once will result in a 1 km/h increase in set speed. Each subsequent tap of the button results in an increase of 1 km/h.
- If the button is continually pushed, the set speed will continue to increase in 10 km/h increments until the button is released. The increase in set speed is reflected in the instrument cluster display.

### To Decrease Speed

While ACC is set, the set speed can be decreased by pushing the SET (-) button.

The driver's preferred units can be selected through the instrument panel settings if equipped. Refer to "Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel" in the Owner's Manual at [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/) for more information. The speed increment shown is dependant on the chosen speed unit of U.S. (mph) or Metric (km/h):

### U.S. Speed (mph)

- Pushing the SET (-) button once will result in a 1 mph decrease in set speed. Each subsequent tap of the button results in a decrease of 1 mph.
- If the button is continually pushed, the set speed will continue to decrease in 5 mph decrements until the button is released. The decrease in set speed is reflected in the instrument cluster display.

### Metric Speed (km/h)

- Pushing the SET (-) button once will result in a 1 km/h decrease in set speed. Each subsequent tap of the button results in a decrease of 1 km/h.
- If the button is continually pushed, the set speed will continue to decrease in 10 km/h decrements until the button is released. The decrease in set speed is reflected in the instrument cluster display.

### Resume

If there is a set speed in memory, push the RES (resume) button and remove your foot from the accelerator pedal. The instrument cluster display will show the last set speed.

### NOTE:

- If your vehicle stays at standstill for longer than two seconds, the driver will either have to push the RES (resume) button or apply the accelerator pedal to reengage the ACC to the existing set speed.
- ACC cannot be resumed if there is a stationary vehicle in-front of your vehicle in close proximity.



**WARNING!**

The Resume function should only be used if traffic and road conditions permit. Resuming a set speed that is too high or too low for prevailing traffic and road conditions could cause the vehicle to accelerate or decelerate too sharply for safe operation. Failure to follow these warnings can result in a collision and death or serious personal injury.

**Deactivation**

Push and release the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) on/off button a second time to turn the system off.

“Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Off” will appear in the instrument cluster display to indicate the ACC is off.

**Setting The Following Distance**

The specified following distance for ACC can be set by varying the distance setting between four bars (longest), three bars (long), two bars (medium) and one bar (short). Using this distance setting and the vehicle speed,

ACC calculates and sets the distance to the vehicle ahead. This distance setting appears in the instrument cluster display.

- To increase the distance setting, push the Distance Setting—Increase button and release. Each time the button is pushed, the distance setting increases by one bar (longer).
- To decrease the distance setting, push the Distance Setting—Decrease button and release. Each time the button is pushed, the distance setting decreases by one bar (shorter).

**Changing Modes**

If desired, the Adaptive Cruise Control mode can be turned off and the system can be operated as a Normal (Fixed Speed) Cruise Control mode. When in the Normal (Fixed Speed) Cruise Control mode the distance setting feature will be disabled and the system will maintain the speed you set.

- To change between the different cruise control modes, push the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) on/off button which turns the ACC and the Normal (Fixed Speed) Cruise Control off.

- Pushing the Normal (Fixed Speed) Cruise Control on/off button will result in turning on (changing to) the Normal (Fixed Speed) Cruise Control mode.

Refer to “Normal (Fixed Speed) Cruise Control Mode” in “Starting And Operating” in your Owner's Manual at [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/) for further details.

**WARNING!**

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is a convenience system. It is not a substitute for active driving involvement. It is always the driver's responsibility to be attentive of road, traffic, and weather conditions, vehicle speed, distance to the vehicle ahead; and, most importantly, brake operation to ensure safe operation of the vehicle under all road conditions. Your complete attention is always required while driving to maintain safe control of your vehicle. Failure to follow these warnings can result in a collision and death or serious personal injury.

## WARNING!

The ACC system:

- Does not react to pedestrians, oncoming vehicles, and stationary objects (e.g., a stopped vehicle in a traffic jam or a disabled vehicle).
- Cannot take street, traffic, and weather conditions into account, and may be limited upon adverse sight distance conditions.
- Does not always fully recognize complex driving conditions, which can result in wrong or missing distance warnings.
- Will bring the vehicle to a complete stop while following a target vehicle and hold the vehicle for 2 seconds in the stop position. If the target vehicle does not start moving within two seconds the ACC system will display a message that the system will release the brakes and that the brakes must be applied manually. An audible chime will sound when the brakes are released.

You should switch off the ACC system:

- When driving in fog, heavy rain, heavy snow, sleet, heavy traffic, and complex

## WARNING!

driving situations (i.e., in highway construction zones).

- When entering a turn lane or highway off ramp; when driving on roads that are winding, icy, snow-covered, slippery, or have steep uphill or downhill slopes.
- When towing a trailer up or down steep slopes.
- When circumstances do not allow safe driving at a constant speed.

The Cruise Control system has two control modes:

- Adaptive Cruise Control mode for maintaining an appropriate distance between vehicles.
- Normal (Fixed Speed) Cruise Control mode for cruising at a constant preset speed. For additional information, refer to “Normal (Fixed Speed) Cruise Control Mode” in your Owner’s Manual on [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/) for further details.

Normal (Fixed Speed) Cruise Control will not react to preceding vehicles. Always be aware of the mode selected. You can

## WARNING!

change the mode by using the Cruise Control buttons. The two control modes function differently. Always confirm which mode is selected.

## PARKSENSE REAR PARK ASSIST

### ParkSense Sensors

The four ParkSense sensors, located in the rear fascia/bumper, monitor the area behind the vehicle that is within the sensors’ field of view. The sensors can detect obstacles from approximately 12 inches (30 cm) up to 79 inches (200 cm) from the rear fascia/bumper in the horizontal direction, depending on the location, type and orientation of the obstacle.

### Enabling And Disabling ParkSense

ParkSense can be enabled and disabled with the ParkSense switch, located on the switch panel below the Uconnect display.



When the ParkSense switch is pushed to disable the system, the instrument cluster display will show the “PARKSENSE OFF” message for approximately five seconds. Refer to “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” in your Owner’s Manual on [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/) for further details. When the gear selector is moved to REVERSE and the system is disabled, the instrument cluster display will show the “PARKSENSE OFF” message for as long as the vehicle is in REVERSE.

The ParkSense switch LED will be on when ParkSense is disabled or requires service. The ParkSense switch LED will be off when the system is enabled. If the ParkSense switch is pushed, and requires service, the ParkSense switch LED will blink momentarily, and then the LED will be on.

### Instrument Cluster Display – Warning

The ParkSense Warning screen will only be displayed if Sound and Display is selected from the Customer - Programmable Features section of the Uconnect System. Refer to

“Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in your Owner’s Manual on [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/) for further details.

The ParkSense Warning screen is located within the instrument cluster display. It provides visual warnings to indicate the distance between the rear fascia/bumper and the detected obstacle. Refer to “Instrument Cluster Display” in your Owner’s Manual on [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/) for further details.

### ParkSense System Usage Precautions

- Ensure that the rear bumper is free of snow, ice, mud, dirt and debris to keep the ParkSense system operating properly.
- Jackhammers, large trucks, and other vibrations could affect the performance of ParkSense.
- When you turn ParkSense off, the instrument cluster display will read “PARKSENSE OFF”. Furthermore, once you turn ParkSense off, it remains off until you turn it on again, even if you cycle the ignition.

- When you move the gear selector to the REVERSE position and ParkSense is turned off, the instrument cluster display will show a “PARKSENSE OFF” message for as long as the vehicle is in REVERSE.
- ParkSense, when on, will reduce the volume of the radio when it is sounding a tone.
- Clean the ParkSense sensors regularly, taking care not to scratch or damage them. The sensors must not be covered with ice, snow, slush, mud, dirt or debris. Failure to do so can result in the system not working properly. The ParkSense system might not detect an obstacle behind the fascia/bumper, or it could provide a false indication that an obstacle is behind the fascia/bumper.
- Use the ParkSense switch to turn the ParkSense system OFF if objects such as bicycle carriers, etc. are placed within 12 inches (30 cm) from the rear fascia/bumper. Failure to do so can result in the system misinterpreting a close object as a sensor problem, causing the “PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE SERVICE REQUIRED” message to be displayed in the instrument cluster display.

- ParkSense should be disabled when the liftgate is in the open position and the vehicle is in REVERSE. An open liftgate could provide a false indication that an obstacle is behind the vehicle.

### WARNING!

- Drivers must be careful when backing up even when using ParkSense. Always check carefully behind your vehicle, look behind you, and be sure to check for pedestrians, animals, other vehicles, obstructions, and blind spots before backing up. You are responsible for safety and must continue to pay attention to your surroundings. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.
- Before using ParkSense, it is strongly recommended that the ball mount and hitch ball assembly is disconnected from the vehicle when the vehicle is not used for towing. Failure to do so can result in injury or damage to vehicles or obstacles because the hitch ball will be much closer to the obstacle than the rear fascia when the loudspeaker sounds the

### WARNING!

continuous tone. Also, the sensors could detect the ball mount and hitch ball assembly, depending on its size and shape, giving a false indication that an obstacle is behind the vehicle.

### CAUTION!

- ParkSense is only a parking aid and it is unable to recognize every obstacle, including small obstacles. Parking curbs might be temporarily detected or not detected at all. Obstacles located above or below the sensors will not be detected when they are in close proximity.
- The vehicle must be driven slowly when using ParkSense in order to be able to stop in time when an obstacle is detected. It is recommended that the driver looks over his/her shoulder when using ParkSense.

## PARKSENSE FRONT AND REAR PARK ASSIST

### ParkSense Sensors

The four ParkSense sensors, located in the rear fascia/bumper, monitor the area behind the vehicle that is within the sensors' field of view. The sensors can detect obstacles from approximately 12 inches (30 cm) up to 79 inches (200 cm) from the rear fascia/bumper in the horizontal direction, depending on the location, type and orientation of the obstacle.

### NOTE:

If your vehicle is equipped with the ParkSense Active Park Assist system, six sensors will be located in the rear fascia/bumper. Refer to the "ParkSense Active Park Assist System" section for further information.

The six ParkSense sensors, located in the front fascia/bumper, monitor the area in front of the vehicle that is within the sensors' field of view. The sensors can detect obstacles from approximately 12 inches (30 cm) up to



47 inches (120 cm) from the front fascia/bumper in the horizontal direction, depending on the location, type and orientation of the obstacle.

### Enabling And Disabling ParkSense

ParkSense can be enabled and disabled with the ParkSense switch, located on the switch panel below the Uconnect display.



**ParkSense Switch**

When the ParkSense switch is pushed to disable the system, the instrument cluster display will show the “PARKSENSE OFF” message for approximately five seconds. Refer to “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” in your Owner’s Manual on [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/) for further details. When the gear selector is moved to REVERSE and the system is disabled, the instrument cluster display will show the “PARKSENSE OFF” message for as long as the vehicle is in REVERSE.

The ParkSense switch LED will be on when ParkSense is disabled or requires service. The ParkSense switch LED will be off when the system is enabled. If the ParkSense switch is pushed, and requires service, the ParkSense switch LED will blink momentarily, and then the LED will be on.

### Engagement/Disengagement

To disengage the system, push the ParkSense switch, located on the switch panel below the Uconnect display.

When the system passes from engaged to disengaged and vice versa, it is always accompanied by a dedicated message in the instrument cluster display.

**System engaged:** ParkSense switch LED off.

**System disengaged:** ParkSense switch LED on constantly.

The ParkSense switch LED lights up also in the case of a ParkSense system failure. If the button is pushed with a system failure, the ParkSense switch LED flashes for about 5 seconds, then it stays on constantly.

After the ParkSense has been disengaged, it will stay in this condition until the following engagement, even if the ignition device passes from ON/RUN to OFF and then again to ON/RUN.

### Operation With A Trailer

The operation of the sensors is automatically deactivated when the trailer’s electric plug is inserted in the vehicle’s tow hook socket. The sensors are automatically reactivated when the trailer’s cable plug is removed.



## General Warnings

If "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE WIPE REAR SENSORS" or "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE WIPE FRONT SENSORS" appears in the instrument cluster display, clean the ParkSense sensors with water, car wash soap and a soft cloth. Do not use rough or hard cloths. Do not scratch or poke the sensors. Otherwise, you could damage the sensors.

## PARKSENSE ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

### Enabling And Disabling ParkSense Active Park Assist

The ParkSense Active Park Assist system can be enabled and disabled with the ParkSense Active Park Assist switch, located on the switch panel below the Uconnect display.



ParkSense Active Park Assist Switch

The ParkSense Active Park Assist system is intended to assist the driver during parallel and perpendicular parking maneuvers by identifying a proper parking space, providing audible/visual instructions, and controlling the steering wheel. The ParkSense Active Park Assist system is defined as "semi-automatic" since the driver maintains control of the accelerator, gear selector and brakes. Depending on the driver's parking maneuver selection, the ParkSense Active Park Assist

system is capable of maneuvering a vehicle into a parallel or a perpendicular parking space on either side (i.e., driver side or passenger side).

### NOTE:

The ParkSense Active Park Assist system automatically defaults to looking for vehicles on the right. **To search for a parking spot on the left, use the left turn signal.**

Refer to your Owner's Manual on [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/) for further details.

### WARNING!

- Drivers must be careful when backing up even when using ParkSense. Always check carefully behind your vehicle, look behind you, and be sure to check for pedestrians, animals, other vehicles, obstructions, and blind spots before backing up. You are responsible for safety and must continue to pay attention to your surroundings. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.



**WARNING!**

- Before using ParkSense, it is strongly recommended that the ball mount and hitch ball assembly is disconnected from the vehicle when the vehicle is not used for towing. Failure to do so can result in injury or damage to vehicles or obstacles because the hitch ball will be much closer to the obstacle than the rear fascia when the loudspeaker sounds the continuous tone. Also, the sensors could detect the ball mount and hitch ball assembly, depending on its size and shape, giving a false indication that an obstacle is behind the vehicle.

**CAUTION!**

- ParkSense is only a parking aid and it is unable to recognize every obstacle, including small obstacles. Parking curbs might be temporarily detected or not detected at all. Obstacles located above or below the sensors will not be detected when they are in close proximity.

**CAUTION!**

- The vehicle must be driven slowly when using ParkSense in order to be able to stop in time when an obstacle is detected. It is recommended that the driver looks over his/her shoulder when using ParkSense.

**LANESENSE****LaneSense Operation**

The LaneSense system is operational at speeds above 37 mph (60 km/h) and below 112 mph (180 km/h). The LaneSense system uses a forward looking camera to detect lane markings and measure vehicle position within the lane boundaries.

When both lane markings are detected and the driver unintentionally drifts out of the lane (no turn signal applied), the LaneSense system provides a haptic warning in the form of torque applied to the steering wheel, as well as a visual warning in the instrument cluster display, to prompt the driver to remain within the lane boundaries.

The driver may manually override the haptic warning by applying torque into the steering wheel at any time.

When only a single lane marking is detected and the driver unintentionally drifts across the lane marking (no turn signal applied), the LaneSense system provides a visual warning through the instrument cluster display to prompt the driver to remain within the lane. When only a single lane marking is detected, a haptic (torque) warning will not be provided.

**NOTE:**

When operating conditions have been met, the LaneSense system will monitor if the driver's hands are on the steering wheel and provide an audible and visual warning to the driver when the driver's hands are not detected on the steering wheel. The system will cancel if the driver does not return their hands to the wheel.

**Turning LaneSense On Or Off**

The default status of LaneSense is "off".

The LaneSense button is located on the switch panel below the Uconnect display.

To turn the LaneSense system on, push the LaneSense button (LED turns off). A “LaneSense On” message is shown in the instrument cluster display.

To turn the LaneSense system off, push the LaneSense button once (LED turns on).

#### **NOTE:**

The LaneSense system will retain the last system state, on or off, from the last ignition cycle when the ignition is changed to the ON/RUN position.

### **LaneSense Warning Message**

The LaneSense system will indicate the current lane drift condition through the instrument cluster display.

#### **Base Instrument Cluster Display — If Equipped**

When the LaneSense system is on; the lane lines are gray when both of the lane boundaries have not been detected and the LaneSense telltale is solid white.

#### **Left Lane Departure — Only Left Lane Detected**

- When the LaneSense system is on, the LaneSense telltale is solid white when only the left lane marking has been detected and the system is ready to provide visual warnings in the instrument cluster display if an unintentional lane departure occurs.
- When the LaneSense system senses the lane has been approached and is in a lane departure situation, the left thick lane line flashes from white to gray, the left thin line remains solid white and the LaneSense telltale changes from solid white to flashing yellow.

#### **NOTE:**

The LaneSense system operates with the similar behavior for a right lane departure when only the right lane marking has been detected.

#### **Left Lane Departure — Both Lanes Detected**

- When the LaneSense system is on, the lane lines turn from gray to white to indicate that both of the lane markings have been detected. The LaneSense telltale is solid green when both lane markings have been detected and the system is “armed”

to provide visual warnings in the instrument cluster display and a torque warning in the steering wheel if an unintentional lane departure occurs.

- When the LaneSense system senses a lane drift situation, the left thick lane line and the left thin line turn solid white. The LaneSense telltale changes from solid green to solid yellow. At this time torque is applied to the steering wheel in the opposite direction of the lane boundary.

For example: If approaching the left side of the lane the steering wheel will turn to the right.

- When the LaneSense system senses the lane has been approached and is in a lane departure situation, the left thick lane line flashes from white to gray, the left thin line remains solid white and the LaneSense telltale changes from solid yellow to flashing yellow. At this time torque is applied to the steering wheel in the opposite direction of the lane boundary.

For example: If approaching the left side of the lane the steering wheel will turn to the right.



**NOTE:**

The LaneSense system operates with the similar behavior for a right lane departure.

**Premium Instrument Cluster Display — If Equipped**

When the LaneSense system is on; the lane lines are gray when both of the lane boundaries have not been detected and the LaneSense telltale is solid white.

**Left Lane Departure — Only Left Lane Detected**

- When the LaneSense system is on, the LaneSense telltale is solid white when only the left lane marking has been detected and the system is ready to provide visual warnings in the instrument cluster display if an unintentional lane departure occurs.
- When the LaneSense system senses the lane has been approached and is in a lane departure situation, the left thick lane line flashes yellow (on/off), the left thin line remains solid yellow and the LaneSense telltale changes from solid white to flashing yellow.

**NOTE:**

The LaneSense system operates with the similar behavior for a right lane departure when only the right lane marking has been detected.

**Left Lane Departure — Both Lanes Detected**

- When the LaneSense system is on, the lane lines turn from gray to white to indicate that both of the lane markings have been detected. The LaneSense telltale is solid green when both lane markings have been detected and the system is “armed” to provide visual warnings in the instrument cluster display and a torque warning in the steering wheel if an unintentional lane departure occurs.
- When the LaneSense system senses a lane drift situation, the left thick lane line and left thin line turn solid yellow. The LaneSense telltale changes from solid green to solid yellow. At this time torque is applied to the steering wheel in the opposite direction of the lane boundary.

For example: If approaching the left side of the lane the steering wheel will turn to the right.

- When the LaneSense system senses the lane has been approached and is in a lane departure situation, the left thick lane line flashes yellow (on/off) and the left thin line remains solid yellow. The LaneSense telltale changes from solid yellow to flashing yellow. At this time torque is applied to the steering wheel in the opposite direction of the lane boundary.

For example: If approaching the left side of the lane the steering wheel will turn to the right.

**NOTE:**

The LaneSense system operates with the similar behavior for a right lane departure.

## Changing LaneSense Status

The LaneSense system has settings to adjust the intensity of the torque warning and the warning zone sensitivity (early/late) that you can configure through the Uconnect system screen. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in your Owner’s Manual on [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/) for further details.

### NOTE:

- When enabled the system operates above 37 mph (60 km/h) and below 112 mph (180 km/h).
- Use of the turn signal suppresses the warnings.
- The system will not apply torque to the steering wheel whenever a safety system engages. (anti-lock brakes, traction control system, electronic stability control, forward collision warning, etc.).

## PARKVIEW REAR BACK-UP CAMERA

### Symbols And Messages On The Display

You can see an on-screen image of the rear of your vehicle whenever the transmission is shifted into REVERSE. The ParkView Rear Back-Up Camera image will be displayed on the Uconnect Display, located on the center stack of the instrument panel.

If the Uconnect Display appears foggy, clean the camera lens located on the rear of the vehicle above the rear license plate.

Refer to “ParkView Back-Up Camera — If Equipped” in “Starting And Operating” in your Owner’s Manual at [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/) for further details.

### WARNING!

Drivers must be careful when backing up; even when using the ParkView Rear Back-Up Camera. Always check carefully behind your vehicle, and be sure to check for pedestrians, animals, other vehicles, obstructions, or blind spots before backing up. You must continue to pay attention while backing up. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.

### CAUTION!

- To avoid vehicle damage, ParkView should only be used as a parking aid. The ParkView camera is unable to view every obstacle or object in your drive path.
- To avoid vehicle damage, the vehicle must be driven slowly when using ParkView to be able to stop in time when an obstacle is seen. It is recommended that the driver look frequently over his/her shoulder when using ParkView.



## REFUELING THE VEHICLE

The gas cap is located behind the fuel filler door, on the passenger side of the vehicle. If the gas cap is lost or damaged, be sure the replacement cap has been designed for use with this vehicle.

### NOTE:

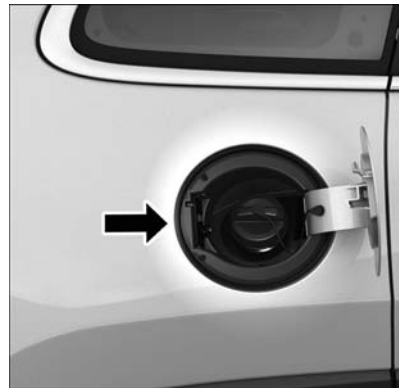
When removing the fuel filler cap, lay the cap tether in the hook, located on the fuel filler door reinforcement.

1. Push the fuel filler door release switch (located on the driver's side door trim).



Fuel Filler Door Release Switch

2. Open the fuel filler door, and remove the fuel filler cap.



Fuel Filler Cap (Gas Cap)

## NOTE:

- In certain cold conditions, ice may prevent the fuel door from opening. If this occurs, lightly push on the fuel door to break the ice buildup and re-release the fuel door using the inside release button. Do not pry on the door.
- When the fuel nozzle “clicks” or shuts off, the fuel tank is full.
- Tighten the gas cap about one quarter turn until you hear one click. This is an indication that the cap is properly tightened.
- If the gas cap is not tightened properly, the Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) will come on. Be sure the gas cap is tightened every time the vehicle is refueled.

## CAUTION!

- Damage to the fuel system or emission control system could result from using an improper fuel filler cap. A poorly fitting cap could let impurities into the fuel system. Also, a poorly fitting aftermarket cap can cause the “Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL)” to illuminate, due to fuel vapors escaping from the system.
- A poorly fitting fuel filler cap may cause the MIL to turn on.
- To avoid fuel spillage and overfilling, do not “top off” the fuel tank after filling.
- If fuel is spilled on surface on the paint, clear it immediately to avoid damage the paint.

## WARNING!

- Never have any smoking materials lit in or near the vehicle when the gas cap is removed or the tank is being filled.
- Never add fuel when the engine is running. This is in violation of most state and federal fire regulations and may cause the MIL to turn on.
- A fire may result if gasoline is pumped into a portable container that is inside of a vehicle. You could be burned. Always place gas containers on the ground while filling.



## TRAILER TOWING

### Trailer Towing Weights (Maximum Trailer Weight Ratings)

Engine/Transmission	Model	Frontal Area	Maximum GTW (Gross Trailer Wt.)	Maximum Tongue Wt. (See Note)
2.4L/Automatic with or without Trailer Tow Package	FWD or 4WD	32 sq ft (2.97 sq m)	2,000 lbs (907 kg)	200 lbs (90 kg)
3.2L/Automatic	FWD or 4WD	32 sq ft (2.97 sq m)	2,000 lbs (907 kg)	200 lbs (90 kg)
3.2L/Automatic with Trailer Tow Package	FWD or 4WD	39.44 sq ft (3.66 sq m)	4,500 lbs (2,041 kg)	450 lbs (204 kg)
Refer to local laws for maximum trailer towing speeds.				
<b>NOTE: The trailer tongue weight must be considered as part of the combined weight of occupants and cargo, and should never exceed the weight referenced on the Tire and Loading Information placard.</b>				



## RECREATIONAL TOWING (BEHIND MOTORHOME, ETC.)

### Towing This Vehicle Behind Another Vehicle

Towing Condition	Wheels OFF the Ground	Front-Wheel Drive (FWD) Models	1-Speed Power Transfer Unit	4X4 Models
				2-Speed Power Transfer Unit
Flat Tow	NONE	<b>NOT ALLOWED</b>	<b>NOT ALLOWED</b>	<b>See Instructions:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Before towing, see your authorized dealer for the Mopar flat tow wiring kit</li> <li>• It is recommended to charge the battery of the towed vehicle during recreational towing</li> <li>• Transmission in <b>PARK</b></li> <li>• Power transfer unit in <b>NEUTRAL (N)</b></li> <li>• Tow in <b>forward</b> direction</li> </ul>
Dolly Tow	Front	OK	<b>NOT ALLOWED</b>	<b>NOT ALLOWED</b>
	Rear	<b>NOT ALLOWED</b>	<b>NOT ALLOWED</b>	<b>NOT ALLOWED</b>
On Trailer	ALL	OK	OK	OK

#### NOTE:

- You must ensure that the Auto Park Brake feature is disabled before towing this vehicle, to avoid inadvertent Electric Park Brake engagement. The Auto Park Brake feature is enabled or disabled via the customer programmable features in the Uconnect Settings.
- When towing your vehicle, always follow applicable state and provincial laws. Contact state and provincial Highway Safety offices for additional details.



### Recreational Towing – Front-Wheel Drive (FWD) Models

**DO NOT** flat tow this vehicle. Damage to the drivetrain will result.

Recreational towing (for front-wheel drive models) is allowed **ONLY** if the front wheels are **OFF** the ground. This may be accomplished using a tow dolly or vehicle trailer. If using a tow dolly, follow this procedure:

1. Properly secure the dolly to the tow vehicle, following the dolly manufacturer's instructions.
2. Drive the front wheels onto the tow dolly.
3. Apply the parking brake. Place transmission in PARK. Turn the engine OFF.
4. Properly secure the front wheels to the dolly, following the dolly manufacturer's instructions.
5. Turn the ignition to the ON/RUN mode, but do not start the engine.
6. Press and hold the brake pedal.
7. Release the parking brake.
8. Turn the ignition OFF, remove the key fob, and release the brake pedal.

#### CAUTION!

- Towing with the front wheels on the ground will cause severe transmission damage. Damage from improper towing is not covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- Ensure that the Electric Park Brake is released, and remains released, while being towed.

### Recreational Towing – 4x4 Models With 1-Speed Power Transfer Unit

**Recreational towing is not allowed.** These models do not have a NEUTRAL (N) position in the power transfer unit.

#### NOTE:

This vehicle may be towed on a flatbed or vehicle trailer provided all four wheels are OFF the ground.

#### CAUTION!

Towing this vehicle with **ANY** of its wheels on the ground can cause severe transmission and/or power transfer unit damage. Damage from improper towing is not covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

### Recreational Towing – 4x4 Models With 2-Speed Power Transfer Unit

The power transfer unit must be shifted into NEUTRAL (N) and the transmission must be in PARK for recreational towing. The NEUTRAL (N) selection button is adjacent to the 4WD selector switch. Shifts into and out of NEUTRAL (N) can take place with the selector switch in any mode position.

#### CAUTION!

- Failure to use the proper Mopar wiring kit to power the steering system during recreational towing may damage the vehicle's steering system and/or other vehicle components.

### CAUTION!

- DO NOT dolly tow any 4x4 vehicle. Towing with only one set of wheels on the ground (front or rear) will cause severe transmission and/or power transfer unit damage. Tow with all four wheels either ON the ground, or OFF the ground (using a vehicle trailer).
- Tow only in a forward direction. Towing this vehicle backwards can cause severe damage to the power transfer unit.
- The transmission must be in PARK for recreational towing.
- Before recreational towing, perform the procedure outlined under "Shifting into NEUTRAL (N)" to be certain that the power transfer unit is fully in NEUTRAL (N). Otherwise, internal damage will result.
- Towing this vehicle in violation of the above requirements can cause severe transmission and/or power transfer unit damage. Damage from improper towing is not covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

### CAUTION!

- Ensure that the Electric Park Brake is released, and remains released, while being towed.
- Do not use a bumper-mounted clamp-on tow bar on your vehicle. The bumper face bar will be damaged.

### Shifting Into NEUTRAL (N)

### WARNING!

You or others could be injured or killed if you leave the vehicle unattended with the power transfer unit in the NEUTRAL (N) position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The NEUTRAL (N) position disengages both the front and rear drive-shafts from the powertrain and will allow the vehicle to roll, even if the transmission is in PARK. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

Use the following procedure to shift the 4WD system into NEUTRAL (N).

### CAUTION!

It is necessary to follow these steps to be certain that the power transfer unit is fully in NEUTRAL (N) before recreational towing to prevent damage to internal parts.

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop on level ground, and shift the transmission to PARK.
2. Turn the engine OFF.
3. Turn the ignition to the ON/RUN mode, but do not start the engine.
4. Press and hold the brake pedal.
5. Shift the transmission into NEUTRAL.



- Using a ballpoint pen or similar object, push and hold the recessed NEUTRAL (N) button (located by the selector switch) for four seconds. The light behind the N symbol will blink, indicating shift in progress. The light will stop blinking (stay on solid) when the shift to NEUTRAL (N) is complete.



Neutral Button

- After the shift is completed and the NEUTRAL (N) light stays on, release the NEUTRAL (N) button.
- Start the engine.
- Release the parking brake.
- Shift the transmission into REVERSE.
- Release the brake pedal for five seconds and ensure that there is no vehicle movement.
- Shift the transmission to NEUTRAL.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Shift the transmission into PARK, turn the engine OFF, and remove the key fob.
- Attach the vehicle to the tow vehicle using a suitable tow bar.
- Turn the ignition to the ON/RUN mode, but do not start the engine.
- Press and hold the brake pedal.
- Release the parking brake.
- Turn the ignition OFF, remove the key fob, and release the brake pedal.

**NOTE:**

- Steps 1 through 5 are requirements that must be met before pushing the NEUTRAL (N) button, and must continue to be met until the shift has been completed. If any of these requirements are not met before pushing the NEUTRAL (N) button or are no longer met during the shift, then the NEUTRAL (N) indicator light will flash continuously until all requirements are met or until the NEUTRAL (N) button is released.
- The ignition must be in the ON/RUN mode for a shift to take place and for the position indicator lights to be operable. If the ignition is not in the ON/RUN mode, the shift will not take place and no position indicator lights will be on or flashing.
- A flashing NEUTRAL (N) position indicator light indicates that shift requirements have not been met.

## Shifting Out Of NEUTRAL (N)

Use the following procedure to prepare your vehicle for normal usage.

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop, leaving it connected to the tow vehicle.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Turn the ignition to the ON/RUN mode, but do not start the engine.
4. Press and hold the brake pedal.
5. Shift the transmission into NEUTRAL.
6. Using a ballpoint pen or similar object, push and hold the recessed power transfer unit NEUTRAL (N) button (located by the selector switch) for one second.



Neutral Button

7. When the NEUTRAL (N) indicator light turns off, release the NEUTRAL (N) button.
8. After the NEUTRAL (N) button has been released, the power transfer unit will shift to the position indicated by the selector switch.

## NOTE:

When shifting the power transfer unit out of NEUTRAL (N), the engine should remain OFF to avoid gear clash.

9. Shift the transmission into PARK.
10. Release the brake pedal.
11. Disconnect vehicle from the tow vehicle.
12. Start the engine.
13. Press and hold the brake pedal.
14. Release the parking brake.
15. Shift the transmission into DRIVE, release the brake pedal, and check that the vehicle operates normally.
16. Re-enable the Auto Park Brake feature, if desired.



**NOTE:**

- Steps 1 through 5 are requirements that must be met before pushing the NEUTRAL (N) button, and must continue to be met until the shift has been completed. If any of these requirements are not met before pushing the NEUTRAL (N) button or are no longer met during the shift, the NEUTRAL (N) indicator light will flash continuously until all requirements are met or until the NEUTRAL (N) button is released.
- The ignition must be in the ON/RUN mode for a shift to take place and for the position indicator lights to be operable. If the ignition is not in the ON/RUN mode, the shift will not take place and no position indicator lights will be on or flashing.
- A flashing NEUTRAL (N) position indicator light indicates that shift requirements have not been met.

# IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

## HAZARD WARNING

### FLASHERS . . . . .190

Control . . . . .190

### BULB REPLACEMENT . . . . .191

Replacement Bulbs . . . . .191

Replacing Exterior Bulbs. . . . .192

### FUSES . . . . .194

General Information. . . . .194

Underhood Fuses . . . . .194

Interior Fuses . . . . .200

## JACKING AND TIRE

### CHANGING . . . . .201

Jack Location/Spare Tire Stowage . . . .201

Changing Procedure . . . . .206

## TIRE SERVICE KIT —

### IF EQUIPPED. . . . .207

Tire Service Kit Storage . . . . .207

Tire Service Kit Components And  
Operation . . . . .207

Tire Service Kit Usage Precautions. . . .208

Sealing A Tire With Tire Service Kit . . .209

## JUMP STARTING

### PROCEDURES . . . . .212

Preparations For Jump-Start . . . . .213

Jump Starting Procedure. . . . .213

## REFUELING IN EMERGENCY. . . .214

Emergency Fuel Filler Door Release . . .214

## IF YOUR ENGINE OVERHEATS . .215

## GEAR SELECTOR OVERRIDE . . .215

## FREEING A STUCK VEHICLE. . . .216

## TOWING A DISABLED

### VEHICLE . . . . .217

Front-Wheel Drive (FWD) Models. . . . .218

4x4 Models With 1-Speed  
Power Transfer Unit . . . . .219

4x4 Models With 2-Speed  
Power Transfer Unit. . . . .219

Recovery Strap — If Equipped . . . . .219

## ENHANCED ACCIDENT

### RESPONSE SYSTEM (EARS) . . .220


## EVENT DATA

### RECORDER (EDR) . . . . .220



## HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS

### Control

The Hazard Warning flasher switch is located on the switch bank just above the climate controls. 

Push the switch to turn on the Hazard Warning flasher. When the switch is activated, all directional turn signals will flash on and off to warn oncoming traffic of an emergency. Push the switch a second time to turn off the Hazard Warning flashers.

This is an emergency warning system and it should not be used when the vehicle is in motion. Use it when your vehicle is disabled and it is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

When you must leave the vehicle to seek assistance, the Hazard Warning flashers will continue to operate even though the ignition is placed in the OFF position.

### NOTE:

With extended use, the Hazard Warning flashers may discharge the battery.



# BULB REPLACEMENT

## Replacement Bulbs

### Interior Bulbs

	<b>Bulb Number</b>
Cargo Lamp	TL212-2
Overhead Console Lamp	PLW214-2A
Reading Lamp	WL212-2

### Exterior Bulbs

	<b>Bulb Number</b>
Low Beam/High Beam (Bi-Halogen) Headlamps	9005HL +
Low Beam/High Beam (Bi-Xenon) Headlamps	D3S (Serviced at an authorized dealer)
Front Park/Daytime Running Lamps	LED (Serviced at an authorized dealer)
Front Turn Signal Lamps	WY21W
Front Fog Lamps	PSX24W
Rear Tail/Stop Lamps	LED (Serviced at an authorized dealer)
Rear Turn Signal Lamps	WY21W
Center High Mounted Stop Lamp (CHMSL)	LED (Serviced at an authorized dealer)
Back-Up Lamps	W16W or 921
License Plate Lamp	W5W



## Replacing Exterior Bulbs

### Bi-Xenon High Intensity Discharge (HID) Headlamps — If Equipped

The headlamps contain a type of high voltage discharge light source. High voltage can remain in the circuit even with the headlamp switch off. Because of this, you should not attempt to service a HID headlamp light source yourself. If an HID headlamp light source fails, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer for service.

#### NOTE:

On vehicles equipped with HID headlamps, when the headlamps are turned on, there is a blue hue to the lights. This diminishes and becomes more white after approximately 10 seconds, as the system charges.

#### WARNING!

A transient high voltage occurs at the bulb sockets of HID headlamps when the headlamp switch is turned ON. It may cause serious electrical shock or electrocution if not serviced properly. See your authorized dealer for service.

### Bi-Halogen Headlamps

1. Remove the three hex head screws from the wheel liner.
2. Pull the exterior edge of the liner towards the tire to gain access to the headlamp bulb cap.
3. Firmly grasp the cap and rotate it counterclockwise to unlock it.
4. Firmly grasp the bulb and connector assembly and rotate counterclockwise to remove from the housing.
5. Disconnect the bulb from the electrical connector and then connect the replacement bulb.

#### CAUTION!

Do not touch the new bulb with your fingers. Oil contamination will severely shorten bulb life. If the bulb comes in contact with any oily surface, clean the bulb with rubbing alcohol.

6. Install the bulb and connector assembly into the headlamp housing and rotate clockwise to lock it in place.
7. Install the bulb cap in the headlamp housing and rotate clockwise to lock it in place.
8. Install the three hex head screws into the wheel liner.

### Front Turn Signals And Front Side Marker Lamps

1. Open the hood.

#### NOTE:

Removal of the air cleaner filter housing may be necessary prior to replacing bulbs in the upper lamp assembly on the passenger side of the vehicle.

2. Twist the appropriate bulb and socket assembly counterclockwise, and then remove the bulb and socket assembly from the lamp housing.
3. Pull the bulb out of the socket and insert the replacement bulb.

4. Install the bulb and socket assembly into the housing, and rotate the socket clockwise to lock it in place.
5. Re-install air cleaner filter housing if removed.

### Front Fog Lamp

1. Remove the three hex head screws from the wheel liner.
2. Pull the exterior edge of the wheel liner towards the tire to gain access to the bulb.
3. Squeeze the two tabs on the side of the bulb socket and pull straight out from the fog lamp.
4. Disconnect the wire harness from the bulb.

### CAUTION!

Do not touch the new bulb with your fingers. Oil contamination will severely shorten bulb life. If the bulb comes in contact with any oily surface, clean the bulb with rubbing alcohol.

5. Reconnect the wiring harness to the new bulb and reinstall by inserting the new bulb straight into the fog lamp housing until it locks in place.
6. Lock the lower door in the wheel liner.

### Bodyside Mounted Back-Up Lamp

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Remove the screws that fasten the bodyside mounted lamp housing to the vehicle.
3. Grasp the tail lamp and pull firmly rearward to disengage the lamp from the vehicle.
4. Disconnect the electrical connector.
5. Twist the socket counterclockwise and remove from housing.
6. Pull the bulb to remove it from the socket.
7. Replace the bulb and install the socket.
8. Reconnect the electrical connector.
9. Reinstall the bodyside lamp housing and screws.
10. Close the liftgate.

### Liftgate Mounted Back-up Lamp

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Use a fiber stick or flat blade screw driver to pry the lower trim from the liftgate.
3. Once the trim is loose, pull it back exposing the trim panel.
4. Using a fiber stick or flat blade screw driver, open the trim panel exposing the back of the liftgate lamp.
5. Disconnect the electrical connector.
6. Twist the socket counterclockwise and remove from lamp.
7. Pull the bulb to remove it from the socket.
8. Replace the bulb, reinstall the socket.
9. Connect the electrical connector.
10. Reinstall the trim panel and the lower trim.
11. Close the liftgate.



### License Plate Lamp

1. Using a small screwdriver, press inward the locking tab on the side of the lamp assembly and pull down on the lamp assembly for removal.
2. Pull bulb from socket, replace, and reinstall the lamp assembly into place ensuring the locking tab is secure.

## FUSES

### WARNING!

- When replacing a blown fuse, always use an appropriate replacement fuse with the same amp rating as the original fuse. Never replace a fuse with another fuse of higher amp rating. Never replace a blown fuse with metal wires or any other material. Failure to use proper fuses may result in serious personal injury, fire and/or property damage.
- Before replacing a fuse, make sure that the ignition is off and that all the other services are switched off and/or disengaged.
- If the replaced fuse blows again, contact an authorized dealer.
- If a general protection fuse for safety systems (air bag system, braking system), power unit systems (engine system, transmission system) or steering system blows, contact an authorized dealer.

### General Information

The fuses protect electrical systems against excessive current.

When a device does not work, you must check the electrical circuit inside the fuse for a break/melt.

Also, please be aware that when using power outlets for extended periods of time with the engine off may result in vehicle battery discharge.

### Underhood Fuses

The Power Distribution Center is located in the engine compartment near the battery. This center contains cartridge fuses, mini-fuses and relays. A label that identifies each component is printed on the inside of the cover.

<b>Cavity</b>	<b>Blade Fuse</b>	<b>Cartridge Fuse</b>	<b>Description</b>
F06	–	–	Not Used
F07	15 Amp Blue	–	Powertrain Control Module - PCM (Diesel Only)
F08	25 Amp Clear	–	Engine Control Module (ECM)/Fuel Injection
F09	–	–	Not Used
F10	20 Amp Yellow	–	Power Transfer Unit (PTU) – If Equipped
F11	–	–	Not Used
F12	20 Amp Yellow	–	Brake Vacuum Pump – If Equipped
F13	10 Amp Red	–	Engine Control Module (ECM)
F14	10 Amp Red	–	Drivetrain Control Module (DTCM)/Power Take-Off Unit (PTU)/ Brake System Module (BSM) – If Equipped/Brake Pedal Switch/ Back Up Switch (Diesel Only)
F15	–	–	Not Used
F16	20 Amp Yellow	–	Ign Coil (Gas)/Engine Sensor (Diesel)
F17	–	–	Not Used
F18	–	–	Not Used
F19	–	40 Amp Green	Starter Solenoid
F20	10 Amp Red	–	A/C Compressor Clutch
F21	–	–	Not Used
F22	5 Amp Tan	–	Radiator Fan
F23	70 Amp Tan	–	Body Controller Module (BCM) – Feed 2
F23	50 Amp Red	–	Voltage Stability Module (VSM) Feed #2 – If Equipped With Stop/Start Engine Option
F24	20 Amp Yellow	–	Rear Wiper – If Equipped With Stop/Start Engine Option
F25B	20 Amp Yellow	–	Front Washer – If Equipped With Stop/Start Engine Option



<b>Cavity</b>	<b>Blade Fuse</b>	<b>Cartridge Fuse</b>	<b>Description</b>
F26	–	30 Amp Pink	Fuel Heater – Diesel Only
F27	–	–	Not Used
F28	15 Amp Blue	–	Transmission Control Module (TCM)
F29	–	–	Not Used
F30	10 Amp Red	–	Engine Control Module (ECM)/(EPS)/(PCM)
F31	–	–	Not Used
F32	–	–	Not Used
F33	–	–	Not Used
F34	–	–	Not Used
F35	–	–	Not Used
F36	–	–	Not Used
F37	–	–	Not Used
F38	–	60 Amp Yellow	Glow Plugs (Diesel Only) – If Equipped
F39	–	40 Amp Green	HVAC Blower Motor
F40	–	20 Amp Blue	Trailer Tow Park Light – If Equipped
F40	–	30 Amp Pink	Headlamp Washer Pump – If Equipped
F41	–	60 Amp Yellow	Body Controller Module (BCM) – Feed 1
F41	–	50 Amp Red	Voltage Stability Module - Feed 1 – If Equipped With Stop/Start Engine Option
F42	–	30 Amp Pink	Trailer Tow Electric Brake Module – If Equipped
F43	20 Amp Yellow	–	Fuel Pump Motor
F44	–	30 Amp Pink	Trailer Tow / 7-Way Connector – If Equipped
F45	–	30 Amp Pink	Passenger Door Module (PDM) – If Equipped

<b>Cavity</b>	<b>Blade Fuse</b>	<b>Cartridge Fuse</b>	<b>Description</b>
F46	–	25 Amp Clear	Sunroof – If Equipped
F48	–	30 Amp Pink	Driver Door Module – If Equipped
F49	–	30 Amp Pink	Power Inverter (115V A/C) — If Equipped
F50	–	30 Amp Pink	Power Liftgate – If Equipped
F51	–	–	Not Used
F52	–	30 Amp Pink	Front Wipers – If Equipped With Stop/Start Engine Option
F53	–	30 Amp Pink	Brake System Module & Valves
F54	–	30 Amp Pink	Body Control Module (BCM) Feed 3
F55	10 Amp Red	–	Blind Spot Sensors/Compass/Rearview Camera/ Trunk Lamp With Flashlamp Charger – If Equipped
F56	15 Amp Blue	–	Ignition Node Module (IGNM)/KIN/RF Hub/ Electric Steering Column Lock (ESL)
F57	20 Amp Yellow	–	Trailer Tow Lights Left – If Equipped
F58	10 Amp Red	–	Occupant Classification Module/VSM/ESC
F59	–	30 Amp Pink	Drivetrain Control Module (DTCM) – If Equipped
F60	20 Amp Yellow	–	Power Outlet – Center Console
F61	20 Amp Yellow	–	Trailer Tow Lights Right – If Equipped
F62	20 Amp Yellow	–	Windshield De-Icer – If Equipped
F63	20 Amp Yellow	–	Front Heated/Vented Seats – If Equipped
F64	20 Amp Yellow	–	Heated Steering Wheel – If Equipped
F65	10 Amp Red	–	In Vehicle Temperature Sensor/Humidity Sensor/ Driver Assist System Module (DASM)/Park Assist (PAM) – If Equipped With Stop/Start option
F66	15 Amp Blue	–	HVAC (ECC)/Instrument Panel Cluster (IPC)



<b>Cavity</b>	<b>Blade Fuse</b>	<b>Cartridge Fuse</b>	<b>Description</b>
F67	10 Amp Red	–	In Vehicle Temperature Sensor/Humidity Sensor/ Driver Assist System Module (DASM)/Park Assist (PAM) – If Not Equipped With Stop/Start Option
F68	–	–	Not Used
F69	10 Amp Red	–	Power Transfer Unit Switch (TSBM)/Active Grill Shutter (AGS) – If Equipped With Gas Engine
69A	10 Amp Red	–	Power Transfer Unit Switch (TSBM) – If Equipped With Diesel Engine
F70	5 Amp Tan	–	Intelligent Battery Sensor – If Equipped With Stop/Start Engine Option
F71	20 Amp Yellow	–	HID Headlamp Right – If Equipped With Stop/Start Engine Option
F72	10 Amp Red	–	Heated Mirrors – If Equipped
F73	–	20 Amp Blue	Trailer Tow Back Up – If Equipped
F74	–	30 Amp Pink	Rear Defroster
F75	20 Amp Yellow	–	Cigar Lighter – If Equipped
F76	20 Amp Yellow	–	Rear Differential Module (RDM) – If Equipped
F77	10 Amp Red	–	Fuel Door Release/Brake Pedal Switch
F78	10 Amp Red	–	Diagnostic Port/Digital TV (Japan Only)
F79	10 Amp Red	–	Integrated Center Stack (ICS)/HVAC/Aux Switch Bank Module (ASBM)/Instrument Panel Cluster (IPC)
F80	20 Amp Yellow	–	Radio / CD – If Equipped
F81	–	–	Not Used
F82	–	–	Not Used



<b>Cavity</b>	<b>Blade Fuse</b>	<b>Cartridge Fuse</b>	<b>Description</b>
F83	–	20 Amp Blue	Engine Controller Module (Gas)
F84	–	30 Amp Pink	Electric Park Brake (EPB) – Left
F85	–	–	Not Used
F86	20 Amp Yellow	–	Horns – If Equipped With Stop/Start Engine Option
F87A	20 Amp Yellow	–	HID Headlamp Left – If Equipped With Stop/Start Engine Option
F88	15 Amp Blue	–	Collision Mitigation Module (CMM)/Electrochromatic Mirror/ Smart Camera Module – If Equipped
F89	10 Amp Red	–	Headlamp Leveling – If Equipped
F90	–	–	Not Used
F91	20 Amp Yellow	–	Power Outlet Rear – If Equipped – Customer Selectable
F92	–	–	Not Used
F93	–	40 Amp Green	Brake System Module (BSM) – Pump Motor
F94	–	30 Amp Pink	Electric Park Brake (EPB) – Right
F95	10 Amp Red	–	Electrochromatic Mirror/Rain Sensor/Sunroof – If Equipped/ Passenger Window Switch/Power Outlet Console/ Digital TV (Japan Only)
F96	10 Amp Red	–	Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC)/(Airbag)
F97	10 Amp Red	–	Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC)/(Airbag)
F98	25 Amp Clear	–	Audio Amplifier – If Equipped
F99	–	–	Not Used
F100	–	–	Not Used



## Interior Fuses

The interior fuse panel is located on the Body Control Module (BCM) in the passenger compartment on the left side dash panel under the instrument panel.

<b>Cavity</b>	<b>Blade Fuse</b>	<b>Description</b>
F13	15 Amp Blue	Low Beam Left
F32	10 Amp Red	Interior Lighting
F36	10 Amp Red	Intrusion Module/Siren – If Equipped
F38	20 Amp Yellow	Deadbolt All Unlock
F43	20 Amp Yellow	Washer Pump Front
F48	25 Amp Clear	Fog Lamp Rear Left/Right – If Equipped
F49	7.5 Amp Brown	Lumbar Support
F50	7.5 Amp Brown	Wireless Charging Pad – If Equipped
F51	10 Amp Red	Driver Window Switch/Power Mirrors – If Equipped
F53	7.5 Amp Brown	UCI Port (USB & AUX)
F89	10 Amp Red	Door Locks – Driver Unlock
F91	7.5 Amp Brown	Left Front Fog Lamp (Low And High Line)
F92	7.5 Amp Brown	Right Front Fog Lamp (High Line)
F93	10 Amp Red	Low Beam Right

## JACKING AND TIRE CHANGING

### WARNING!

- Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.
- Being under a jacked-up vehicle is dangerous. The vehicle could slip off the jack and fall on you. You could be crushed. Never put any part of your body under a vehicle that is on a jack. If you need to get under a raised vehicle, take it to a service center where it can be raised on a lift.
- Never start or run the engine while the vehicle is on a jack.
- The jack is designed to be used as a tool for changing tires only. The jack should not be used to lift the vehicle for service purposes. The vehicle should be jacked on a firm level surface only. Avoid ice or slippery areas.

### Jack Location/Spare Tire Storage

The jack, wheel chocks and spare tire are stowed under the load floor behind the rear seat.

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Lift the access cover using the load floor handle.



Load Floor Handle

3. Remove the hook from the stowed position on the back side of the load floor and place the hook over the top body flange and weather seal. This will hold the load floor up while obtaining the jack and spare tire.
4. Remove the fastener securing the jack and spare tire.
5. Remove the chocks.
6. Remove the scissors jack and wheel bolt wrench from the spare wheel as an assembly. Turn the jack screw to the left to loosen the wheel bolt wrench, and remove the wrench from the jack assembly.

#### NOTE:

The jack handle attaches to the side of the jack with two attachment points. When the jack is partially expanded, the tension between the two attachment points holds the jack handle in place.

7. Remove the spare tire.



**WARNING!**

A loose tire or jack thrown forward in a collision or hard stop could endanger the occupants of the vehicle. Always stow the jack parts and the spare tire in the places provided. Have the deflated (flat) tire repaired or replaced immediately.

**Preparations For Jacking**

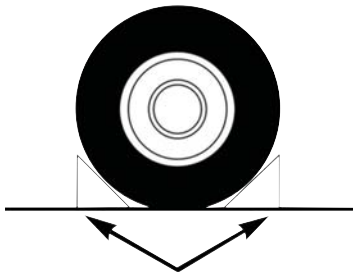
1. Park the vehicle on a firm level surface as far from the edge of the roadway as possible. Avoid icy or slippery areas.

**WARNING!**

Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic, pull far enough off the road to avoid being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

2. Turn on the Hazard Warning flasher.
3. Apply the parking brake.
4. Place the gear selector into PARK.

5. Turn the ignition off to the LOCK position.
6. Chock both the front and rear of the wheel diagonally opposite of the jacking position. For example, if changing the right front tire, chock the left rear wheel.

**Wheel Chocks****NOTE:**

Passengers should not remain in the vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.

**Jacking Instructions****WARNING!**

Carefully follow these tire changing warnings to help prevent personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

- Always park on a firm, level surface as far from the edge of the roadway as possible before raising the vehicle.
- Turn on the Hazard Warning flasher.
- Chock the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be raised.
- Set the parking brake firmly and set the transmission in PARK.
- Never start or run the engine with the vehicle on a jack.
- Do not let anyone sit in the vehicle when it is on a jack.
- Do not get under the vehicle when it is on a jack. If you need to get under a raised vehicle, take it to a service center where it can be raised on a lift.
- Only use the jack in the positions indicated and for lifting this vehicle during a tire change.

## WARNING!

- If working on or near a roadway, be extremely careful of motor traffic.
- To assure that spare tires, flat or inflated, are securely stowed, spares must be stowed with the valve stem facing the ground.



### Warning Label

## CAUTION!

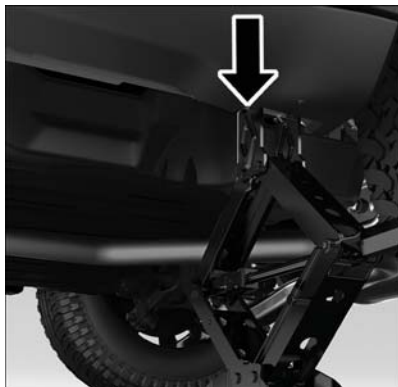
Do not attempt to raise the vehicle by jacking on locations other than those indicated in the Jacking Instructions for this vehicle.

1. Remove the spare tire, jack, and wheel bolt wrench.
2. If equipped with aluminum wheels where the center cap covers the wheel bolts, use the wheel bolt wrench to pry the center cap off carefully before raising the vehicle.
3. Before raising the vehicle, use the wheel bolt wrench to loosen, but not remove, the wheel bolts on the wheel with the flat tire. Turn the wheel bolts counterclockwise one turn while the wheel is still on the ground.
4. Place the jack underneath the lift area that is closest to the flat tire. Turn the jack screw clockwise to firmly engage the jack saddle with the lift area of the sill flange, centering the jack saddle inside the cut-out in the sill cladding.

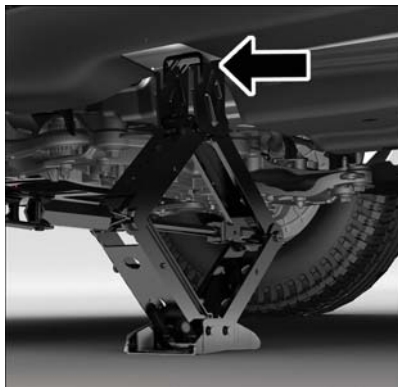




**Jacking Locations**



Rear Jack Location Engaged



Front Jack Location Engaged

5. Raise the vehicle just enough to remove the flat tire.

### WARNING!

Raising the vehicle higher than necessary can make the vehicle less stable. It could slip off the jack and hurt someone near it. Raise the vehicle only enough to remove the tire.

6. Remove the wheel bolts and tire.
7. Remove the alignment pin from the jack assembly and thread the pin into the wheel hub to assist in mounting the spare tire.
8. Mount the spare tire.

### CAUTION!

Be sure to mount the spare tire with the valve stem facing outward. The vehicle could be damaged if the spare tire is mounted incorrectly.

### NOTE:

- For vehicles so equipped, do not attempt to install a center cap or wheel cover on the compact spare.
- Refer to “Tires” in “Servicing And Maintenance” in the Owner’s Manual on [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/) for additional warnings, cautions, and information about the spare tire, its use, and operation.



9. Install the wheel bolts with the threaded end of the wheel bolt toward the wheel. Lightly tighten the wheel bolts.

**WARNING!**

To avoid the risk of forcing the vehicle off the jack, do not tighten the wheel nuts fully until the vehicle has been lowered. Failure to follow this warning may result in serious injury.

10. Lower the vehicle to the ground by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.
11. Finish tightening the wheel bolts. Push down on the wrench while at the end of the handle for increased leverage. Tighten the wheel bolts in a star pattern until each wheel bolt has been tightened twice. Refer to “Torque Specifications” in “Technical Specifications” for the proper lug bolt torque. If in doubt about the correct tightness, have them checked with a torque wrench by your authorized dealer or at a service station.

12. Securely stow the jack, tools, chocks, and flat tire.

**WARNING!**

A loose tire or jack thrown forward in a collision or hard stop could endanger the occupants of the vehicle. Always stow the jack parts and the spare tire in the places provided. Have the deflated (flat) tire repaired or replaced immediately.

**Changing Procedure**

1. Mount the road tire on the axle.
2. Install the remaining wheel bolts with the threaded end of the wheel bolt toward the wheel. Lightly tighten the wheel bolts.

**WARNING!**

To avoid the risk of forcing the vehicle off the jack, do not tighten the wheel nuts fully until the vehicle has been lowered. Failure to follow this warning may result in serious injury.

3. Lower the vehicle to the ground by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.
4. Finish tightening the wheel bolts. Push down on the wrench while at the end of the handle for increased leverage. Tighten the wheel bolts in a star pattern until each wheel bolt has been tightened twice. Refer to “Torque Specifications” in “Technical Specifications” for the proper lug bolt torque. If in doubt about the correct tightness, have them checked with a torque wrench by your authorized dealer or service station.
5. Lower the jack until it is free. Remove the wheel chocks. Reassemble the lug wrench to the jack assembly and stow it in the spare tire area. Secure the assembly using the means provided. Release the parking brake before driving the vehicle.
6. After 25 miles (40 km) check the wheel bolt torque with a torque wrench to ensure that all wheel bolts are properly seated against the wheel.



## TIRE SERVICE KIT – IF EQUIPPED

Small punctures up to 1/4 inch (6 mm) in the tire tread can be sealed with Tire Service Kit. Foreign objects (e.g., screws or nails) should not be removed from the tire. Tire Service Kit can be used in outside temperatures down to approximately -4°F (-20°C).

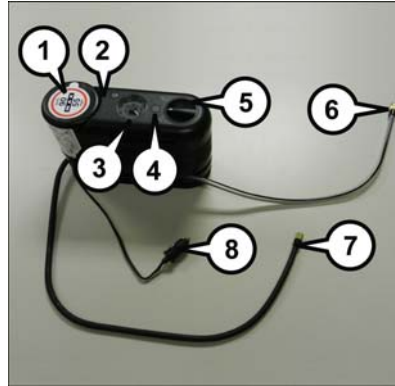
This kit will provide a temporary tire seal, allowing you to drive your vehicle up to 100 miles (160 km) with a maximum speed of 55 mph (90 km/h).

### Tire Service Kit Storage

The Tire Service Kit is stowed under the load floor behind the rear seat.

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Lift the access cover using the load floor handle.

### Tire Service Kit Components And Operation



#### Tire Service Kit Components

- 1 — Sealant Bottle
- 2 — Deflation Button
- 3 — Pressure Gauge
- 4 — Power Button
- 5 — Mode Select Knob
- 6 — Sealant Hose (Clear)
- 7 — Air Pump Hose (Black)
- 8 — Power Plug (located on the bottom side of the Tire Service Kit)

### Using The Mode Select Knob And Hoses

Your Tire Service Kit is equipped with the following symbols to indicate the air or sealant mode.

#### Selecting Air Mode

Turn the Mode Select Knob (5) to this position for air pump operation only. Use the Black Air Pump Hose (7) when selecting this mode.

#### Selecting Sealant Mode

Turn the Mode Select Knob (5) to this position to inject the Tire Service Kit Sealant and to inflate the tire. Use the Sealant Hose (clear hose) (6) when selecting this mode.

#### Using The Power Button

Push and release the Power Button (4) once to turn on the Tire Service Kit. Push and release the Power Button (4) again to turn Off the Tire Service Kit.

#### Using The Deflation Button

Push the Deflation Button (2) to reduce the air pressure in the tire if it becomes over-inflated.



### Tire Service Kit Usage Precautions

- Replace the Tire Service Kit Sealant Bottle (1) and Sealant Hose (6) prior to the expiration date (printed at the lower right hand corner on the bottle label) to assure optimum operation of the system. Refer to “Sealing a Tire with Tire Service Kit” section (F) “Sealant Bottle and Hose Replacement”.
- The Sealant Bottle (1) and Sealant Hose (6) are a one tire application use and need to be replaced after each use. Always replace these components immediately at your original equipment vehicle dealer.
- When the Tire Service Kit sealant is in a liquid form, clean water, and a damp cloth will remove the material from the vehicle or tire and wheel components. Once the sealant dries, it can easily be peeled off and properly discarded.
- For optimum performance, make sure the valve stem on the wheel is free of debris before connecting the Tire Service Kit.
- You can use the Tire Service Kit air pump to inflate bicycle tires. The kit also comes with two needles, located in the Accessory Storage Compartment (on the bottom of the air pump) for inflating sport balls, rafts, or similar inflatable items. However, use only the Air Pump Hose (7) and make sure the Mode Select Knob (5) is in the Air Mode when inflating such items to avoid injecting sealant into them. The Tire Service Kit Sealant is only intended to seal punctures less than 1/4 inch (6 mm) diameter in the tread of your vehicle.
- Do not lift or carry the Tire Service Kit by the hoses.

### WARNING!

- Do not attempt to seal a tire on the side of the vehicle closest to traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when using the Tire Service Kit.
- Do not use Tire Service Kit or drive the vehicle under the following circumstances:
  - If the puncture in the tire tread is approximately 1/4 inch (6 mm) or larger.
  - If the tire has any sidewall damage.
  - If the tire has any damage from driving with extremely low tire pressure.
  - If the tire has any damage from driving on a flat tire.
  - If the wheel has any damage.
  - If you are unsure of the condition of the tire or the wheel.
- Keep Tire Service Kit away from open flames or heat source.
- A loose Tire Service Kit thrown forward in a collision or hard stop could endanger the occupants of the vehicle. Always

## WARNING!

stow the Tire Service Kit in the place provided. Failure to follow these warnings can result in injuries that are serious or fatal to you, your passengers, and others around you.

- Take care not to allow the contents of Tire Service Kit to come in contact with hair, eyes, or clothing. Tire Service Kit sealant is harmful if inhaled, swallowed, or absorbed through the skin. It causes skin, eye, and respiratory irritation. Flush immediately with plenty of water if there is any contact with eyes or skin. Change clothing as soon as possible, if there is any contact with clothing.
- Tire Service Kit Sealant solution contains latex. In case of an allergic reaction or rash, consult a physician immediately. Keep Tire Service Kit out of reach of children. If swallowed, rinse mouth immediately with plenty of water and drink plenty of water. Do not induce vomiting! Consult a physician immediately.

## Sealing A Tire With Tire Service Kit

### (A) Whenever You Stop To Use Tire Service Kit:

1. Pull over to a safe location and turn on the vehicle's Hazard Warning flashers.
2. Verify that the valve stem (on the wheel with the deflated tire) is in a position that is near to the ground. This will allow the Tire Service Kit Hoses (6) and (7) to reach the valve stem and keep the Tire Service Kit flat on the ground. This will provide the best positioning of the kit when injecting the sealant into the deflated tire and running the air pump. Move the vehicle as necessary to place the valve stem in this position before proceeding.
3. Place the transmission in PARK (auto transmission) or in Gear (manual transmission) and place the ignition in the OFF position.
4. Apply the parking brake.

### (B) Setting Up To Use Tire Service Kit:

1. Push in the Mode Select Knob (5) and turn to the Sealant Mode position.
2. Uncoil the Sealant Hose (6) and then remove the cap from the fitting at the end of the hose.
3. Place the Tire Service Kit flat on the ground next to the deflated tire.
4. Remove the cap from the valve stem and then screw the fitting at the end of the Sealant Hose (6) onto the valve stem.
5. Uncoil the Power Plug (8) and insert the plug into the vehicle's 12 Volt power outlet.

#### NOTE:

Do not remove foreign objects (e.g., screws or nails) from the tire.

### (C) Injecting Tire Service Kit Sealant Into The Deflated Tire:

- Always start the engine before turning ON the Tire Service Kit.



**NOTE:**

Manual transmission vehicles must have the parking brake engaged and the gear selector in NEUTRAL.

- After pushing the Power Button (4), the sealant (white fluid) will flow from the Sealant Bottle (1) through the Sealant Hose (6) and into the tire.

**NOTE:**

Sealant may leak out through the puncture in the tire.

**If the sealant (white fluid) does not flow within 0 – 10 seconds through the Sealant Hose (6):**

1. Push the Power Button (4) to turn Off the Tire Service Kit. Disconnect the Sealant Hose (6) from the valve stem. Make sure the valve stem is free of debris. Reconnect the Sealant Hose (6) to the valve stem. Check that the Mode Select Knob (5) is in the Sealant Mode position and not Air Mode. Push the Power Button (4) to turn On the Tire Service Kit.

2. Connect the Power Plug (8) to a different 12 Volt power outlet in your vehicle or another vehicle, if available. Make sure the engine is running before turning ON the Tire Service Kit.
3. The Sealant Bottle (1) may be empty due to previous use. Call for assistance.

**NOTE:**

If the Mode Select Knob (5) is on Air Mode and the pump is operating, air will dispense from the Air Pump Hose (7) only, not the Sealant Hose (6).

**If the sealant (white fluid) does flow through the Sealant Hose (6):**

1. Continue to operate the pump until sealant is no longer flowing through the hose (typically takes 30 - 70 seconds). As the sealant flows through the Sealant Hose (6), the Pressure Gauge (3) can read as high as 70 psi (4.8 Bar). The Pressure Gauge (3) will decrease quickly from approximately 70 psi (4.8 Bar) to the actual tire pressure when the Sealant Bottle (1) is empty.

2. The pump will start to inject air into the tire immediately after the Sealant Bottle (1) is empty. Continue to operate the pump and inflate the tire to the pressure indicated on the tire pressure label on the driver-side latch pillar (recommended pressure). Check the tire pressure by looking at the Pressure Gauge (3).

**If the tire does not inflate to at least 26 psi (1.8 Bar) pressure within 15 minutes:**

- The tire is too badly damaged. Do not attempt to drive the vehicle further. Call for assistance.

**NOTE:**

If the tire becomes overinflated, push the Deflation Button to reduce the tire pressure to the recommended inflation pressure before continuing.

**If the tire inflates to the recommended pressure or is at least 26 psi (1.8 Bar) pressure within 15 minutes:**

1. Push the Power Button (4) to turn off the Tire Service Kit.

2. Remove the Speed Limit sticker from the top of the Sealant Bottle (1) and place the sticker on the instrument panel.
3. Immediately disconnect the Sealant Hose (6) from the valve stem, reinstall the cap on the fitting at the end of the hose, and place the Tire Service Kit in the vehicle storage location. Quickly proceed to (D) "Drive Vehicle."

### CAUTION!

- The metal end fitting from Power Plug (8) may get hot after use, so it should be handled carefully.
- Failure to reinstall the cap on the fitting at the end of the Sealant Hose (6) can result in sealant contacting your skin, clothing, and the vehicle's interior. It can also result in sealant contacting internal Tire Service Kit components which may cause permanent damage to the kit.

### (D) Drive Vehicle:

Immediately after injecting sealant and inflating the tire, drive the vehicle 5 miles (8 km) or 10 minutes to ensure distribution of the Tire Service Kit Sealant within the tire. Do not exceed 55 mph (90 km/h).

### WARNING!

Tire Service Kit is not a permanent flat tire repair. Have the tire inspected and repaired or replaced after using Tire Service Kit. Do not exceed 55 mph (90 km/h) until the tire is repaired or replaced. Failure to follow this warning can result in injuries that are serious or fatal to you, your passengers, and others around you.

### (E) After Driving:

Pull over to a safe location. Refer to "When-ever You Stop To Use Tire Service Kit" before continuing.

1. Push in the Mode Select Knob (5) and turn to the Air Mode position.

2. Uncoil the power plug and insert the plug into the vehicle's 12 Volt power outlet.
3. Uncoil the Air Pump Hose (7) (black in color) and screw the fitting at the end of hose (7) onto the valve stem.
4. Check the pressure in the tire by reading the Pressure Gauge (3).

### If tire pressure is less than 19 psi (1.3 Bar):

The tire is too badly damaged. Do not attempt to drive the vehicle further. Call for assistance.

### If the tire pressure is 19 psi (1.3 Bar) or higher:

1. Push the Power Button (4) to turn on Tire Service Kit and inflate the tire to the pressure indicated on the tire and loading information label on the driver-side door opening.

### NOTE:

If the tire becomes over-inflated, push the Deflation Button to reduce the tire pressure to the recommended inflation pressure before continuing.



2. Disconnect the Tire Service Kit from the valve stem, reinstall the cap on the valve stem and unplug from 12 Volt outlet.
3. Place the Tire Service Kit in its proper storage area in the vehicle.
4. Have the tire inspected and repaired or replaced at the earliest opportunity at an authorized dealer or tire service center.
5. Remove the Speed Limit sticker from the instrument panel after the tire has been repaired.
6. Replace the Sealant Bottle (1) and Sealant Hose (6) assembly at your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Refer to (F) "Sealant Bottle and Hose Replacement".

**NOTE:**

When having the tire serviced, advise the authorized dealer or service center that the tire has been sealed using the Tire Service Kit.

**(F) Sealant Bottle And Hose Replacement:**

1. Uncoil the Sealant Hose (6) (clear in color).
2. Locate the round Sealant Bottle release button in the recessed area under the sealant bottle.
3. Push the Sealant Bottle release button. The Sealant Bottle (1) will pop up. Remove the bottle and dispose of it accordingly.
4. Clean any remaining sealant from the Tire Service Kit housing.
5. Position the new Sealant Bottle (1) in the housing so that the Sealant Hose (6) aligns with the hose slot in the front of the housing. Push the bottle into the housing. An audible click will be heard indicating the bottle is locked into place.
6. Verify that the cap is installed on the fitting at the end of the Sealant Hose (6) and return the hose to its storage area (located on the bottom of the air pump).
7. Return the Tire Service Kit to its storage location in the vehicle.

**JUMP STARTING PROCEDURES**

If your vehicle has a discharged battery, it can be jump started using a set of jumper cables and a battery in another vehicle or by using a portable battery booster pack. Jump starting can be dangerous if done improperly, so please follow the procedures in this section carefully.

**NOTE:**

When using a portable battery booster pack, follow the manufacturer's operating instructions and precautions.

**WARNING!**

Do not attempt jump starting if the battery is frozen. It could rupture or explode and cause personal injury.

**CAUTION!**

Do not use a portable battery booster pack or any other booster source with a system voltage greater than 12 Volts or damage to the battery, starter motor, alternator or electrical system may occur.

## Preparations For Jump-Start

The battery in your vehicle is located in the front of the engine compartment, behind the left headlight assembly.

### NOTE:

The positive battery post is covered with a protective cap. Lift up on the cap to gain access to the positive battery post.



Positive Battery Post

### WARNING!

- Take care to avoid the radiator cooling fan whenever the hood is raised. It can start anytime the ignition switch is ON. You can be injured by moving fan blades.
- Remove any metal jewelry such as rings, watch bands and bracelets that could make an inadvertent electrical contact. You could be seriously injured.
- Batteries contain sulfuric acid that can burn your skin or eyes and generate hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Keep open flames or sparks away from the battery.

1. Apply the parking brake, shift the automatic transmission into PARK and turn the ignition to LOCK.
2. Turn off the heater, radio, and all unnecessary electrical accessories.
3. If using another vehicle to jump-start the battery, park the vehicle within the jumper cables reach, apply the parking brake and make sure the ignition is OFF.

### WARNING!

Do not allow vehicles to touch each other as this could establish a ground connection and personal injury could result.

### Jump Starting Procedure

### WARNING!

Failure to follow this jump starting procedure could result in personal injury or property damage due to battery explosion.

### CAUTION!

Failure to follow these procedures could result in damage to the charging system of the booster vehicle or the discharged vehicle.



### Connecting The Jumper Cables

1. Connect the positive (+) end of the jumper cable to the positive (+) post of the discharged vehicle.
2. Connect the opposite end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) post of the booster battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) end of the jumper cable to the negative (-) post of the booster battery.
4. Connect the opposite end of the negative (-) jumper cable to a good engine ground (exposed metal part of the discharged vehicle's engine) away from the battery and the fuel injection system.

#### WARNING!

Do not connect the jumper cable to the negative (-) post of the discharged battery. The resulting electrical spark could cause the battery to explode and could result in personal injury. Only use the specific ground point, do not use any other exposed metal parts.

5. Start the engine in the vehicle that has the booster battery, let the engine idle for a few minutes, and then start the engine in the vehicle with the discharged battery.
6. Once the engine is started, remove the jumper cables in the reverse sequence:

### Disconnecting The Jumper Cables

1. Disconnect the negative (-) end of the jumper cable from the engine ground of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
2. Disconnect the opposite end of the negative (-) jumper cable from the negative (-) post of the booster battery.
3. Disconnect the positive (+) end of the jumper cable from the positive (+) post of the booster battery.
4. Disconnect the opposite end of the positive (+) jumper cable from the positive (+) post of the vehicle with the discharged battery.

If frequent jump starting is required to start your vehicle, you should have the battery and charging system inspected at your authorized dealer.

#### CAUTION!

Accessories plugged into the vehicle power outlets draw power from the vehicle's battery, even when not in use (i.e., cellular devices, etc.). Eventually, if plugged in long enough without engine operation, the vehicle's battery will discharge sufficiently to degrade battery life and/or prevent the engine from starting.

## REFUELING IN EMERGENCY

### Emergency Fuel Filler Door Release

If you are unable to open the fuel filler door, use the fuel filler door emergency release.

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Remove access door located on right interior trim panel for release cable with the tip of your key.
3. Grab the release cable tether and pull up to release the fuel filler door.



## IF YOUR ENGINE OVERHEATS

In any of the following situations, you can reduce the potential for overheating your engine by taking the appropriate action.

- On the highways — slow down.
- In city traffic — while stopped, place the transmission in NEUTRAL, but do not increase engine idle speed.

### CAUTION!

Driving with a hot cooling system could damage your vehicle. If the temperature gauge reads “H,” pull over and stop the vehicle. Idle the vehicle with the air conditioner turned off until the pointer drops back into the normal range. If the pointer remains on the “H” and you hear continuous chimes, turn the engine off immediately and call for service.

### NOTE:

There are steps that you can take to slow down an impending overheat condition:

- If your air conditioner (A/C) is on, turn it off. The A/C system adds heat to the engine cooling system and turning the A/C off can help remove this heat.
- You can also turn the temperature control to maximum heat, the mode control to floor and the blower control to high. This allows the heater core to act as a supplement to the radiator and aids in removing heat from the engine cooling system.

### WARNING!

You or others can be badly burned by hot engine coolant (antifreeze) or steam from your radiator. If you see or hear steam coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the radiator has had time to cool. Never try to open a cooling system pressure cap when the radiator or coolant bottle is hot.

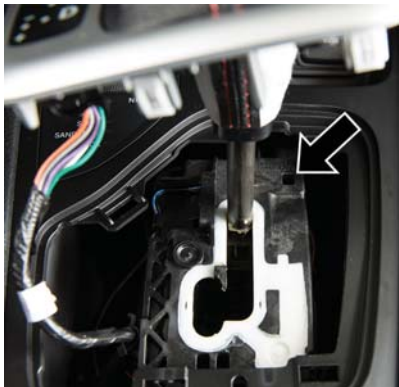
## GEAR SELECTOR OVERRIDE

If a malfunction occurs and the gear selector cannot be moved out of the PARK position, you can use the following procedure to temporarily move the gear selector:

1. Turn the engine OFF.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Using a screwdriver or similar tool, carefully separate the shifter bezel and boot assembly from the center console, and raise it up to access the gear selector mechanism.
4. Press and maintain firm pressure on the brake pedal.



5. Insert a small screwdriver or similar tool down into the gear selector override access hole (at the right front corner of the gear selector assembly), and push and hold the override release lever down.



**Override Access Hole**

6. Move the gear selector to the NEUTRAL position.
7. The vehicle may then be started in NEUTRAL.
8. Reinstall the gear selector boot.

## FREEING A STUCK VEHICLE

If your vehicle becomes stuck in mud, sand or snow, it can often be moved using a rocking motion. Turn the steering wheel right and left to clear the area around the front wheels. Push and hold the lock button on the gear selector. Then shift back and forth between DRIVE and REVERSE, while gently pressing the accelerator.

### NOTE:

Shifts between DRIVE and REVERSE can only be achieved at wheel speeds of 5 mph (8 km/h) or less. Whenever the transmission remains in NEUTRAL for more than two seconds, you must press the brake pedal to engage DRIVE or REVERSE.

Use the least amount of accelerator pedal pressure that will maintain the rocking motion without spinning the wheels or racing the engine.

## WARNING!

Fast spinning tires can be dangerous. Forces generated by excessive wheel speeds may cause damage, or even failure, of the axle and tires. A tire could explode and injure someone. Do not spin your vehicle's wheels faster than 30 mph (48 km/h) or for longer than 30 seconds continuously without stopping when you are stuck and do not let anyone near a spinning wheel, no matter what the speed.

### NOTE:

Push the "ESC Off" switch (if necessary), to place the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system in "Partial Off" mode, before rocking the vehicle. Refer to "Electronic Brake Control System" in "Safety" for further information. Once the vehicle has been freed, push the "ESC Off" switch again to restore "ESC On" mode.

### CAUTION!

- Racing the engine or spinning the wheels may lead to transmission overheating and failure. Allow the engine to idle with the transmission in NEUTRAL for at least one minute after every five rocking-motion cycles. This will minimize overheating and reduce the risk of clutch or transmission failure during prolonged efforts to free a stuck vehicle.

### CAUTION!

- When “rocking” a stuck vehicle by shifting between DRIVE/ SECOND gear and REVERSE, do not spin the wheels faster than 15 mph (24 km/h), or drivetrain damage may result.
- Revving the engine or spinning the wheels too fast may lead to transmission overheating and failure. It can also damage the tires. Do not spin the wheels above 30 mph (48 km/h) while in gear (no transmission shifting occurring).

## TOWING A DISABLED VEHICLE

This section describes procedures for towing a disabled vehicle using a commercial towing service. If the transmission and drivetrain are operable, disabled 4x4 vehicles may also be towed as described under “Recreational Towing” in the “Starting And Operating” section.

Towing Condition	Wheels Off The Ground	FWD MODELS	4X4 MODELS	
			1-SPEED POWER TRANSFER UNIT	2-SPEED POWER TRANSFER UNIT
Flat Tow	NONE	<b>NOT ALLOWED</b>	<b>NOT ALLOWED</b>	See instructions under “Recreational Towing” in “Starting And Operating” <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Transmission in <b>PARK</b></li><li>• Power Transfer Unit in <b>NEUTRAL</b></li><li>• Tow in <b>forward</b> direction</li></ul>
Wheel Lift Or Dolly Tow	Rear	<b>NOT ALLOWED</b>	<b>NOT ALLOWED</b>	<b>NOT ALLOWED</b>
	Front	OK	<b>NOT ALLOWED</b>	<b>NOT ALLOWED</b>
Flatbed	<b>ALL</b>	<b>BEST METHOD</b>	OK	<b>BEST METHOD</b>



Proper towing or lifting equipment is required to prevent damage to your vehicle. Use only tow bars and other equipment designed for this purpose, following equipment manufacturer's instructions. Use of safety chains is mandatory. Attach a tow bar or other towing device to main structural members of the vehicle, not to bumpers or associated brackets. State and local laws regarding vehicles under tow must be observed.

**NOTE:**

- You must ensure that the Auto Park Brake feature is disabled before towing this vehicle, to avoid inadvertent Electric Park Brake engagement. The Auto Park Brake feature is enabled or disabled via the customer programmable features in the Uconnect Settings.
- Vehicles with a discharged battery or total electrical failure when the Electric Park Brake (EPB) is engaged, will need a wheel dolly or jack to raise the rear wheels off the ground when moving the vehicle onto a flatbed.

If you must use the accessories (wipers, defrosters, etc.) while being towed, the ignition must be in the ON/RUN mode, not the ACC mode. Note that the Safehold feature will engage the Electric Park Brake whenever the driver's door is opened (if the ignition is ON, transmission is not in PARK, and brake pedal is released). If you are towing this vehicle with the ignition in the ON/RUN mode, you must manually disable the Electric Park Brake each time the driver's door is opened, by pressing the brake pedal and then releasing the EPB.

If the key fob is unavailable, or the vehicle's battery is discharged, refer to "Gear Selector Override" in this section for instructions on shifting the transmission out of PARK so that the vehicle can be moved.

**CAUTION!**

- Do not use sling type equipment when towing. Vehicle damage may occur.

**CAUTION!**

- When securing the vehicle to a flat bed truck, do not attach to front or rear suspension components. Damage to your vehicle may result from improper towing.
- Ensure that the Electric Park Brake is released, and remains released, while being towed.

**Front-Wheel Drive (FWD) Models**

The manufacturer recommends towing your vehicle with all four wheels **OFF** of the ground using a flatbed.

If flatbed equipment is not available, this vehicle must be towed with the front wheels **OFF** of the ground (using a towing dolly, or wheel lift equipment with the front wheels raised).

Ensure that the Electric Park Brake is released, and remains released, while being towed. The Electric Park Brake does not need to be released, if all four wheels are off the ground.

### CAUTION!

Towing this vehicle in violation of the above requirements can cause severe transmission damage. Damage from improper towing is not covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

#### 4x4 Models With 1-Speed Power Transfer Unit

The manufacturer requires towing with all four wheels **OFF** the ground.

Acceptable methods are to tow the vehicle on a flatbed, or with one end of vehicle raised and the opposite end on a towing dolly.

### WARNING!

- DO NOT tow this vehicle with ANY of its wheels on the ground. Damage to the drivetrain will result.
- Front or rear wheel lifts must not be used (if the remaining wheels are on the ground). Internal damage to the transmission or power transfer unit will occur if a front or rear wheel lift is used when towing.

### WARNING!

- Towing this vehicle in violation of the above requirements can cause severe transmission and/or power transfer unit damage. Damage from improper towing is not covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

#### 4x4 Models With 2-Speed Power Transfer Unit

The manufacturer recommends towing with all four wheels **OFF** the ground.

Acceptable methods are to tow the vehicle on a flatbed or with one end of the vehicle raised and the opposite end on a towing dolly.

If flatbed equipment is not available and the Power Transfer Unit is operable, vehicles **with a 2-speed Power Transfer Unit** may be towed (in the forward direction, with **ALL** wheels on the ground), under the following conditions:

- The Power Transfer Unit must be in **NEUTRAL (N)**.
- The transmission must be in **PARK**.

- Ensure that the Electric Park Brake is released, and remains released, while being towed.

Refer to “Recreational Towing” in “Starting And Operating” for detailed instructions.

### CAUTION!

- Front or rear wheel lifts must not be used (if the remaining wheels are on the ground). Internal damage to the transmission or power transfer unit will occur if a front or rear wheel lift is used when towing.
- Towing this vehicle in violation of the above requirements can cause severe transmission and/or power transfer unit damage. Damage from improper towing is not covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

#### Recovery Strap – If Equipped

Your vehicle may be included with a recovery strap. Recovery straps do not act like traditional tow straps, chains, or winch cables.



**WARNING!**

Recovery straps should only be used in emergencies to rescue stranded vehicles. Only use Recovery straps on vehicles that fit within the recommended GVW of your recovery strap. Only attach recovery straps to OE recommended anchor points or emergency towing anchor points. Never attach to tow ball or vehicle tie down point, these are not designed for this purpose. Never attach to vehicle steering, drive train, or any other suspension components. NEVER pull a strap over sharp edges or abrasive surfaces that can damage the recovery strap. NEVER use a damaged strap, it has reduced strength. DO NOT attempt to repair straps. ONLY persons involved in the recovery should be in either vehicle. No passengers. Anyone inside the vehicles can be struck by strap recoil, causing serious injury. MOVE bystanders at least 40 ft (12.2 m) from the recovery area when using the recovery strap.

**Using Recovery Strap**

1. Review all warnings and instructions first.
2. Position the recovery vehicle.
3. Connect the recovery strap.
4. Add a recovery damper or blanket.
5. Clear the danger zone.
6. Safely and slowly start pulling.
7. Disconnect the recovery strap after both vehicle are secure and parked.

**ENHANCED ACCIDENT RESPONSE SYSTEM (EARS)**

This vehicle is equipped with an Enhanced Accident Response System.

Please refer to “Occupant Restraint Systems” in “Safety” for further information on the Enhanced Accident Response System (EARS) function.

**EVENT DATA RECORDER (EDR)**

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle’s systems performed under certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle.

Please refer to “Occupant Restraint Systems” in “Safety” for further information on the Event Data Recorder (EDR).

# SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

## SCHEDULED SERVICING . . . . .222

Maintenance Plan . . . . .222  
 Heavy Duty Use Of The Vehicle. . . . .224

## ENGINE COMPARTMENT . . . . .225

2.4L Engine . . . . .225  
 3.2L Engine . . . . .226  
 Checking Oil Level . . . . .227  
 Adding Washer Fluid . . . . .227  
 Maintenance-Free Battery . . . . .227

## DEALER SERVICE . . . . .228

Engine Oil Filter . . . . .228  
 Engine Air Cleaner Filter . . . . .229  
 Air Conditioner Maintenance . . . . .229

Windshield Wiper Blades . . . . .232  
 Cooling System . . . . .236  
 Automatic Transmission . . . . .237

## RAISING THE VEHICLE . . . . .237

## TIRES . . . . .237

Tire Safety Information . . . . .237  
 Tires — General Information . . . . .246  
 Tire Types . . . . .250  
 Spare Tires — If Equipped . . . . .251  
 Wheel And Wheel Trim Care . . . . .253  
 Tire Chains (Traction Devices). . . . .254  
 Tire Rotation Recommendations . . . . .255

## DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADES. . . . .256

Treadwear . . . . .256  
 Traction Grades . . . . .257  
 Temperature Grades. . . . .257

## STORING THE VEHICLE . . . . .257

## BODYWORK . . . . .258

Preserving The Bodywork . . . . .258

## INTERIORS . . . . .259

Seats And Fabric Parts . . . . .259  
 Plastic And Coated Parts. . . . .260  
 Leather Parts. . . . .260



## SCHEDULED SERVICING

Your vehicle is equipped with an automatic oil change indicator system. The oil change indicator system will remind you that it is time to take your vehicle in for scheduled maintenance.

Based on engine operation conditions, the oil change indicator message will illuminate. This means that service is required for your vehicle. Operating conditions such as frequent short-trips, trailer tow, extremely hot or cold ambient temperatures will influence when the “Oil Change Required” message is displayed. Severe Operating Conditions can cause the change oil message to illuminate as early as 3,500 miles (5,600 km) since last reset. Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible, within the next 500 miles (805 km).

Your authorized dealer will reset the oil change indicator message after completing the scheduled oil change. If a scheduled oil change is performed by someone other than your authorized dealer, the message can be reset by referring to the steps described under “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting

To Know Your Instrument Panel” in your Owner’s Manual at [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/) for further information.

### NOTE:

Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 10,000 miles (16,000 km), twelve months or 350 hours of engine run time, whichever comes first. The 350 hours of engine run or idle time is generally only a concern for fleet customers.

### Severe Duty All Models

Change Engine Oil at 4,000 miles (6,500 km) if the vehicle is operated in a dusty and off road environment or is operated predominately at idle or only very low engine RPM’s. This type of vehicle use is considered Severe Duty.

### Once A Month Or Before A Long Trip:

- Check engine oil level.
- Check windshield washer fluid level.
- Check tire pressure and look for unusual wear or damage. Rotate tires at the first sign of irregular wear, even if it occurs before the oil indicator system turns on.

- Check the fluid levels of the coolant reservoir and brake master cylinder, fill as needed.
- Check function of all interior and exterior lights.

## Maintenance Plan

### Required Maintenance Intervals.

Refer to the “Maintenance Plan” in this section for the required maintenance intervals.

At Every Oil Change Interval As Indicated By Oil Change Indicator System:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Change oil and filter</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rotate the tires <b>Rotate at the first sign of irregular wear, even if it occurs before the oil indicator system turns on</b></li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inspect battery and clean and tighten terminals as required</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, hoses and park brake</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inspect engine cooling system protection and hoses</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inspect exhaust system</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inspect engine air cleaner if using in dusty or off-road conditions</li> </ul>



Mileage or time passed (whichever comes first)	20,000	30,000	40,000	50,000	60,000	70,000	80,000	90,000	100,000	110,000	120,000	130,000	140,000	150,000
	Or Years:	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
Or Kilometers:	32,000	48,000	64,000	80,000	96,000	112,000	128,000	144,000	160,000	176,000	192,000	208,000	224,000	240,000
<b>Additional Inspections</b>														
Inspect the CV joints.	X		X		X		X		X		X		X	
Inspect front suspension, boot seals, tie rod ends, and replace if necessary.	X		X		X		X		X		X		X	
Inspect the brake linings, parking brake function.	X		X		X		X		X		X		X	
Inspect front accessory drive belt, tensioner, idler pulley, and replace if necessary.														X
<b>Additional Maintenance</b>														
Replace engine air cleaner filter.		X			X			X			X			X
Replace air conditioning/cabin air filter.	X		X		X		X		X		X		X	
Replace spark plugs.**									X					
Flush and replace the engine coolant at 10 years or 150,000 miles (240,000 km) whichever comes first.									X					X
Inspect and replace PCV valve if necessary.									X					

\*\* The spark plug change interval is mileage based only, yearly intervals do not apply.



**WARNING!**

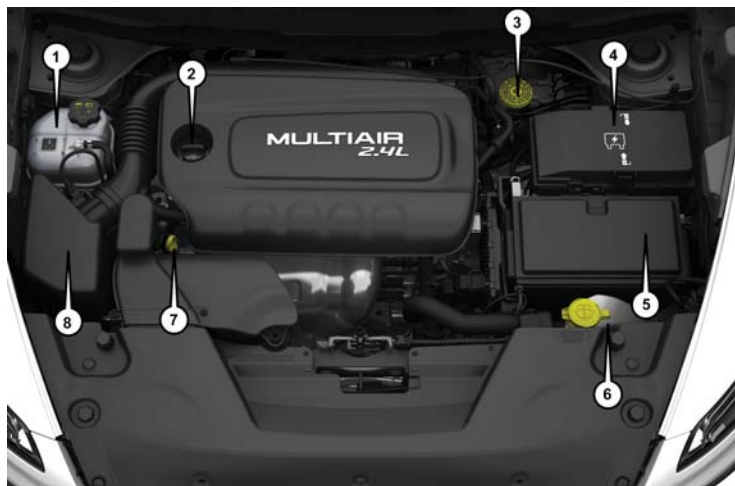
- You can be badly injured working on or around a motor vehicle. Do only service work for which you have the knowledge and the right equipment. If you have any doubt about your ability to perform a service job, take your vehicle to a competent mechanic.
- Failure to properly inspect and maintain your vehicle could result in a component malfunction and effect vehicle handling and performance. This could cause an accident.

**Heavy Duty Use Of The Vehicle**

Change Engine Oil at 4,000 miles (6,500 km) if the vehicle is operated in a dusty and off road environment or is operated predominately at idle or only very low engine RPM's. This type of vehicle use is considered Severe Duty.

# ENGINE COMPARTMENT

## 2.4L Engine



1 — Engine Coolant Reservoir

2 — Oil Fill Cap

3 — Brake Fluid Reservoir

4 — Power Distribution Center (Fuses)

5 — Battery

6 — Washer Fluid Reservoir

7 — Engine Oil Dipstick

8 — Air Cleaner Filter



## 3.2L Engine



- 1 — Engine Coolant Reservoir
- 2 — Oil Filter Access Cover
- 3 — Brake Fluid Reservoir
- 4 — Power Distribution Center (Fuses)
- 5 — Battery

- 6 — Washer Fluid Reservoir
- 7 — Engine Oil Dipstick
- 8 — Engine Oil Fill
- 9 — Air Cleaner Filter

## Checking Oil Level

To assure proper engine lubrication, the engine oil must be maintained at the correct level. Check the oil level at regular intervals, such as every month. The best time to check the engine oil level is about five minutes after a fully warmed up engine is shut off.

Checking the oil while the vehicle is on level ground will improve the accuracy of the oil level readings.

There are three possible dipstick types,

- Crosshatched zone.
- Crosshatched zone marked SAFE.
- Crosshatched zone marked with MIN at the low end of the range and MAX at the high end of the range.

### NOTE:

Always maintain the oil level within the cross-hatch markings on the dipstick.

Adding 1 quart (1.0 liters) of oil when the reading is at the low end of the dipstick range will raise the oil level to the high end of the range marking.

## CAUTION!

Overfilling or underfilling the crankcase will cause aeration or loss of oil pressure. This could damage your engine.

## Adding Washer Fluid

The windshield and rear window washers share the same fluid reservoir. The fluid reservoir is located in the front of the engine compartment. Be sure to check the fluid level in the reservoir at regular intervals. Fill the reservoir with windshield washer solvent (not radiator antifreeze) and operate the system for a few seconds to flush out the residual water.

When refilling the washer fluid reservoir, take some washer fluid and apply it to a cloth or towel and wipe clean the wiper blades, this will help blade performance.

To prevent freeze-up of your windshield washer system in cold weather, select a solution or mixture that meets or exceeds the temperature range of your climate. This rating information can be found on most washer fluid containers.

## WARNING!

Commercially available windshield washer solvents are flammable. They could ignite and burn you. Care must be exercised when filling or working around the washer solution.

## Maintenance-Free Battery

Your vehicle is equipped with a maintenance-free battery. You will never have to add water, nor is periodic maintenance required.

## WARNING!

- Battery fluid is a corrosive acid solution and can burn or even blind you. Do not allow battery fluid to contact your eyes, skin, or clothing. Do not lean over a battery when attaching clamps. If acid splashes in eyes or on skin, flush the area immediately with large amounts of water. Refer to “Jump-Starting Procedure” in “In Case Of Emergency” for further information.



**WARNING!**

- Battery gas is flammable and explosive. Keep flame or sparks away from the battery. Do not use a booster battery or any other booster source with an output greater than 12 Volts. Do not allow cable clamps to touch each other.
- Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.

**CAUTION!**

- It is essential when replacing the cables on the battery that the positive cable is attached to the positive post and the negative cable is attached to the negative post. Battery posts are marked positive (+) and negative (-) and are identified on the battery case. Cable clamps should be tight on the terminal posts and free of corrosion.

**CAUTION!**

- If a “fast charger” is used while the battery is in the vehicle, disconnect both vehicle battery cables before connecting the charger to the battery. Do not use a “fast charger” to provide starting voltage.

**DEALER SERVICE**

Your authorized dealer has the qualified service personnel, special tools, and equipment to perform all service operations in an expert manner. Service Manuals are available which include detailed service information for your vehicle. Refer to these Service Manuals before attempting any procedure yourself.

**NOTE:**

Intentional tampering with emissions control systems may void your warranty and could result in civil penalties being assessed against you.

**WARNING!**

You can be badly injured working on or around a motor vehicle. Only do service work for which you have the knowledge and the proper equipment. If you have any doubt about your ability to perform a service job, take your vehicle to a competent mechanic.

**Engine Oil Filter**

The engine oil filter should be replaced with a new filter at every engine oil change.

**Engine Oil Filter Selection**

This manufacturer's engines have a full-flow type disposable oil filter. Use a filter of this type for replacement. The quality of replacement filters varies considerably. Only high quality filters should be used to assure most efficient service. Mopar engine oil filters are high quality oil filters and are recommended.

## Engine Air Cleaner Filter

Refer to the “Maintenance Plan” in this section for the proper maintenance intervals.

### NOTE:

Be sure to follow the “Severe Duty Conditions” maintenance interval if applicable.

### WARNING!

The air induction system (air cleaner, hoses, etc.) can provide a measure of protection in the case of engine backfire. Do not remove the air induction system (air cleaner, hoses, etc.) unless such removal is necessary for repair or maintenance. Make sure that no one is near the engine compartment before starting the vehicle with the air induction system (air cleaner, hoses, etc.) removed. Failure to do so can result in serious personal injury.

## Engine Air Cleaner Filter Selection

The quality of replacement engine air cleaner filters varies considerably. Only high quality filters should be used to assure most efficient service. Mopar engine air cleaner filters are a high quality filter and are recommended.

## Engine Air Cleaner Filter Inspection and Replacement

Inspect engine air cleaner filter for dirt and or debris, if you find evidence of either dirt or debris you should change your air cleaner filter.

## Engine Air Cleaner Filter Removal

1. Remove the screws from the air cleaner cover.
2. Push in on the quick connect clip with your thumb and remove by pulling hose (if equipped) away from air cleaner filter cover.
3. Lift the air cleaner cover to access the air cleaner filter.
4. Remove the air cleaner filter element from the housing assembly.

## Engine Air Cleaner Filter Installation

### NOTE:

Inspect and clean the housing if dirt or debris is present before replacing the air filter element.

1. Install the air cleaner filter element into the housing assembly with the air cleaner filter inspection surface facing downward.
2. Install the air cleaner cover onto the housing assembly locating tabs.
3. Install screws to secure the air cleaner cover to the housing assembly and install air hose (if equipped).

## Air Conditioner Maintenance

For best possible performance, your air conditioner should be checked and serviced by an authorized dealer at the start of each warm season. This service should include cleaning of the condenser fins and a performance test. Drive belt tension should also be checked at this time.



**WARNING!**

- Use only refrigerants and compressor lubricants approved by the manufacturer for your air conditioning system. Some unapproved refrigerants are flammable and can explode, injuring you. Other unapproved refrigerants or lubricants can cause the system to fail, requiring costly repairs. Refer to Warranty Information Book, located in your owner's information kit, for further warranty information.
- The air conditioning system contains refrigerant under high pressure. To avoid risk of personal injury or damage to the system, adding refrigerant or any repair requiring lines to be disconnected should be done by an experienced technician.

**CAUTION!**

Do not use chemical flushes in your air conditioning system as the chemicals can damage your air conditioning components. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

**Refrigerant Recovery And Recycling R134a  
— If Equipped**

R-134a Air Conditioning Refrigerant is a hydrofluorocarbon (HFC) that is an ozone-friendly substance. The manufacturer recommends that air conditioning service be performed by an authorized dealer or other service facilities using recovery and recycling equipment.

**NOTE:**

Use only manufacturer approved A/C system PAG compressor oil and refrigerants.

**Refrigerant Recovery And Recycling —  
R-1234yf**

R-1234yf Air Conditioning Refrigerant is a hydrofluoroolefin (HFO) that is endorsed by the Environmental Protection Agency and is an ozone-friendly substance with a low global-warming potential. The manufacturer recommends that air conditioning service be performed by authorized dealer using recovery and recycling equipment.

**NOTE:**

Use only manufacturer approved A/C system PAG compressor oil, and refrigerants.

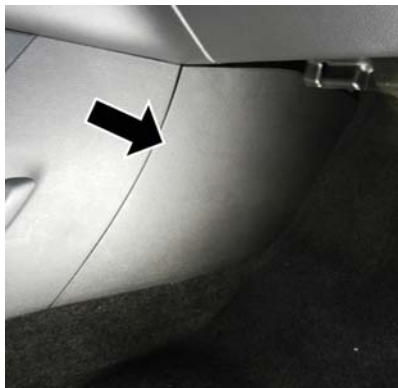
**Air Conditioning Filter Replacement  
(A/C Air Filter)**
**WARNING!**

Do not remove the cabin air filter while the vehicle is running, or while the ignition is in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. With the cabin air filter removed and the blower operating, the blower can contact hands and may propel dirt and debris into your eyes, resulting in personal injury.



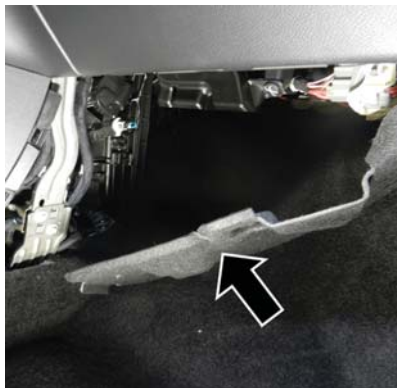
The A/C air filter is located in front of the evaporator on the lower right of center console. Perform the following procedure to replace the filter:

1. Remove the passenger side console closeout cover.
2. Pull the console closeout cover rearward to disengage the front retaining tab and remove the cover.



**Console Closeout Panel**

3. Pull down the passenger hush panel under the dash panel



**Hush Panel**

4. Remove the filter door by pushing down the tab on the top of the door to release the cover then rotate the door out and lift up.



**Air Filter Cover Location**



5. Remove the A/C air filter by pulling it straight out of the housing. Take note of the air filter position indicators.



**A/C Air Filter**

6. Install the A/C air filter with the air filter position indicators pointing in the same direction as removal.

### **CAUTION!**

The cabin air filter is identified with an arrow to indicate airflow direction through the filter. Failure to properly install the filter will result in the need to replace it more often.

7. Install the passenger side hush panel under the dash panel and console closeout.

Refer to the “Maintenance Plan” for the proper maintenance intervals.

### **Windshield Wiper Blades**

Clean the rubber edges of the wiper blades and the windshield periodically with a sponge or soft cloth and a mild nonabrasive cleaner. This will remove accumulations of salt or road film.

Operation of the wipers on dry glass for long periods may cause deterioration of the wiper blades. Always use washer fluid when using the wipers to remove salt or dirt from a dry windshield.

Avoid using the wiper blades to remove frost or ice from the windshield. Keep the blade rubber out of contact with petroleum products such as engine oil, gasoline, etc.

### **NOTE:**

Life expectancy of wiper blades varies depending on geographical area and frequency of use. Poor performance of blades may be present with chattering, marks, water lines or wet spots. If any of these conditions are present, clean the wiper blades or replace as necessary.

The wiper blades and wiper arms should be inspected periodically, not just when wiper performance problems are experienced. This inspection should include the following points:

- Wear or uneven edges
- Foreign material
- Hardening or cracking
- Deformation or fatigue

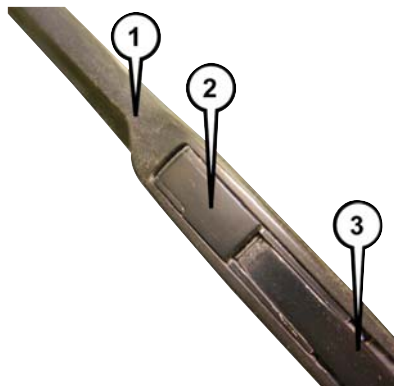
If a wiper blade or wiper arm is damaged, replace the affected wiper arm or blade with a new unit. Do not attempt to repair a wiper arm or blade that is damaged.

## Front Wiper Blade Removal/Installation

### CAUTION!

Do not allow the wiper arm to spring back against the glass without the wiper blade in place or the glass may be damaged.

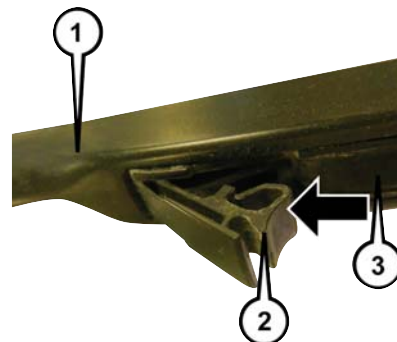
1. Lift the wiper arm to raise the wiper blade off of the glass, until the wiper arm is in the full up position.



**Wiper Blade With Release Tab In Locked Position**

- 1 — Wiper
- 2 — Release Tab
- 3 — Wiper Arm

2. To disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm, flip up the release tab on the wiper blade and while holding the wiper arm with one hand, slide the wiper blade down towards the base of the wiper arm.

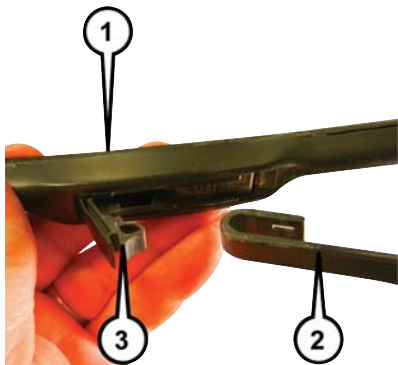


**Wiper Blade With Release Tab In Unlocked Position**

- 1 — Wiper Blade
- 2 — Release Tab
- 3 — Wiper Arm



- With the wiper blade disengaged, remove the wiper blade from the wiper arm by holding the wiper arm with one hand and separating the wiper blade from the wiper arm with the other hand (move the wiper blade toward the right side of the vehicle to separate the wiper blade from the wiper arm).



**Wiper Blade Removed From Wiper Arm**

- 1 — Wiper Blade
- 2 — Wiper Arm
- 3 — Release Tab

- Gently lower the wiper arm onto the glass.

### Installing The Front Wipers

- Lift the wiper arm off of the glass, until the wiper arm is in the full up position.
- Position the wiper blade near the hook on the tip of the wiper arm with the wiper release tab open and the blade side of the wiper facing up and away from the windshield.
- Insert the hook on the tip of the arm through the opening in the wiper blade under the release tab.
- Slide the wiper blade up into the hook on the wiper arm and rotate the wiper blade until it is flush against the wiper arm. Fold down the latch release tab and snap it into its locked position. Latch engagement will be accompanied by an audible click.
- Gently lower the wiper blade onto the glass.

### Rear Wiper Blade Removal/Installation

- Lift the rear wiper arm pivot cap away from the glass to allow the rear wiper blade to be raised off of the glass.

### NOTE:

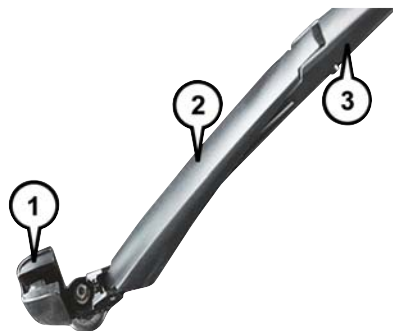
The rear wiper arm cannot be fully raised off the glass unless the wiper arm pivot cap is unsnapped first. Attempting to fully raise the rear wiper arm without unsnapping the wiper arm pivot cap may damage the vehicle.



**Wiper Arm**

- 1 — Wiper Arm Pivot Cap
- 2 — Wiper Arm
- 3 — Wiper Blade

2. Lift the rear wiper arm fully off the glass.



**Wiper Blade In Folded Out Position**

- 1 — Wiper Arm Pivot Cap
- 2 — Wiper Arm
- 3 — Wiper Blade

3. To remove the wiper blade from the wiper arm, grasp the bottom end of the wiper blade nearest to wiper arm with your right hand. With your left hand hold the wiper arm as you pull the wiper blade away from the wiper arm past its stop far enough to unsnap the wiper blade pivot pin from the receptacle on the end of the wiper arm.

**NOTE:**

Resistance will be accompanied by an audible snap.

4. Still grasping the bottom end of the wiper blade, move the wiper blade upward and away from the wiper arm to disengage.



**Wiper Blade Removed From Wiper Arm**

- 1 — Wiper Arm
- 2 — Wiper Blade

5. Gently lower the tip of the wiper arm onto the glass.



### Installing The Rear Wiper

1. Lift the rear wiper arm pivot cap away from the glass to allow the rear wiper blade to be raised off of the glass.

#### NOTE:

The rear wiper arm cannot be fully raised off the glass unless the wiper arm pivot cap is unsnapped first. Attempting to fully raise the rear wiper arm without unsnapping the wiper arm pivot cap may damage the vehicle.

2. Lift the rear wiper arm fully off the glass.
3. Insert the wiper blade pivot pin into the opening on the end of the wiper arm. Grab the bottom end of the wiper arm with one hand, and apply pressure on the wiper blade flush with the wiper arm until it snaps into place.
4. Lower the wiper blade onto the glass and snap the wiper arm pivot cap back into place.

### Cooling System

#### WARNING!

- Turn vehicle off and disconnect the fan motor lead before working near the radiator cooling fan.
- You or others can be badly burned by hot engine coolant (antifreeze) or steam from your radiator. If you see or hear steam coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the radiator has had time to cool. Never open a cooling system pressure cap when the radiator or coolant bottle is hot.
- Keep hands, tools, clothing, and jewelry away from the radiator cooling fan when the hood is raised. The fan starts automatically and may start at any time, whether the engine is running or not.
- When working near the radiator cooling fan, disconnect the fan motor lead or turn the ignition to the OFF mode. The fan is temperature controlled and can start at any time the ignition is in the ON mode.

#### WARNING!

- You or others can be badly burned by hot engine coolant (antifreeze) or steam from your radiator. If you see or hear steam coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the radiator has had time to cool. Never try to open a cooling system pressure cap when the radiator is hot.

### Engine Coolant Checks

Check the engine coolant (antifreeze) protection every 12 months (before the onset of freezing weather, where applicable). If the engine coolant (antifreeze) is dirty, the system should be drained, flushed, and refilled with fresh OAT coolant (conforming to MS.90032) by an authorized dealer. Check the front of the A/C condenser for any accumulation of bugs, leaves, etc. If dirty, clean by gently spraying water from a garden hose vertically down the face of the condenser.

Check the engine cooling system hoses for brittle rubber, cracking, tears, cuts, and tightness of the connection at the coolant recovery bottle and radiator. Inspect the entire system for leaks. **DO NOT REMOVE THE COOLANT PRESSURE CAP WHEN THE COOLING SYSTEM IS HOT.**

### Automatic Transmission

#### Fluid Level Check

The fluid level is preset at the factory and does not require adjustment under normal operating conditions. Routine fluid level checks are not required; therefore the transmission has no dipstick. Your authorized dealer can check your transmission fluid level using special service tools. If you notice fluid leakage or transmission malfunction, visit your authorized dealer immediately to have the transmission fluid level checked. Operating the vehicle with an improper fluid level can cause severe transmission damage.

### CAUTION!

If a transmission fluid leak occurs, visit your authorized dealer immediately. Severe transmission damage may occur. Your authorized dealer has the proper tools to adjust the fluid level accurately.

## RAISING THE VEHICLE

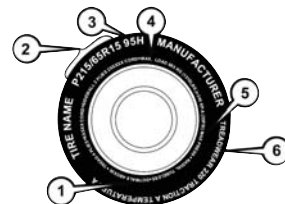
In the case where it is necessary to raise the vehicle, go to your authorized dealer or service station.

## TIRES

### Tire Safety Information

Tire safety information will cover aspects of the following information: Tire Markings, Tire Identification Numbers, Tire Terminology and Definitions, Tire Pressures, and Tire Loading.

## Tire Markings



### Tire Markings

- 1 — U.S. DOT Safety Standards Code (TIN)
- 2 — Size Designation
- 3 — Service Description
- 4 — Maximum Load
- 5 — Maximum Pressure
- 6 — Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades



**NOTE:**

- P (Passenger) — Metric tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards. P-Metric tires have the letter “P” molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: P215/65R15 95H.
- European — Metric tire sizing is based on European design standards. Tires designed to this standard have the tire size molded into the sidewall beginning with the section width. The letter “P” is absent from this tire size designation. Example: 215/65R15 96H.
- LT (Light Truck) — Metric tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards. The size designation for LT-Metric tires is the same as for P-Metric tires except for the letters “LT” that are molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: LT235/85R16.
- Temporary spare tires are designed for temporary emergency use only. Temporary high pressure compact spare tires have the letter “T” or “S” molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: T145/80D18 103M.
- High flotation tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards and it begins with the tire diameter molded into the sidewall. Example: 31x10.5 R15 LT.



## Tire Sizing Chart

### EXAMPLE:

**Example Size Designation: P215/65R15XL 95H, 215/65R15 96H, LT235/85R16C, T145/80D18 103M, 31x10.5 R15 LT**

**P** = Passenger car tire size based on U.S. design standards, or

"...**blank**..." = Passenger car tire based on European design standards, or

**LT** = Light truck tire based on U.S. design standards, or

**T or S** = Temporary spare tire or

**31** = Overall diameter in inches (in)

**215, 235, 145** = Section width in millimeters (mm)

**65, 85, 80** = Aspect ratio in percent (%)

- Ratio of section height to section width of tire, or

**10.5** = Section width in inches (in)

**R** = Construction code

- "R" means radial construction, or
- "D" means diagonal or bias construction

**15, 16, 18** = Rim diameter in inches (in)



**EXAMPLE:****Service Description:**

**95** = Load Index

- A numerical code associated with the maximum load a tire can carry

**H** = Speed Symbol

- A symbol indicating the range of speeds at which a tire can carry a load corresponding to its load index under certain operating conditions
- The maximum speed corresponding to the speed symbol should only be achieved under specified operating conditions (i.e., tire pressure, vehicle loading, road conditions, and posted speed limits)

**Load Identification:**

Absence of the following load identification symbols on the sidewall of the tire indicates a Standard Load (SL) tire:

- **XL** = Extra load (or reinforced) tire, or
- **LL** = Light load tire or
- **C, D, E, F, G** = Load range associated with the maximum load a tire can carry at a specified pressure

**Maximum Load** – Maximum load indicates the maximum load this tire is designed to carry

**Maximum Pressure** – Maximum pressure indicates the maximum permissible cold tire inflation pressure for this tire

## Tire Identification Number (TIN)

The TIN may be found on one or both sides of the tire; however, the date code may only be on one side. Tires with white sidewalls will have the full TIN, including the date code, located on the white sidewall side of the tire.

Look for the TIN on the outboard side of black sidewall tires as mounted on the vehicle. If the TIN is not found on the outboard side, then you will find it on the inboard side of the tire.

<b>EXAMPLE:</b>	
DOT MA L9 ABCD 0301	
<b>DOT</b> = Department of Transportation	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>This symbol certifies that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation tire safety standards and is approved for highway use</li></ul>	
<b>MA</b> = Code representing the tire manufacturing location (two digits)	
<b>L9</b> = Code representing the tire size (two digits)	
<b>ABCD</b> = Code used by the tire manufacturer (one to four digits)	
<b>03</b> = Number representing the week in which the tire was manufactured (two digits)	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>03 means the 3rd week</li></ul>	
<b>01</b> = Number representing the year in which the tire was manufactured (two digits)	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>01 means the year 2001</li><li>Prior to July 2000, tire manufacturers were only required to have one number to represent the year in which the tire was manufactured. Example: 031 could represent the 3rd week of 1981 or 1991</li></ul>	



**Tire Terminology And Definitions**

<b>Term</b>	<b>Definition</b>
<b>B-Pillar</b>	The vehicle B-Pillar is the structural member of the body located behind the front door.
<b>Cold Tire Inflation Pressure</b>	Cold tire inflation pressure is defined as the tire pressure after the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km) after sitting for a minimum of three hours. Inflation pressure is measured in units of PSI (pounds per square inch) or kPa (kilopascals).
<b>Maximum Inflation Pressure</b>	The maximum inflation pressure is the maximum permissible cold tire inflation pressure for this tire. The maximum inflation pressure is molded into the sidewall.
<b>Recommended Cold Tire Inflation Pressure</b>	Vehicle manufacturer's recommended cold tire inflation pressure as shown on the tire placard.
<b>Tire Placard</b>	A label permanently attached to the vehicle describing the vehicle's loading capacity, the original equipment tire sizes and the recommended cold tire inflation pressures.

## Tire Loading And Tire Pressure

### NOTE:

The proper cold tire inflation pressure is listed on the driver's side B-Pillar or the rear edge of the driver's side door.



Example Tire Placard Location (Door)



Example Tire Placard Location (B-Pillar)

### Tire And Loading Information Placard

TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION			
SEATING CAPACITY - TOTAL 5 FRONT 2 REAR 3			
THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX KG OR XXX LBS.			
TIRE	FRONT	REAR	SPARE
ORIGINAL TIRE SIZE	P195/70R14	P195/70R14	T125/70D15
COLD TIRE INFLATION PRESSURE	200kPa, 29PSI	200kPa, 29PSI	420kPa, 60PSI
SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION			4N109265

811b5a9a

Tire And Loading Information Placard

This placard tells you important information about the:

1. Number of people that can be carried in the vehicle.
2. Total weight your vehicle can carry.
3. Tire size designed for your vehicle.
4. Cold tire inflation pressures for the front, rear, and spare tires.

### Loading

The vehicle maximum load on the tire must not exceed the load carrying capacity of the tire on your vehicle. You will not exceed the tire's load carrying capacity if you adhere to the loading conditions, tire size, and cold tire inflation pressures specified on the Tire and Loading Information placard in "Vehicle Loading" in the "Starting And Operating" section of this manual.

### NOTE:

Under a maximum loaded vehicle condition, gross axle weight ratings (GAWRs) for the front and rear axles must not be exceeded.



To determine the maximum loading conditions of your vehicle, locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs” on the Tire and Loading Information placard. The combined weight of occupants, cargo/luggage and trailer tongue weight (if applicable) should never exceed the weight referenced here.

### Steps For Determining Correct Load Limit—

- (1) Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs.” on your vehicle's placard.
- (2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
- (3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

(4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5x150) = 650 lbs.)

(5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

(6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

### Metric Example For Load Limit

For example, if “XXX” amount equals 635 kg and there will be five 68 kg passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 295 kg (635-340 (5x68) = 295 kg) as shown in step 4.

### NOTE:

- If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. The following table shows examples on how to calculate total load, cargo/luggage, and towing capacities of your vehicle with varying seating configurations and number and size of occupants. This table is for illustration purposes only and may not be accurate for the seating and load carry capacity of your vehicle.

- For the following example, the combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 865 lbs (392 kg).

Occupants			Combined weight of occupants and cargo from Tire Placard	MINUS	Combined Occupant's weight	=	AVAILABLE Cargo/Luggage and Trailer Tongue Weight
TOTAL	FRONT	REAR					
<b>EXAMPLE 1</b>			865 lbs	minus	670 lbs	=	195 lbs
5	2	3					
<b>EXAMPLE 2</b>			865 lbs	minus	540 lbs	=	325 lbs
3	2	1					
<b>EXAMPLE 3</b>			865 lbs	minus	400 lbs	=	465 lbs
2	2	0					

EXAMPLE

Occupant 1: 200 lbs  
 Occupant 2: 130 lbs  
 Occupant 3: 160 lbs  
 Occupant 4: 100 lbs  
 Occupant 5: 80 lbs  
 TOTAL WEIGHT: 670 lbs

Occupant 1: 210 lbs  
 Occupant 2: 180 lbs  
 Occupant 3: 150 lbs  
 TOTAL WEIGHT: 540 lbs

Occupant 1: 200 lbs  
 Occupant 2: 200 lbs  
 TOTAL WEIGHT: 400 lbs

811a4d11



**WARNING!**

Overloading of your tires is dangerous. Overloading can cause tire failure, affect vehicle handling, and increase your stopping distance. Use tires of the recommended load capacity for your vehicle. Never overload them.

**Tires – General Information****Tire Pressure**

Proper tire inflation pressure is essential to the safe and satisfactory operation of your vehicle. Four primary areas are affected by improper tire pressure:

- Safety and Vehicle Stability
- Economy
- Tread Wear
- Ride Comfort

**Safety****WARNING!**

- Improperly inflated tires are dangerous and can cause collisions.
- Underinflation increases tire flexing and can result in overheating and tire failure.
- Overinflation reduces a tire's ability to cushion shock. Objects on the road and chuckholes can cause damage that result in tire failure.
- Overinflated or underinflated tires can affect vehicle handling and can fail suddenly, resulting in loss of vehicle control.
- Unequal tire pressures can cause steering problems. You could lose control of your vehicle.
- Unequal tire pressures from one side of the vehicle to the other can cause the vehicle to drift to the right or left.
- Always drive with each tire inflated to the recommended cold tire inflation pressure.

Both under-inflation and over-inflation affect the stability of the vehicle and can produce a feeling of sluggish response or over responsiveness in the steering.

**NOTE:**

- Unequal tire pressures from side to side may cause erratic and unpredictable steering response.
- Unequal tire pressure from side to side may cause the vehicle to drift left or right.

**Fuel Economy**

Underinflated tires will increase tire rolling resistance resulting in higher fuel consumption.

**Tread Wear**

Improper cold tire inflation pressures can cause abnormal wear patterns and reduced tread life, resulting in the need for earlier tire replacement.

**Ride Comfort And Vehicle Stability**

Proper tire inflation contributes to a comfortable ride. Over-inflation produces a jarring and uncomfortable ride.



## Tire Inflation Pressures

The proper cold tire inflation pressure is listed on the driver's side B-Pillar or rear edge of the driver's side door.

At least once a month:

- Check and adjust tire pressure with a good quality pocket-type pressure gauge. Do not make a visual judgement when determining proper inflation. Tires may look properly inflated even when they are under-inflated.
- Inspect tires for signs of tire wear or visible damage.

### CAUTION!

After inspecting or adjusting the tire pressure, always reinstall the valve stem cap. This will prevent moisture and dirt from entering the valve stem, which could damage the valve stem.

Inflation pressures specified on the placard are always "cold tire inflation pressure". Cold tire inflation pressure is defined as the tire

pressure after the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km) after sitting for a minimum of three hours. The cold tire inflation pressure must not exceed the maximum inflation pressure molded into the tire sidewall.

Check tire pressures more often if subject to a wide range of outdoor temperatures, as tire pressures vary with temperature changes.

Tire pressures change by approximately 1 psi (7 kPa) per 12°F (7°C) of air temperature change. Keep this in mind when checking tire pressure inside a garage, especially in the Winter.

Example: If garage temperature = 68°F (20°C) and the outside temperature = 32°F (0°C) then the cold tire inflation pressure should be increased by 3 psi (21 kPa), which equals 1 psi (7 kPa) for every 12°F (7°C) for this outside temperature condition.

Tire pressure may increase from 2 to 6 psi (13 to 40 kPa) during operation. DO NOT reduce this normal pressure build up or your tire pressure will be too low.

## Tire Pressures For High Speed Operation

The manufacturer advocates driving at safe speeds and within posted speed limits. Where speed limits or conditions are such that the vehicle can be driven at high speeds, maintaining correct tire inflation pressure is very important. Increased tire pressure and reduced vehicle loading may be required for high-speed vehicle operation. Refer to your authorized tire dealer or original equipment vehicle dealer for recommended safe operating speeds, loading and cold tire inflation pressures.

### WARNING!

High speed driving with your vehicle under maximum load is dangerous. The added strain on your tires could cause them to fail. You could have a serious collision. Do not drive a vehicle loaded to the maximum capacity at continuous speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).



## Radial Ply Tires

### WARNING!

Combining radial ply tires with other types of tires on your vehicle will cause your vehicle to handle poorly. The instability could cause a collision. Always use radial ply tires in sets of four. Never combine them with other types of tires.

### Tire Repair

If your tire becomes damaged, it may be repaired if it meets the following criteria:

- The tire has not been driven on when flat.
- The damage is only on the tread section of your tire (sidewall damage is not repairable).
- The puncture is no greater than a  $\frac{1}{4}$  of an inch (6 mm).

Consult an authorized tire dealer for tire repairs and additional information.

Damaged Run Flat tires, or Run Flat tires that have experienced a loss of pressure should be replaced immediately with another Run Flat tire of identical size and service description (Load Index and Speed Symbol).

### Run Flat Tires — If Equipped

Run Flat tires allow you the capability to drive 50 miles (80 km) at 50 mph (80 km/h) after a rapid loss of inflation pressure. This rapid loss of inflation is referred to as the Run Flat mode. A Run Flat mode occurs when the tire inflation pressure is of/or below 14 psi (96 kPa). Once a Run Flat tire reaches the run flat mode it has limited driving capabilities and needs to be replaced immediately. A Run Flat tire is not repairable.

It is not recommended driving a vehicle loaded at full capacity or to tow a trailer while a tire is in the run flat mode.

See the tire pressure monitoring section for more information.

## Tire Spinning

When stuck in mud, sand, snow, or ice conditions, do not spin your vehicle's wheels above 30 mph (48 km/h) or for longer than 30 seconds continuously without stopping.

Refer to “Freeing A Stuck Vehicle” in “In Case Of Emergency” for further information.

### WARNING!

Fast spinning tires can be dangerous. Forces generated by excessive wheel speeds may cause tire damage or failure. A tire could explode and injure someone. Do not spin your vehicle's wheels faster than 30 mph (48 km/h) for more than 30 seconds continuously when you are stuck, and do not let anyone near a spinning wheel, no matter what the speed.

## Tread Wear Indicators

Tread wear indicators are in the original equipment tires to help you in determining when your tires should be replaced.



**Tire Tread**

- 1 — Worn Tire  
2 — New Tire

These indicators are molded into the bottom of the tread grooves. They will appear as bands when the tread depth becomes a 1/16 of an inch (1.6 mm). When the tread is worn to the tread wear indicators, the tire should be replaced. Refer to “Replacement Tires” in this section for further information.

## Life Of Tire

The service life of a tire is dependent upon varying factors including, but not limited to:

- Driving style.
- Tire pressure - Improper cold tire inflation pressures can cause uneven wear patterns to develop across the tire tread. These abnormal wear patterns will reduce tread life, resulting in the need for earlier tire replacement.
- Distance driven.
- Performance tires, tires with a speed rating of V or higher, and Summer tires typically have a reduced tread life. Rotation of these tires per the vehicle scheduled maintenance is highly recommended.

### **WARNING!**

Tires and the spare tire should be replaced after six years, regardless of the remaining tread. Failure to follow this warning can result in sudden tire failure. You could lose control and have a collision resulting in serious injury or death.

Keep dismantled tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible. Protect tires from contact with oil, grease, and gasoline.

## Replacement Tires

The tires on your new vehicle provide a balance of many characteristics. They should be inspected regularly for wear and correct cold tire inflation pressures. The manufacturer strongly recommends that you use tires equivalent to the originals in size, quality and performance when replacement is needed. Refer to the paragraph on “Tread Wear Indicators” in this section. Refer to the Tire and Loading Information placard or the Vehicle Certification Label for the size designation of your tire. The Load Index and Speed Symbol for your tire will be found on the original equipment tire sidewall.

See the Tire Sizing Chart example found in the “Tire Safety Information” section of this manual for more information relating to the Load Index and Speed Symbol of a tire.



It is recommended to replace the two front tires or two rear tires as a pair. Replacing just one tire can seriously affect your vehicle's handling. If you ever replace a wheel, make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

It is recommended you contact your authorized tire dealer or original equipment dealer with any questions you may have on tire specifications or capability. Failure to use equivalent replacement tires may adversely affect the safety, handling, and ride of your vehicle.

### WARNING!

- Do not use a tire, wheel size, load rating, or speed rating other than that specified for your vehicle. Some combinations of unapproved tires and wheels may change suspension dimensions and performance characteristics, resulting in changes to steering, handling, and braking of your vehicle. This can cause unpredictable handling and stress to steering and suspension components. You could lose control and have a collision resulting in serious injury or death. Use only the tire and wheel sizes with load ratings approved for your vehicle.
- Never use a tire with a smaller load index or capacity, other than what was originally equipped on your vehicle. Using a tire with a smaller load index could result in tire overloading and failure. You could lose control and have a collision.
- Failure to equip your vehicle with tires having adequate speed capability can result in sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control.

### CAUTION!

Replacing original tires with tires of a different size may result in false speedometer and odometer readings.

### Tire Types

#### All Season Tires — If Equipped

All Season tires provide traction for all seasons (Spring, Summer, Fall, and Winter). Traction levels may vary between different all season tires. All season tires can be identified by the M+S, M&S, M/S or MS designation on the tire sidewall. Use all season tires only in sets of four; failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle.

## Summer Or Three Season Tires — If Equipped

Summer tires provide traction in both wet and dry conditions, and are not intended to be driven in snow or on ice. If your vehicle is equipped with Summer tires, be aware these tires are not designed for Winter or cold driving conditions. Install Winter tires on your vehicle when ambient temperatures are less than 40°F (5°C) or if roads are covered with ice or snow. For more information, contact an authorized dealer.

Summer tires do not contain the all season designation or mountain/snowflake symbol on the tire sidewall. Use Summer tires only in sets of four; failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle.

### WARNING!

Do not use Summer tires in snow/ice conditions. You could lose vehicle control, resulting in severe injury or death. Driving too fast for conditions also creates the possibility of loss of vehicle control.

## Snow Tires

Some areas of the country require the use of snow tires during the Winter. Snow tires can be identified by a “mountain/snowflake” symbol on the tire sidewall.



If you need snow tires, select tires equivalent in size and type to the original equipment tires. Use snow tires only in sets of four; failure to do so may adversely affect the safety

and handling of your vehicle.

Snow tires generally have lower speed ratings than what was originally equipped with your vehicle and should not be operated at sustained speeds over 75 mph (120 km/h). For speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h) refer to original equipment or an authorized tire dealer for recommended safe operating speeds, loading and cold tire inflation pressures.

While studded tires improve performance on ice, skid and traction capability on wet or dry surfaces may be poorer than that of non-studded tires. Some states prohibit studded tires; therefore, local laws should be checked before using these tire types.

## Spare Tires — If Equipped

### NOTE:

For vehicles equipped with Tire Service Kit instead of a spare tire, please refer to “Tire Service Kit” in “In Case Of Emergency” in your Owner’s Manual on [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals) for further information.

### CAUTION!

Because of the reduced ground clearance, do not take your vehicle through an automatic car wash with a compact or limited use temporary spare installed. Damage to the vehicle may result.



### **Spare Tire Matching Original Equipped Tire And Wheel — If Equipped**

Your vehicle may be equipped with a spare tire and wheel equivalent in look and function to the original equipment tire and wheel found on the front or rear axle of your vehicle. This spare tire may be used in the tire rotation for your vehicle. If your vehicle has this option, refer to an authorized tire dealer for the recommended tire rotation pattern.

### **Compact Spare Tire — If Equipped**

The compact spare is for temporary emergency use only. You can identify if your vehicle is equipped with a compact spare by looking at the spare tire description on the Tire and Loading Information Placard located on the driver's side door opening or on the sidewall of the tire. Compact spare tire descriptions begin with the letter "T" or "S" preceding the size designation. Example: T145/80D18 103M.

T, S = Temporary Spare Tire

Since this tire has limited tread life, the original equipment tire should be repaired (or replaced) and reinstalled on your vehicle at the first opportunity.

Do not install a wheel cover or attempt to mount a conventional tire on the compact spare wheel, since the wheel is designed specifically for the compact spare tire. Do not install more than one compact spare tire and wheel on the vehicle at any given time.

### **WARNING!**

Compact and collapsible spares are for temporary emergency use only. With these spares, do not drive more than 50 mph (80 km/h). Temporary use spares have limited tread life. When the tread is worn to the tread wear indicators, the temporary use spare tire needs to be replaced. Be sure to follow the warnings, which apply to your spare. Failure to do so could result in spare tire failure and loss of vehicle control.

### **Full Size Spare — If Equipped**

The full size spare is for temporary emergency use only. This tire may look like the originally equipped tire on the front or rear axle of your vehicle, but it is not. This spare tire may have limited tread life. When the tread is worn to the tread wear indicators, the temporary use full size spare tire needs to be replaced. Since it is not the same as your original equipment tire, replace (or repair) the original equipment tire and reinstall on the vehicle at the first opportunity.

### **Limited Use Spare — If Equipped**

The limited use spare tire is for temporary emergency use only. This tire is identified by a label located on the limited use spare wheel. This label contains the driving limitations for this spare. This tire may look like the original equipped tire on the front or rear axle of your vehicle, but it is not. Installation of this limited use spare tire affects vehicle handling. Since it is not the same as your original equipment tire, replace (or repair) the original equipment tire and reinstall on the vehicle at the first opportunity.

## WARNING!

Limited use spares are for emergency use only. Installation of this limited use spare tire affects vehicle handling. With this tire, do not drive more than the speed listed on the limited use spare wheel. Keep inflated to the cold tire inflation pressures listed on your Tire and Loading Information Placard located on the driver's side B-Pillar or the rear edge of the driver's side door. Replace (or repair) the original equipment tire at the first opportunity and reinstall it on your vehicle. Failure to do so could result in loss of vehicle control.

## Wheel And Wheel Trim Care

All wheels and wheel trim, especially aluminum and chrome plated wheels, should be cleaned regularly using mild (neutral Ph) soap and water to maintain their luster and to prevent corrosion. Wash wheels with the same soap solution recommended for the body of the vehicle.

Your wheels are susceptible to deterioration caused by salt, sodium chloride, magnesium chloride, calcium chloride, etc., and other road chemicals used to melt ice or control dust on dirt roads. Use a soft cloth or sponge and mild soap to wipe away promptly. Do not use harsh chemicals or a stiff brush. They can damage the wheel's protective coating that helps keep them from corroding and tarnishing.

## CAUTION!

Avoid products or automatic car washes that use acidic solutions or strong alkaline additives or harsh brushes. Many aftermarket wheel cleaners and automatic car washes may damage the wheel's protective finish. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Only car wash soap, Mopar Wheel Cleaner or equivalent is recommended.

When cleaning extremely dirty wheels including excessive brake dust, care must be taken in the selection of tire and wheel cleaning chemicals and equipment to prevent damage to the wheels. Mopar Wheel Treatment or

Mopar Chrome Cleaner or their equivalent is recommended or select a non-abrasive, non-acidic cleaner for aluminum or chrome wheels.

## CAUTION!

Do not use scouring pads, steel wool, a bristle brush, metal polishes or oven cleaner. These products may damage the wheel's protective finish. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Only car wash soap, Mopar Wheel Cleaner or equivalent is recommended.

## NOTE:

If you intend parking or storing your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle and apply the brakes to remove the water droplets from the brake components. This activity will remove the red rust on the brake rotors and prevent vehicle vibration when braking.



**Dark Vapor Chrome, Black Satin Chrome,  
or Low Gloss Clear Coat Wheels****CAUTION!**

If your vehicle is equipped with these specialty wheels, DO NOT USE wheel cleaners, abrasives, or polishing compounds. They will permanently damage this finish and such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. HAND WASH ONLY USING MILD SOAP AND WATER WITH A SOFT CLOTH. Used on a regular basis; this is all that is required to maintain this finish.

**Tire Chains (Traction Devices)**

Use of traction devices require sufficient tire-to-body clearance. Follow these recommendations to guard against damage.

- Traction device must be of proper size for the tire, as recommended by the traction device manufacturer
- Use on Front Tires Only

- Due to limited clearance, the following traction devices are recommended:

**Front Wheel Drive (FWD) Models**

- Original equipment 225/60R17 and 225/55R18 tire sizes are not chainable.
- The use of 7 mm snow chains is permitted with the use of 215/60R17 tires on size 17 x 7.0 ET41 wheels.

**Four Wheel Drive (4WD) Non-Trailhawk Models  
without a Two-Speed Power Takeoff Unit**

- Original equipment 225/65R17 and 225/60R18 tire sizes are not chainable.
- The use of 9 mm snow chains is permitted with the use of 215/60R17 tires on size 17 x 7.0 ET41 wheels.

**Four Wheel Drive (4WD) Non-Trailhawk Models  
with a Two-Speed Power Takeoff Unit**

- The use of 7 mm snow chains is permitted with 225/65R17 and 225/60R18 tires.

**Four Wheel Drive (4WD) Trailhawk Models**

- The use of 9 mm snow chains is permitted with the use of 225/65R17 tires on size 17 x 7.5 ET31 wheels.

**WARNING!**

Using tires of different size and type (M+S, Snow) between front and rear axles can cause unpredictable handling. You could lose control and have a collision.

**CAUTION!**

- Use on Front Tires Only
- Damage to Front Wheel Drive (FWD) Models may result if tire chains or traction devices are used with original equipment size tires.
- Damage to Four Wheel Drive (4WD) Models without a Two-Speed Power Takeoff Unit may result if tire chains or traction devices are used with original equipment size tires.
- Damage to Four Wheel Drive (4WD) Trailhawk Models may result if tire chains or traction devices are used with original equipment size tires.



## CAUTION!

To avoid damage to your vehicle or tires, observe the following precautions:

- Because of restricted traction device clearance between tires and other suspension components, it is important that only traction devices in good condition are used. Broken devices can cause serious damage. Stop the vehicle immediately if noise occurs that could indicate device breakage. Remove the damaged parts of the device before further use.
- Install device as tightly as possible and then retighten after driving about ½ mile (0.8 km).
- Do not exceed 30 mph (48 km/h).
- Drive cautiously and avoid severe turns and large bumps, especially with a loaded vehicle.
- Do not drive for a prolonged period on dry pavement.

## CAUTION!

- Observe the traction device manufacturer's instructions on the method of installation, operating speed, and conditions for use. Always use the suggested operating speed of the device manufacturer's if it is less than 30 mph (48 km/h).
- Do not use traction devices on a compact spare tire.

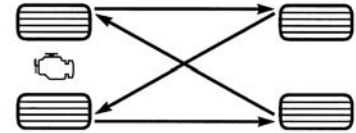
### Tire Rotation Recommendations

The tires on the front and rear of your vehicle operate at different loads and perform different steering, handling, and braking functions. For these reasons, they wear at unequal rates.

These effects can be reduced by timely rotation of tires. The benefits of rotation are especially worthwhile with aggressive tread designs such as those on On/Off Road type tires. Rotation will increase tread life, help to maintain mud, snow, and wet traction levels, and contribute to a smooth, quiet ride.

Refer to the “Maintenance Plan” for the proper maintenance intervals. The reasons for any rapid or unusual wear should be corrected prior to rotation being performed.

The suggested Front Wheel Drive (FWD) rotation method is the “forward cross” shown in the following diagram. This rotation pattern does not apply to some directional tires that must not be reversed.

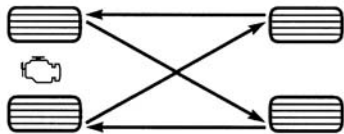


055707139

Front Wheel Drive (FWD) Tire Rotation



The suggested Four Wheel Drive (4WD) Tire rotation method is the “rearward cross” shown in the following diagram.



055703771

**Four Wheel Drive (4WD) Tire Rotation**

### CAUTION!

Proper operation of four-wheel drive vehicles depends on tires of equal size, type and circumference on each wheel. Any difference in tire size can cause damage to the power transfer unit. Tire rotation schedule should be followed to balance tire wear.

## DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADES

The following tire grading categories were established by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. The specific grade rating assigned by the tire's manufacturer in each category is shown on the sidewall of the tires on your vehicle.

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal safety requirements in addition to these grades.

### Treadwear

The Treadwear grade is a comparative rating, based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

## Traction Grades

The Traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. These grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement, as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

### WARNING!

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

## Temperature Grades

The Temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat, when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance, which all passenger vehicle tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel, than the minimum required by law.

### WARNING!

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under-inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

## STORING THE VEHICLE

If the vehicle should remain stationary for more than a month, observe the following precautions:

- Park your vehicle in a covered, dry and possibly airy location the windows open slightly.
- Check that the Electric Park Brake is not engaged.
- Disconnect the negative (-) terminal from the battery post and be sure that the battery is fully charged. During storage check battery charge quarterly.



- If you do not disconnect the battery from the electrical system, check the battery charge every 30 days.
- Clean and protect the painted parts by applying protective waxes.
- Clean and protect polished metal parts by applying protective waxes.
- Apply talcum powder to the front and rear wiper blades and leave raised from the glass.
- Cover the vehicle with an appropriate cover taking care not to damage the painted surface by dragging across dirty surfaces. Do not use plastic sheeting which will not allow the evaporation of moisture present on the surface of the vehicle.
- Inflate the tires at a pressure of +7.25 psi (+0.5 bar) higher than recommended on the tire placard and check it periodically.
- Do not drain the engine cooling system.

- Whenever you leave the vehicle stationary for two weeks or more, run idle the engine for approximately five minutes, with the air conditioning system on and high fan speed. This will ensure a proper lubrication of the system, thus minimizing the possibility of damage to the compressor when the vehicle is put back into operation.

**NOTE:**

When the vehicle has not been started or driven for at least 30 days, an Extended Park Start Procedure is required to start the vehicle. Refer to “Starting The Engine” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

**CAUTION!**

Before removal of the positive and negative terminals to the battery, wait at least a minute with ignition switch in the OFF position and close the driver's door. When reconnecting the positive and negative terminals to the battery be sure the ignition switch is in the OFF position and the driver's door is closed.

**BODYWORK****Preserving The Bodywork****Washing**

- Wash your vehicle regularly. Always wash your vehicle in the shade using Mopar Car Wash, or a mild car wash soap, and rinse the panels completely with clear water.
- If insects, tar, or other similar deposits have accumulated on your vehicle, use Mopar Super Kleen Bug and Tar Remover to remove.
- Use a high quality cleaner wax, such as Mopar Cleaner Wax to remove road film, stains and to protect your paint finish. Take care never to scratch the paint.
- Avoid using abrasive compounds and power buffing that may diminish the gloss or thin out the paint finish.

**CAUTION!**

- Do not use abrasive or strong cleaning materials such as steel wool or scouring

## CAUTION!

powder that will scratch metal and painted surfaces.

- Use of power washers exceeding 1,200 psi (8,274 kPa) can result in damage or removal of paint and decals.

## Special Care

- If you drive on salted or dusty roads or if you drive near the ocean, hose off the undercarriage at least once a month.
- It is important that the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors, rocker panels, and trunk be kept clear and open.
- If you detect any stone chips or scratches in the paint, touch them up immediately. The cost of such repairs is considered the responsibility of the owner.
- If your vehicle is damaged due to a collision or similar cause that destroys the paint and protective coating, have your vehicle repaired as soon as possible. The cost of such repairs is considered the responsibility of the owner.

- If you carry special cargo such as chemicals, fertilizers, de-icer salt, etc., be sure that such materials are well packaged and sealed.
- If a lot of driving is done on gravel roads, consider mud or stone shields behind each wheel.
- Use Mopar Touch Up Paint on scratches as soon as possible. Your authorized dealer has touch up paint to match the color of your vehicle.

## INTERIORS

### Seats And Fabric Parts

Use Mopar Total Clean to clean fabric upholstery and carpeting.

## WARNING!

Do not use volatile solvents for cleaning purposes. Many are potentially flammable, and if used in closed areas they may cause respiratory harm.

## Seat Belt Maintenance

Do not bleach, dye or clean the belts with chemical solvents or abrasive cleaners. This will weaken the fabric. Sun damage can also weaken the fabric.

If the belts need cleaning, use a mild soap solution or lukewarm water. Do not remove the belts from the vehicle to wash them. Dry with a soft cloth.

Replace the belts if they appear frayed or worn or if the buckles do not work properly.

## WARNING!

A frayed or torn belt could rip apart in a collision and leave you with no protection. Inspect the belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays, or loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the system. Seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision if they have been damaged (i.e., bent retractor, torn webbing, etc.).



### Plastic And Coated Parts

Use Mopar Total Clean to clean vinyl upholstery.

#### CAUTION!

- Direct contact of air fresheners, insect repellents, suntan lotions, or hand sanitizers to the plastic, painted, or decorated surfaces of the interior may cause permanent damage. Wipe away immediately.
- Damage caused by these type of products may not be covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

### Cleaning Plastic Instrument Cluster Lenses

The lenses in front of the instruments in this vehicle are molded in clear plastic. When cleaning the lenses, care must be taken to avoid scratching the plastic.

1. Clean with a wet soft cloth. A mild soap solution may be used, but do not use high alcohol content or abrasive cleaners. If soap is used, wipe clean with a clean damp cloth.
2. Dry with a soft cloth.

### Leather Parts

Mopar Total Clean is specifically recommended for leather upholstery.

Your leather upholstery can be best preserved by regular cleaning with a damp soft cloth. Small particles of dirt can act as an abrasive and damage the leather upholstery and should be removed promptly with a damp cloth. Stubborn soils can be removed easily with a soft cloth and Mopar Total Clean. Care should be taken to avoid soaking your leather upholstery with any liquid. Please do not use polishes, oils, cleaning fluids, solvents, detergents, or ammonia-based cleaners to clean your leather upholstery. Application of a leather conditioner is not required to maintain the original condition.

#### NOTE:

If equipped with light colored leather, it tends to show any foreign material, dirt, and fabric dye transfer more so than darker colors. The leather is designed for easy cleaning, and FCA recommends Mopar total care leather cleaner applied on a cloth to clean the leather seats as needed.

#### CAUTION!

Do not use Alcohol and Alcohol-based and/or Ketone based cleaning products to clean leather seats, as damage to the seat may result.

# TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

**VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION  
NUMBER . . . . .262**

**WHEEL AND TIRE TORQUE  
SPECIFICATIONS. . . . .263**

Torque Specifications . . . . .263

**FUEL REQUIREMENTS . . . . .264**  
Materials Added To Fuel . . . . .264

**FLEXIBLE FUEL  
(2.4L ENGINE ONLY) —  
IF EQUIPPED . . . . .264**

E-85 General Information . . . . .264

**FLUID CAPACITIES . . . . .265**  
**FLUIDS AND LUBRICANTS. . . . .266**

Engine. . . . .266  
Chassis . . . . .268

**MOPAR ACCESSORIES . . . . .269**  
Authentic Accessories By Mopar . . . . .269



## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is found on the left front corner of the instrument panel. The VIN is visible from outside of the vehicle through the windshield. The VIN number also is stamped into the right front body, on the right front seat cross member. With the seat in the rear most position a flap in the carpet can be cut open and lifted to reveal the VIN. It also appears on the Automobile Information Disclosure Label affixed to a window on your vehicle, the vehicle registration, and the title.

The VIN is also stamped on either right or left hand side of the engine block.



VIN Location



Right Front Body VIN Location

### NOTE:

It is illegal to remove or alter the VIN.



## WHEEL AND TIRE TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

Proper lug nut/bolt torque is very important to ensure that the wheel is properly mounted to the vehicle. Any time a wheel has been removed and reinstalled on the vehicle, the lug nuts/bolts should be torqued using a properly calibrated torque wrench using a six sided (hex) deep wall socket.

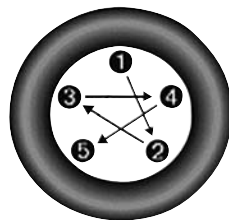
### Torque Specifications

Lug Nut/Bolt Torque	**Lug Nut/Bolt Size	Lug Nut/Bolt Socket Size
100 Ft-Lbs (135 N·m)	M12 x 1.25	19 mm

\*\*Use only your authorized dealer recommended lug nuts/bolts and clean or remove any dirt or oil before tightening.

Inspect the wheel mounting surface prior to mounting the tire and remove any corrosion or loose particles.

Tighten the lug nuts/bolts in a star pattern until each nut/bolt has been tightened twice. Ensure that the socket is fully engaged on the lug nut/bolt.



Torque Pattern

After 25 miles (40 km), check the lug nut/bolt torque to be sure that all the lug nuts/bolts are properly seated against the wheel.

### WARNING!

To avoid the risk of forcing the vehicle off the jack, do not tighten the lug nuts fully until the vehicle has been lowered. Failure to follow this warning may result in personal injury.



## FUEL REQUIREMENTS

### 2.4L and 3.2L Engines



These engines are designed to meet all emissions regulations and provide optimum fuel economy and performance when using high quality unleaded “Regu-

lar” gasoline having a posted octane number of 87 as specified by the (R+M)/2 method. The use of higher octane “Premium” gasoline is not required, as it will not provide any benefit over “Regular” gasoline in these engines.

While operating on gasoline with an octane number of 87, hearing a light knocking sound from the engine is not a cause for concern. However, if the engine is heard making a heavy knocking sound, see your dealer immediately. Use of gasoline with an octane number lower than 87 can cause engine failure and may void or not be covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Poor quality gasoline can cause problems such as hard starting, stalling, and hesitations. If you experience these symptoms, try another brand of gasoline before considering service for the vehicle.

### Materials Added To Fuel

Designated TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline contains a higher level of detergents to further aide in minimizing engine and fuel system deposits. When available, the usage of Top Tier Detergent gasoline is recommended. Visit [www.toptiergas.com](http://www.toptiergas.com) for a list of TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline Retailers.



Indiscriminate use of fuel system cleaning agents should be avoided. Many of these materials intended for gum and varnish removal may contain active solvents or similar ingredients. These can harm fuel system gasket and diaphragm materials.

## FLEXIBLE FUEL (2.4L ENGINE ONLY) — IF EQUIPPED

### E-85 General Information

The information in this section is unique for Flexible Fuel vehicles only. These vehicles can be identified by a unique fuel filler door label that states **Ethanol (E-85) or Unleaded Gasoline Only** and a yellow fuel cap. Refer to the Owner’s Manual at [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/) for more information.

### CAUTION!

Only vehicles with the E-85 fuel filler door label or a yellow gas cap can operate on E-85.

## FLUID CAPACITIES

	U.S.	Metric
<b>Fuel (Approximate)</b>		
2.4L and 3.2L Engines	15.8 Gallons	60 Liters
<b>Engine Oil With Filter</b>		
2.4 Liter Engine (SAE 0W-20, API Certified)	5.5 Quarts	5.2 Liters
3.2 Liter Engine (SAE 5W-20, API Certified)	6 Quarts	5.6 Liters
<b>Cooling System*</b>		
2.4 Liter Engine (Mopar Antifreeze/Engine Coolant 10 Year/150,000 Mile Formula)	7.2 Quarts	6.8 Liters
3.2 Liter Engine (Mopar Antifreeze/Engine Coolant 10 Year/150,000 Mile Formula)	10 Quarts	9.5 Liters
* Includes heater and coolant recovery bottle filled to MAX level.		



## FLUIDS AND LUBRICANTS

### Engine

Component	Fluid, Lubricant, or Genuine Part
Engine Coolant	We recommend you use Mopar Antifreeze/Coolant 10 Year/150,000 Mile Formula OAT (Organic Additive Technology) or equivalent meeting the requirements of FCA Standard MS.90032.
Engine Oil – 2.4L Engine	We recommend you use SAE 0W-20 API Certified Engine Oil, meeting the requirements of FCA Material Standard MS-6395 such as Mopar, Pennzoil, and Shell Helix. Refer to your engine oil filler cap for correct SAE grade.
Engine Oil – 3.2L Engine	We recommend you use API Certified SAE 5W-20 Engine Oil, meeting the requirements of FCA Material Standard MS-6395 such as Mopar, Pennzoil, and Shell Helix. Refer to your engine oil filler cap for correct SAE grade.
Engine Oil Filter	We recommend you use a Mopar Engine Oil Filter.
Spark Plugs	We recommend you use Mopar Spark Plugs.
Fuel Selection – 2.4L Flex Fuel (E-85) Engines	87 Octane, Up To 85% Ethanol.
Fuel Selection – 2.4L and 3.2L Engines	87 Octane, 0-15% Ethanol.

### CAUTION!

- Mixing of engine coolant (antifreeze) other than specified Organic Additive Technology (OAT) engine coolant (antifreeze), may result in engine damage and may decrease corrosion protection. Organic Additive Technology (OAT) engine coolant is different and should not be mixed with Hybrid Organic Additive Technology (HOAT) engine coolant (antifreeze) or any “globally compatible” coolant (antifreeze). If a non-OAT engine coolant (antifreeze) is introduced into the cooling system in an emergency, the cooling system will need to be drained, flushed, and refilled with fresh OAT coolant (conforming to MS.90032), by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

### CAUTION!

- Do not use water alone or alcohol-based engine coolant (antifreeze) products. Do not use additional rust inhibitors or anti-rust products, as they may not be compatible with the radiator engine coolant and may plug the radiator.
- This vehicle has not been designed for use with propylene glycol-based engine coolant (antifreeze). Use of propylene glycol-based engine coolant (antifreeze) is not recommended.



**Chassis**

<b>Component</b>	<b>Fluid, Lubricant, or Genuine Part</b>
Automatic Transmission	Use only Mopar ZF 8&9 Speed ATF Automatic Transmission Fluid, or equivalent. Failure to use the correct fluid may affect the function or performance of your transmission.
Brake Master Cylinder	We recommend you use Mopar DOT 3 Brake Fluid, SAE J1703 should be used. If DOT 3, SAE J1703 brake fluid is not available, then DOT 4 is acceptable. Use only recommended brake fluids.

## MOPAR ACCESSORIES

### Authentic Accessories By Mopar

- The following highlights just some of the many Authentic Jeep Accessories by Mopar featuring a fit, finish, and functionality specifically for your Jeep Cherokee.

#### JEEP CARGO MANAGEMENT SYSTEM:

- Off Road Kit
- First Aid Kit

#### EXTERIOR:

- Rock Rails
- Wheels
- Wheel Locks

#### INTERIOR:

- Premium Floor Mats
- Security Cover
- Slush Mats

- In choosing Authentic Accessories you gain far more than expressive style, premium protection, or extreme entertainment, you also benefit from enhancing your vehicle with accessories that have been thoroughly tested and factory-approved.

- Roadside Safety Kit
- Collapsible Tote

- Front End Cover
- Splash Guards
- Locking Gas Cap

- Emergency Roadside Kit
- Bright Pedal Kit
- Door Sill Guards

- For the full line of Authentic Jeep Accessories by Mopar, visit your local dealership or online at [mopar.com](http://mopar.com) for U.S. residents and [mopar.ca](http://mopar.ca) for Canadian residents.

#### NOTE:

All parts are subject to availability.

- Cooler
- Cargo Area Cover

- Hood Decal
- Skid Plates

- Molded Cargo Tray
- Katzkin Leather Interiors



**ELECTRONICS:**

- Mopar Web (WiFi)
- Remote Start

**CARRIERS:**

- Hitch-mount Bike Carrier
- Roof Top Cargo Basket

- Park Distance Sensors
- Speaker Upgrades

- Sport Utility Bars
- Roof-mount Ski and Snowboard Carrier

- Rear View Camera
- Electronic Vehicle Tracking System

- Roof-mount Bike Carrier
- Roof Cargo Box Carrier



# MULTIMEDIA

## **CYBERSECURITY . . . . .273**

## **TIPS CONTROLS AND GENERAL INFORMATION . . . . .274**

Steering Wheel Audio Controls . . . . .	.274
Reception Conditions . . . . .	.274
Care And Maintenance . . . . .	.274
Anti-theft Protection . . . . .	.274

## **UCONNECT ACCESS . . . . .275**

Uconnect Access — If Equipped (Available On Uconnect 8.4/8.4 NAV — U.S. Residents Only) . . . . .	.275
Uconnect Access Registration (Uconnect 8.4/8.4 NAV, U.S. 48 Contiguous States, Alaska And Hawaii) . . . . .	.276
Download The Uconnect Access App . . . . .	.277
Vehicle Finder . . . . .	.277
Send 'N Go . . . . .	.278
Renewing Subscriptions And Purchasing 3G Wi-Fi Hotspot (Uconnect 8.4/8.4 NAV, U.S. 48 Contiguous States, Alaska And Hawaii) . . . . .	.279
Getting Started With Apps . . . . .	.279

Maintaining Your Uconnect Access Account . . . . .	.280
Built-In Features . . . . .	.280
Vehicle Health Report/Alert . . . . .	.283
Uconnect Access Remote Features . . . . .	.283

## **UCONNECT 5.0 . . . . .287**

Controls On The Front Panel . . . . .	.287
Clock Setting . . . . .	.288
Equalizer, Balance And Fade . . . . .	.288
Radio Mode . . . . .	.289
Media Mode . . . . .	.289
Bluetooth Source . . . . .	.292
SiriusXM Premier Over 160 Channels . . . . .	.293

## **UCONNECT 8.4/8.4 NAV . . . . .294**

Uconnect 8.4/8.4 NAV At A Glance . . . . .	.294
Personalized Menu Bar . . . . .	.296
Radio Mode . . . . .	.296
Media Mode . . . . .	.297
SiriusXM Premier Over 160 Channels . . . . .	.298

## **UCONNECT SETTINGS . . . . .300**

## **IPOD/USB/SD CARD/MEDIA PLAYER CONTROL . . . . .301**

Audio Jack (AUX) . . . . .	.301
USB Port . . . . .	.302
SD Card . . . . .	.302
Bluetooth Streaming Audio . . . . .	.302

## **NAVIGATION . . . . .302**

Changing The Navigation Voice Prompt Volume . . . . .	.303
Finding Points Of Interest . . . . .	.303
Finding A Place By Spelling The Name . . . . .	.303
One-Step Voice Destination Entry . . . . .	.304
Setting Your Home Location . . . . .	.304
Go Home . . . . .	.304
Adding A Stop . . . . .	.305
Taking A Detour . . . . .	.305

## **UCONNECT PHONE . . . . .305**

Operation . . . . .	.305
Uconnect Phone Features . . . . .	.306



Uconnect Phone (Bluetooth Hands Free Calling) . . . . .	.306	Voice Text Reply (Not Compatible With iPhone) . . . . .	.313	Climate (8.4/8.4 NAV) . . . . .	.322
Pairing (Wirelessly Connecting Your Mobile Phone To The Uconnect System) . . . . .	.307	Helpful Tips And Common Questions To Improve Bluetooth Performance With Your Uconnect System . . . . .	.314	Navigation (8.4/8.4 NAV) . . . . .	.322
Common Phone Commands (Examples) . . . . .	.310	General Information . . . . .	.315	Uconnect Access — If Equipped (8.4/8.4 NAV) . . . . .	.322
Mute (Or Unmute) Microphone During Call . . . . .	.310	<b>UCONNECT VOICE RECOGNITION QUICK TIPS . . . . .</b>	<b>.316</b>	Register (8.4/8.4 NAV) . . . . .	.323
Transfer Ongoing Call Between Handset And Vehicle . . . . .	.310	Introducing Uconnect . . . . .	.316	Vehicle Health Alert . . . . .	.324
Phonebook . . . . .	.310	Get Started . . . . .	.318	Mobile App (8.4/8.4 NAV) . . . . .	.324
Voice Command Tips . . . . .	.311	Basic Voice Commands . . . . .	.318	Voice Texting (8.4/8.4 NAV) . . . . .	.324
Changing The Volume . . . . .	.311	Radio . . . . .	.319	Yelp (8.4/8.4 NAV) . . . . .	.325
Using Do Not Disturb . . . . .	.311	Media . . . . .	.319	SiriusXM Travel Link (8.4/8.4 NAV — US Market Only) . . . . .	.326
Incoming Text Messages . . . . .	.312	Phone . . . . .	.320	Siri Eyes Free — If Equipped . . . . .	.326
		Voice Text Reply . . . . .	.321	Do Not Disturb . . . . .	.328
				Additional Information . . . . .	.328

## CYBERSECURITY

Your vehicle may be a connected vehicle and may be equipped with both wired and wireless networks. These networks allow your vehicle to send and receive information. This information allows systems and features in your vehicle to function properly.

Your vehicle may be equipped with certain security features to reduce the risk of unauthorized and unlawful access to vehicle systems and wireless communications. Vehicle software technology continues to evolve over time and FCA US LLC, working with its suppliers, evaluates and takes appropriate steps as needed. Similar to a computer or other devices, your vehicle may require software updates to improve the usability and performance of your systems or to reduce the potential risk of unauthorized and unlawful access to your vehicle systems.

The risk of unauthorized and unlawful access to your vehicle systems may still exist, even if the most recent version of vehicle software (such as Uconnect software) is installed.

### WARNING!

- It is not possible to know or to predict all of the possible outcomes if your vehicle's systems are breached. It may be possible that vehicle systems, including safety related systems, could be impaired or a loss of vehicle control could occur that may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.
- ONLY insert media (e.g., USB, SD card, or CD) into your vehicle if it came from a trusted source. Media of unknown origin could possibly contain malicious software, and if installed in your vehicle, it may increase the possibility for vehicle systems to be breached.
- As always, if you experience unusual vehicle behavior, take your vehicle to your nearest authorized dealer immediately.

### NOTE:

- FCA US LLC or your dealer may contact you directly regarding software updates.

- To help further improve vehicle security and minimize the potential risk of a security breach, vehicle owners should:
  - Routinely check [www.driveuconnect.com/](http://www.driveuconnect.com/) software-update to learn about available Uconnect software updates.
  - Only connect and use trusted media devices (e.g. personal mobile phones, USBs, CDs).

Privacy of any wireless and wired communications cannot be assured. Third parties may unlawfully intercept information and private communications without your consent. For further information, refer to “Privacy Practices - If Equipped with Uconnect 8.4 Radio” in your Uconnect Owner's Manual Supplement and “Onboard Diagnostic System (OBD II) Cybersecurity” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” in your Owner's Manual on [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/).



## TIPS CONTROLS AND GENERAL INFORMATION

### Steering Wheel Audio Controls

The steering wheel audio controls are located on the rear surface of the steering wheel.



Steering Wheel Audio Controls

### Right Switch

- Push the switch up or down to increase or decrease the volume.
- Push the button in the center to change modes AM/FM/CD/SXM.

### Left Switch

- Push the switch up or down to search for the next listenable station or select the next or previous CD track.
- Push the button in the center to select the next preset station (radio) or to change CDs if equipped with a CD Player.

### Reception Conditions

Reception conditions change constantly while driving. Reception may be interfered with by the presence of mountains, buildings or bridges, especially when you are far away from the broadcaster.

The volume may be increased when receiving traffic alerts and news.

### Care And Maintenance

Observe the following precautions to ensure the system is fully operational:

- The display lens should not come into contact with pointed or rigid objects which could damage its surface; use a soft, dry anti-static cloth to clean and do not press.
- Never use alcohol, gas and derivatives to clean the display lens.
- Prevent any liquid from entering the system: this could damage it beyond repair.

### Anti-theft Protection

The system is equipped with an anti-theft protection system based on the exchange of information with the electronic control unit (Body Computer) on the vehicle.

This guarantees maximum safety and prevents the secret code from being entered after the power supply has been disconnected.

If the check has a positive outcome, the system will start to operate, whereas if the comparison codes are not the same or if the electronic control unit (Body Computer) is replaced, the system will ask the user to enter the secret code. See your authorized dealer

## UCONNECT ACCESS

**Uconnect Access — If Equipped  
(Available On Uconnect 8.4/8.4 NAV —  
U.S. Residents Only)**

### WARNING!

ALWAYS drive safely with your hands on the wheel. You have full responsibility and assume all risks related to the use of the Uconnect features and applications in this vehicle. Only use Uconnect when it is safe to do so. Failure to do so may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.

### WARNING!

ALWAYS obey traffic laws and pay attention to the road. Some Uconnect Access services, including 9-1-1 and Assist, will NOT work without an operable 1X (voice/data) or 3G (data) network connection.

### NOTE:

Your vehicle may be transmitting data as authorized by the subscriber.

Uconnect Access enhances your ownership and driving experience by connecting your vehicle to an operable 1X (voice/data) or 3G (data) network. When connected to an operable 1X (voice/data) or 3G (data) network, you can:

- Place a call to a local 9-1-1 Operator for emergency assistance.
- Remotely lock/unlock your doors and start your vehicle from virtually anywhere, using the Uconnect Access App from your device. You can also do so by logging into your owner site, or by calling Uconnect Access Care when your vehicle has an operable 1X (voice/data) or 3G (data) network connection. Services can only be used where coverage is available; see coverage map for details.
- Turn your vehicle into a 3G Wi-Fi Hotspot and connect your devices to the internet.
- Receive text or email notifications if your vehicle's security alarm goes off.
- Receive stolen vehicle assistance, using GPS technology to help authorities locate your vehicle if it is stolen.

- Listen to your text messages or send free-form text messages with your voice while keeping your hands on the wheel, using the Voice Texting feature. Requires a device that supports Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP).
- Search for places to eat, shop, relax and play with Yelp, using your voice or on-screen menu. Then navigate to them (navigation standard on Uconnect 8.4 NAV, optional on Uconnect 8.4).
- Get operator assistance using the ASSIST button on your interior rearview mirror.


**Before you drive, familiarize yourself with the easy-to-use Uconnect Access services.**

1. The ASSIST and 9-1-1 buttons are located on your rearview mirror. The ASSIST button is used for contacting Roadside Assistance, Vehicle Care and Uconnect Access Care. The 9-1-1 button connects you to emergency services.



**NOTE:**

Vehicles sold in Canada and Mexico DO NOT have 9-1-1 call system capabilities. 9-1-1 or other emergency line operators in Canada and Mexico may not answer or respond to 9-1-1 system calls.

- The Uconnect “Apps ” button is located in the center of the menu bar of the radio touchscreen. This is where you can manage your Apps and purchase 3G Wi-Fi on demand.
- The Uconnect Voice Command and Uconnect Phone buttons are located on the left side of your steering wheel. These buttons let you use your voice to give commands, make phone calls, send and receive text messages hands-free, enter navigation destinations, and control your radio and media devices.

**Included Trial Period For New Vehicles**

Your new vehicle may come with an included trial period for use of the Uconnect Access Services starting at the date of vehicle purchase (date based on vehicle sales notification from your dealer).

**To activate the trial, you must first register with Uconnect Access.** After the trial period, if you wish to continue your Uconnect Access Services you can choose to purchase a subscription.

**Uconnect Access Subscription**

- After the trial period, you can subscribe by pushing the ASSIST button on the rearview mirror and speaking with a Uconnect Access Care agent or by visiting the owner site [moparownerconnect.com](http://moparownerconnect.com). If you need assistance, U.S. residents can call Uconnect Access Care at 1-855-792-4241
- For the latest information on packages and pricing information: U.S. residents visit [DriveUconnect.com](http://DriveUconnect.com).

**Uconnect Access Registration  
(Uconnect 8.4/8.4 NAV, U.S.  
48 Contiguous States, Alaska And Hawaii)**

To unlock the full potential of Uconnect Access in your vehicle, you first need to register with Uconnect Access.

- Push the ASSIST button on your rearview mirror.

**ASSIST Button**

- Press the “Uconnect Care” button on the touchscreen.
- A helpful Uconnect Care Agent will register your vehicle and handle all of the details.

**Signing up is easy!** Simply follow the steps above. Or, press the “Apps ” button on the touchscreen, then select the Uconnect registration app to “Register By Web” and complete the process using your device or computer.

**Why sign up for Uconnect Access?** Here are just a few examples of things you'll be able to do:

- Know that help, if you need it, is only a button press away.
- Lock and unlock your vehicle doors from hundreds of miles away.
- Discover great, new places around you using Yelp.
- Dictate and send text messages by speaking out loud (all while keeping both hands on the wheel!!)
- Enjoy the best in music and entertainment from around the world with apps like Pandora.

For further information please visit [DriveUconnect.com](http://DriveUconnect.com).

## Download The Uconnect Access App

You're only a few steps away from using remote commands and playing your favorite music in your vehicle.



**Mobile App**

To use the Uconnect Access Mobile App:

- Once you have registered your Uconnect Access services, download the Uconnect Access app to your mobile device. Use your Owner Account login and password to open the app.

- Once on the “Remote” screen, you can begin using Remote Door Lock/Unlock, Remote Vehicle Start, and activate your horn and lights remotely, if equipped.
- Press the “Location” button on the bottom menu bar of the app to bring up a map to locate your vehicle or send a location to your Uconnect Navigation using Vehicle Finder and Send ‘n Go , if equipped.
- Press the “Settings” side menu in the upper left corner of the app to bring up app settings

## Vehicle Finder

The Vehicle Finder feature of the Uconnect Access Mobile App allows you to find the location of your vehicle when you have lost it. You can also sound the alarm and flash the lights to make finding your vehicle even easier.

To find your vehicle:

1. Press the “Location” tab on the Uconnect Access Mobile App bottom bar.

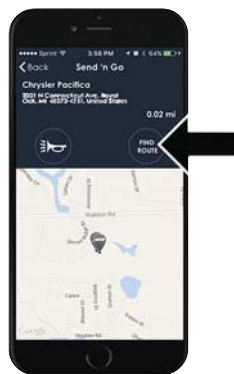


2. Select the “Vehicle” icon to determine the location of your vehicle.



**Vehicle Icon**

3. Select the “Find Route” button that appears, once your vehicle is located.



**Find Route Button**

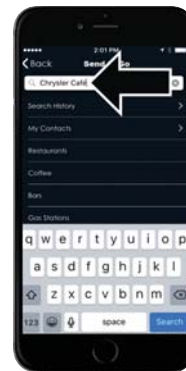
Select your preferred Navigation App to route a path to your vehicle.

### Send 'N Go

The Send 'n Go feature of the Uconnect Access Mobile App allows you to search for a destination on your mobile device and then send the route to your vehicle's native navigation system.

To send a navigation route to your vehicle:

1. Press the “Location” tab on the Uconnect Access Mobile App bottom bar.
2. Either type in the destination you would like to navigate to, or search through one of the categories provided.



**Destination Search Bar**

3. Select the destination you want to route to from the list that appears.



- Press the “Send To Vehicle” button, and then confirm the destination by pressing “Yes,” to send the navigation route to the Uconnect Navigation in your vehicle.



Send To Vehicle Button

- Finally, confirm the route inside your vehicle by pressing the “Go Now” option on the pop-up that appears on the touchscreen, when the vehicle is started.

### Renewing Subscriptions And Purchasing 3G Wi-Fi Hotspot (Uconnect 8.4/8.4 NAV, U.S. 48 Contiguous States, Alaska And Hawaii)

Subscriptions, and 3G Wi-Fi Hotspot, can be purchased from the Uconnect Store within your vehicle, and online at Mopar Owner Connect. If you need help push the ASSIST button on the rearview mirror, then select Uconnect Care (or dial 1-855-792-4241 ).

#### NOTE:

You must set up a Uconnect Access Payment Account online (login to [moparownerconnect.com](http://moparownerconnect.com), go to Edit Profile, then Uconnect Payment Account, to set up and manage your Payment Account).

### Getting Started With Apps

Applications (Apps for short) in your Uconnect Access system are designed to deliver the features and services that you want.

The types of apps you can use with Uconnect Access are:

- Built-In Features** — use the 1X (voice/data) or 3G (data) network on your Uconnect 8.4 or 8.4 NAV radio.

### Apps Main Menu

Press the “Apps” button on the touchscreen to open the Apps main menu, in this screen you will be able to access all of your available Apps. To access an App directly, press the corresponding button on the touchscreen and you will be directed to that App. To view the rest of your Apps, press the page forward or page back button.



Uconnect 8.4/8.4 NAV Main Menu



## App Manager

Press the “App Manager” button to access the following categories:

### Favorite Apps

This is the default screen when you first press the “App Manager” button on the touchscreen, and is a good place to put the apps you use most frequently. To make an App a “favorite”, press the “Settings” button on the touchscreen to the right of the App.

### All Apps

All of your available Apps will reside in the “All Apps” folder.

### Running Apps

Press this tab to see which apps are currently running.

## Maintaining Your Uconnect Access Account

### Selling Your Vehicle

When you sell your vehicle, we recommend that you remove your Uconnect Access Account information from the vehicle. You can do this on the Mopar Owner Connect website [moparownerconnect.com](http://moparownerconnect.com). Removing your account information cancels your subscription and makes your vehicle factory-ready for a new owner/subscriber.

For additional information on Uconnect, visit [DriveUconnect.com](http://DriveUconnect.com) or call 1-877-855-8400

### Built-In Features

#### WARNING!

ALWAYS drive safely with your hands on the wheel. You have full responsibility and assume all risks related to the use of the Uconnect features and applications in this vehicle. Only use Uconnect when it is safe to do so. Failure to do so may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.

#### WARNING!

- ALWAYS obey traffic laws and pay attention to the road. Some Uconnect Access services, including 9-1-1 and Assist, will NOT work without an operable 1X (voice/data) or 3G (data) network connection.
- Ignoring the rearview mirror light could mean you may not have 9-1-1 Call service if needed. If the rearview mirror light is illuminated, have an authorized dealer service the 9-1-1 Call system immediately.
- The Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) turns on the Air Bag Warning Light on the instrument panel if a malfunction is detected in any part of the airbag system. If the Air Bag Warning Light is illuminated, the air bag system may not be working properly and the 9-1-1 system may not send a signal to a 9-1-1 operator if an air bag is deployed. If the Air Bag Warning Light is illuminated, have an authorized dealer service your vehicle immediately.

## WARNING!

- If anyone in the vehicle could be in danger (e.g., fire or smoke is visible, dangerous road conditions or location), do not wait for voice contact from a 9-1-1 operator. All occupants should exit the vehicle immediately and move to a safe location.
- The 9-1-1 Call system is embedded into the vehicle's electrical system. Do not add aftermarket electrical equipment to the vehicle's electrical system. This may prevent your vehicle from sending a signal to initiate an emergency call. To avoid interference that can cause the 9-1-1 Call system to fail, never add aftermarket equipment (e.g., two-way mobile radio, CB radio, data recorder, etc.) to your vehicle's electrical system or modify the antennas on your vehicle.
- IF YOUR VEHICLE LOSES BATTERY POWER FOR ANY REASON (INCLUDING DURING OR AFTER AN ACCIDENT), the Uconnect features, apps and services, among others, will not operate.

## NOTE:

- Your vehicle may be transmitting data as authorized by the subscriber.
- Your vehicle must have a working electrical system for any of the in vehicle Uconnect features to operate.

## Assist Call (8.4/8.4 NAV)

The rearview mirror contains an ASSIST push button, and the touchscreen contains a Uconnect Access App, which will automatically connect the vehicle occupants to one of these predefined destinations for immediate support:



### 9-1-1 Button And ASSIST

- 1 — 9-1-1 Button  
2 — ASSIST Button



- **Roadside Assistance Call** — If you get a flat tire, or need a tow, you'll be connected to someone who can help anytime. Additional fees may apply. Additional information in this section.
- **Uconnect Access Care** — In vehicle support for Uconnect Access System, Apps and Features.
- **Vehicle Care** — Total support for your FCA US LLC vehicle.

### Emergency 9-1-1 Call (If Equipped)

The rearview mirror contains a 9-1-1 button that, when pressed, may place a call from your vehicle to a local 9-1-1 operator to request help from local police, fire or ambulance personnel. If this button is accidentally pressed, you will have seven seconds to stop the call. To cancel, press the 9-1-1 Call button again or press the "Cancel" button shown on the touchscreen. After seven seconds has passed, the 9-1-1 call will be placed and only the 9-1-1 operator can cancel it. The LED light on the rearview mirror will turn green once a connection to a 9-1-1 operator has been made. The green LED light will turn off once the 9-1-1 call is termi-


nated. Have an authorized dealer service the vehicle if the rearview mirror light is continuously red. On equipped vehicles, this feature requires a functioning electrical system and an operable 1X (voice/data) or 3G (data) network connection to function properly. **If a connection is made between a 9-1-1 operator and your vehicle, you understand and agree that 9-1-1 operators may, like any other 9-1-1 call, record conversations and sounds in and near your vehicle upon connection.**

### Roadside Assistance (If Equipped)

If your vehicle is equipped with this feature and has an operable 1X (voice/data) or 3G (data) network connection, you may be able to connect with Roadside Assistance by pushing the "ASSIST" button on the rearview mirror. You will be presented with Assist Care options. Make a selection by pressing the prompts displayed on the radio. If Roadside Assistance is provided to your vehicle, you agree to be responsible for any additional roadside assistance service costs that you may incur. In order to provide Uconnect Services to you, we may record and monitor your conversations with Roadside Assistance,

Uconnect Care or Vehicle Care, whether such conversations are initiated through the Uconnect Services in your vehicle, your device or via a landline device, and may share information obtained through such recording and monitoring in accordance with regulatory requirements. You acknowledge, agree and consent to any recording, monitoring or sharing of information obtained through any such call recordings.

### Yelp

Customers have the ability to search for nearby destinations or a Point Of Interest (POI) either by category or custom search by using keywords (for example, "Italian restaurant"). Searching can be done by either voice or by using the touchscreen keypad. Using the touchscreen, launch Yelp by selecting the "Apps " icon, then press "Yelp." To use voice recognition, push the VR button on the steering wheel and say "launch Yelp," then follow the instructions on the Teleprompter.

## Security Alarm Notification

The Theft Alarm Notification feature notifies you via email or text (SMS) message when the vehicle's factory-installed security alarm system has been set-off. There are a number of reasons why your alarm may have been triggered, one of which could be that your vehicle was stolen. If so, please see the details of the Stolen Vehicle Assistance service below. When you register, Theft Alarm Notification is automatically set to send you an email at the email address you provide should the alarm go off. You may also opt to have a text message sent to your device.

## Stolen Vehicle Assistance

If your vehicle is stolen, contact local law enforcement immediately to file a stolen vehicle report. Once this report has been filed, Uconnect care can help locate your vehicle. The Uconnect Care agent will ask for the stolen vehicle report number issued by local law enforcement. As long as your vehicle has an operable 1X (voice/data) or 3G (data) network connection, the Uconnect Care Agent may be able to locate the stolen vehicle and work with law enforcement to help recover it.

Your vehicle must have an operable 1X (voice/data) or 3G (data) network connection and must be registered with Uconnect Access with an active subscription that includes the applicable feature.

## 3G Wi-Fi Hotspot

3G Wi-Fi Hotspot is an in-vehicle feature that connects your device to an operable 1X (voice/data) or 3G (data) network using Uconnect Access and is ready to go where ever you are. Once your vehicle is registered for Uconnect Access, you can purchase a 3G Wi-Fi Hotspot subscription at the Uconnect Store. After you've made your purchase, turn on your signal and connect your passengers' devices. It's never been easier to bring your home or office with you.

### WARNING!

NEVER use the 3G Wi-Fi Hotspot when you are driving the vehicle. As the driver, you should only use the 3G Wi-Fi Hotspot when the vehicle is parked in a safe location. Failure to do so may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.

## Vehicle Health Report/Alert

Your vehicle will send you a monthly email report, which summarizes the performance of your vehicle's key systems so you can stay on top of your vehicle's maintenance needs. Your vehicle will also send you Vehicle Health Alerts when it detects issues with its key systems that need your attention. For further information, go to the Mopar Owner Connect website at [moparownerconnect.com](http://moparownerconnect.com).

## Uconnect Access Remote Features

If you own a compatible iPhone or Android powered device, the Uconnect Access App allows you to remotely lock or unlock your doors, start your engine or activate your horn and lights from virtually anywhere. Your vehicle must be equipped with remote start and your vehicle must have an operable 1X (voice/data) or 3G (data) network connection. Services can only be used where coverage is available; see coverage map for details. You can download the App from Mopar Owner Connect or from the App Store (iPhone) or Google Play Store (Android).



Visit UconnectPhone.com to determine if your device is compatible. For Uconnect Phone customer support and to determine if your device is compatible.

U.S. residents - visit UconnectPhone.com or call 1-877-855-8400.

### **Remote Start — If Equipped**

This feature provides the ability to start the engine on your vehicle, without the keys and from virtually any distance. You can send a request to your vehicle in one of two ways:

1. Using the Uconnect Access App from a compatible device.
2. From the Mopar Owner Connect website.
  - After 15 minutes if you have not entered your vehicle with the key, the engine will shut off automatically.
  - You can also send a command to turn-off an engine that has been remote started.
  - This remote function requires your vehicle to be equipped with a factory-installed Remote Start system. To utilize this feature after the Uconnect Access App is downloaded, login with your user name and password.

To use this feature after the Uconnect Access App is downloaded, login using your user name and password. You will need your four digit Uconnect Security PIN to confirm the request. Press the “remote start” icon on your Uconnect Access App to remotely start the vehicle.

You can set-up notifications for your account to receive an email or text (SMS) message every time a command is sent. Login to Mopar Owner Connect at moparownerconnect.com and click on Edit Profile to manage Uconnect Notifications.

### **Remote Door Lock/Unlock**

This feature provides the ability to lock or unlock the door on your vehicle, without the keys and from virtually any distance. You can send a request to your vehicle in one of three ways:

1. Using the Uconnect Access App from a compatible device.
2. From the Mopar Owner Connect website.
3. By contacting the Uconnect Care on the phone.

To use this feature after the Uconnect Access App is downloaded, login using your user name and password. You will need your four digit Uconnect Security PIN to confirm the request. Press the “closed lock” icon on your Uconnect Access App to lock the doors, and press the “open lock” icon to unlock the driver’s door.

You can set-up notifications for your account to receive an email or text (SMS) message every time a command is sent. Login to Mopar Owner Connect at moparownerconnect.com and click on Edit Profile to manage Uconnect Notifications.

### **Remote Horn And Lights**

It’s easy to locate a vehicle in a dark, crowded or noisy parking area by activating the horn and lights. It may also help if you need to draw attention to your vehicle for any reason. You can send a request to your vehicle in one of three ways:

1. Using the Uconnect Access App from a compatible device.
2. From the Mopar Owner Connect website.
3. By contacting the Uconnect Care on the phone.

To use this feature after the Uconnect Access App is downloaded, login using your user name and password. You will need your four digit Uconnect Security PIN to confirm the request. You can set-up notifications for your account to receive an email or text (SMS) message every time a command is sent. Login to Mopar Owner Connect at moparownerconnect.com and click on Edit Profile to manage Uconnect Notifications.

## Voice Texting

Want to dictate a personal message? Register with Uconnect Access to take advantage of a new, cloudbased Voice Texting service, an enhancement to Voice Text Reply.


Voice Texting allows you to compose a new text or reply to an incoming text message. Before you attempt to use the Voice Texting feature, check to ensure you have the following:

1. A paired, Bluetooth enabled device with the Message Access Profile (MAP). Not all Bluetooth enabled devices support MAP,

including all iPhones (Apple iOS). Visit UconnectPhone.com for system and device compatibility information.

2. An active Uconnect Access trial or paid subscription.
3. Accept the “Allow MAP” profile request on your device. (Please refer to device manufacturer instructions for details).

### To Send A Text Message

1. Push the Uconnect Phone Button  on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the beep.
3. Say “Text.”
4. Uconnect will prompt you “Say the phone number, or full name and phone type of the contact you want to send a message to.”
5. Wait for the beep and say a contact that is in your phonebook, or a mobile phone number that you would like to send the message to.

6. Uconnect will prompt you “Please say the message that you would like to send.” (If you do not hear this prompt, you may not have an active subscription with Uconnect Access).
7. Wait for the beep, and then dictate any message up to 140 characters. If you exceed 140 characters, you will hear the following prompt: “Message was too long; your message will be truncated.”
8. Uconnect will then repeat the message back to you.
9. Uconnect will prompt you: “To add to your message, say “Continue”; To delete the current message and start over, say “Start Over”; to send the current message, say “Send”; to hear the message again, say “Repeat”.
10. If you are happy with your message and would like to send it, wait for the beep and say “Send”.
11. Uconnect will then say “Sending your message.”



**Sample Commands For Voice Text Reply And Voice Texting**

<b>Example Command</b>	<b>Action</b>
"Text John Smith"	Send a message to specific contact in address book
"Text 123 456 7890"	Send 123 456 7890 a message from your phonebook
"Show messages"	See recent text messages listed by number on Uconnect screen
"Listen to/view (message number four, for example)"	Hear messages or read it on Uconnect screen
"Reply"	Send a voice text reply to a current message
"Forward text/message to "John Smith"	Forward current text to specific contact in address book
"Forward text/message to "123 456 7890"	Forward current text to specific phone number



# UCONNECT 5.0

## Controls On The Front Panel



Uconnect 5.0 Radio

1 — RADIO Button  
2 — COMPASS Button

3 — CLIMATE Button  
4 — MORE Functions Button

5 — Uconnect PHONE Button  
6 — MEDIA Button



## Clock Setting

To start the clock setting procedure:

1. Push the MORE button on the faceplate. Next press the “Settings” button on the touchscreen and then press the “Clock and Date” button on the touchscreen.
2. Press the “Set Time” button on the touchscreen.
3. Press the “Up” or “Down” arrows to adjust the hours or minutes, next select the “AM” or “PM” button on the touchscreen. You can also select 12hr or 24hr format by pressing the desired button on the touchscreen.
4. Once the time is set press the “Done” button on the touchscreen to exit the time screen.

### NOTE:

In the Clock Setting Menu you can also select the “Show Time Status” button on the touchscreen, then select from “On” or “Off” to display the time in the status bar.

## Equalizer, Balance And Fade

1. Push the MORE button on the faceplate. Next press the “Settings” button on the touchscreen.
2. Then scroll down and press the “Audio” button on the touchscreen to get to the Audio menu.
3. The Audio Menu shows the following options for you to customize your audio settings.

### Equalizer

Press the “Equalizer” button on the touchscreen to adjust the Bass, Mid and Treble. Use the “+” or “-” button on the touchscreen to adjust the equalizer to your desired settings. Press the “Back Arrow” button on the touchscreen when done.

### Balance/Fade

Press the “Balance/Fade” button on the touchscreen to adjust the sound from the speakers. Use the arrow button on the touchscreen to adjust the sound level from the front and rear or right and left side speakers.

Press the Center “C” button on the touchscreen to reset the balance and fade to the factory setting. Press the “Back Arrow” button on the touchscreen when done.

### Speed Adjusted Volume

Press the “Speed Adjusted Volume” button on the touchscreen to select between OFF, 1, 2 or 3. This will decrease the radio volume relative to a decrease in vehicle speed. Press the “Back Arrow” button on the touchscreen when done.

### Loudness

Press the “Loudness” button on the touchscreen to select the Loudness feature. When this feature is activated it improves sound quality at lower volumes.

### Surround Sound

Press the “Surround Sound” button on the touchscreen, select “On” or “Off” followed by pressing the “Back Arrow” button on the touchscreen. When this feature is activated, it provides simulated surround sound mode.

## Radio Mode

### Seek Previous/Next Buttons

#### Seek Up >>|

Press and release the “Seek Up” >>| button on the touchscreen to tune the radio to the next listenable station or channel.

During a Seek Up function, if the radio reaches the starting station after passing through the entire band two times, the radio will stop at the station where it began.

#### Fast Seek Up >>>|

Press and hold the “Seek Up” >>| button on the touchscreen to advance the radio through the available stations or channels at a faster rate, the radio stops at the next available station or channel when the button on the touchscreen is released.

#### Seek Down <<<

Press and release the “Seek Down” <<< button on the touchscreen to tune the radio to the next listenable station or channel.

During a Seek Down function, if the radio reaches the starting station after passing through the entire band two times, the radio will stop at the station where it began.

#### Fast Seek Down <<<<

Press and hold the “Seek Down” <<<< button on the touchscreen to advance the radio through the available stations or channel at a faster rate, the radio stops at the next available station or channel when the button on the touchscreen is released.

### Store Radio Presets

The Radio stores up to 12 presets in each of the Radio modes. There are four visible presets at the top of the radio screen. Pressing the “All” button on the touchscreen on the radio home screen will display all of the preset stations for that mode.

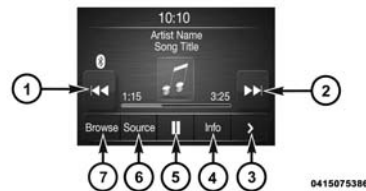
To store a radio preset manually, follow the steps below:

1. Tune to the desired station.

2. Press and hold the desired numbered button on the touchscreen for more than two seconds or until you hear a confirmation beep.

## Media Mode

### Audio Source Selection



- 1 — SEEK Down
- 2 — SEEK Up
- 3 — Additional Functions
- 4 — Info
- 5 — Pause/Play
- 6 — Source
- 7 — Browse



Media Mode is entered by pushing the MEDIA button located on the faceplate. Once in Media Mode, press the “Source” button on the touchscreen and the desired mode button on the touchscreen. Disc (if equipped), USB, SD Card (if equipped), AUX and Bluetooth (if equipped), are the Media sources available. When available, you can select the “Browse” button on the touchscreen to be given these options:

- Now Playing
- Artists
- Albums
- Genres
- Songs
- Playlists
- Folders

#### **Source**

Press the “Source” button on the touchscreen to select the desired audio source: Disc (if equipped), USB, SD (if equipped), AUX and Bluetooth (if equipped). This screen will time out after a few seconds and return to the main radio screen if no selection is made.

You can press the “Source,” “Pause/Play” or the “Info” button on the touchscreen for artist information on the current song playing.

#### **Disc Mode — If Equipped**

Your vehicle may have a remote Disc player located in the center console storage bin.

Disc Mode is entered by either inserting a CD/Disc or by pushing the MEDIA button on the faceplate. Once in Media Mode, press the “Source” button on the touchscreen and select “Disc.”

#### **Inserting Compact Disc**

Gently insert one disc into the disc player with the disc label following the illustration indicated on the player. The disc will automatically be pulled into the disc player and the disc icon will illuminate on the radio display. If a disc does not go into the slot more than 1.0 inch (2.5 cm), a disc may already be loaded and must be ejected before a new disc can be loaded.

If you insert a disc with the ignition ON and the radio ON, the unit will switch to disc mode and begin to play when you insert the disc. The display will show the track number and index time in minutes and seconds. Play will begin at the start of track one.

#### **Browse**

Press the “Browse” button on the touchscreen to scroll through and select a desired track on the Disc. Press the “Exit” button on the touchscreen if you wish to cancel the browse function.

#### **Eject Button — Ejecting a Disc**

Push the eject button to eject the disc. If you have ejected a disc and have not removed it within ten seconds, it will be reloaded. If the Disc is not removed, the radio will reinsert the disc but will not play it.

A disc can be ejected with the radio and ignition OFF.

## USB/iPod Mode

USB/iPod Mode is entered by either inserting a USB Jump Drive or iPod cable into the USB port, or by pushing the MEDIA button located on the faceplate. Once in Media Mode, press the “Source” button on the touchscreen and select “USB/iPod.”

## Inserting USB/iPod Device

Gently insert the USB/iPod device into the USB Port. If you insert a USB/iPod device with the ignition ON, the unit will switch to USB/iPod mode and begin to play when you insert the device. The display will show the track number and index time in minutes and seconds. Play will begin at the start of track one.

## Browse

Press the “Browse” button on the touchscreen to select Artist, Albums, Genres, Songs, Playlists or Folders from the USB/iPod device. Once the desired selection is made you can chose from the available media by pressing the button on the touchscreen. Press the “Exit” button on the touchscreen if you wish to cancel the browse function.

## AUX Mode

AUX Mode is entered by inserting a AUX device using a stereo cable with a 3.5 mm audio jack into the AUX port, or by pushing the MEDIA button located on the faceplate. Once in Media Mode, press the “Source” button on the touchscreen and select “AUX.”

## Inserting Auxiliary Device

Gently insert the Auxiliary device cable into the AUX Port. If you insert a Auxiliary device with the ignition ON, the unit will switch to AUX mode and begin to play when you insert the device cable.

## Controlling The Auxiliary Device

The control of the Auxiliary device (e.g., selecting playlists, play, fast forward, etc.) cannot be provided by the radio; use the device controls instead. Adjust the volume with the VOLUME/MUTE rotary knob, or with the volume of the attached device.

The vehicle radio unit is acting as the amplifier for audio output from the Auxiliary device. Therefore if the volume control on the Auxiliary device is set too low, there will be insufficient audio signal for the radio unit to play the music on the device.

## Track Selection

### Seek Up ►► / Seek Down ◀◀

Press and release the “Right Arrow” ►► button on the touchscreen for the next selection. Press and release the “Left Arrow” ◀◀ button on the touchscreen to return to the beginning of the current selection, or return to the beginning of the previous selection if the Disc is within the first second of the current selection.

### Fast Seek Up ►►

Press and hold the “Right Arrow” ►► button on the touchscreen and the desired mode will begin to fast forward through the current track until the button on the touchscreen is released.

### Fast Seek Down ◀◀

Press and hold the “Left Arrow” ◀◀ button on the touchscreen and the desired mode will begin to rewind through the current track until the button on the touchscreen is released.



**Info**

Press the “Info” button on the touchscreen to display the current track information. Press the “X” button on the touchscreen to cancel this feature.

**Shuffle**

Press the “Shuffle” button on the touchscreen to play the selections on the USB/iPod device in random order to provide an interesting change of pace. Press the “Shuffle” button on the touchscreen a second time to turn this feature off.

**Repeat**

Press the “Repeat” button on the touchscreen to repeat the song selection. To cancel repeat, press the “Repeat” button on the touchscreen a second time.

**Bluetooth Source**

Bluetooth Streaming Audio (BTSA) or Bluetooth Mode is entered by pairing a Bluetooth device containing music to the Uconnect system.

Before proceeding, the Bluetooth device must be paired with the Uconnect Phone to communicate with the Uconnect system.

See the “Pairing Procedure” in this manual for further details.

Once the Bluetooth device is paired to the Uconnect system, push the MEDIA button located on the faceplate. Once in Media Mode, press the “Source” button on the touchscreen and select “Bluetooth.”

**NOTE:**

For mobile phone compatibility and pairing instructions, please visit [UconnectPhone.com](http://UconnectPhone.com).

**Pairing A Bluetooth Audio Device**

To begin using your audio device, you must pair your compatible Bluetooth enabled audio device. Pairing is the process of establishing a wireless connection between a device and the Uconnect system.

**NOTE:**

- You must have Bluetooth enabled on your device to complete this procedure.
- The vehicle must be in PARK.

1. Place the ignition in the ACC or ON position.
2. Push the PHONE button on the faceplate.
  - If there is no devices currently connected with the system, a pop-up will appear asking if you would like to pair a device.
3. Select “Yes” to begin the pairing process.
4. Search for available devices on your Bluetooth enabled device.
  - Select Bluetooth and ensure it is enabled. Once enabled, the device will begin to search for Bluetooth connections.
5. If No is selected, and you still would like to pair a device, press the “Settings” button from the Uconnect Phone main screen.
  - Select “Paired Phones” then press the “Add Device” button on the touchscreen.

- Search for available devices on your Bluetooth enabled device (see below). When prompted on the device, select “Uconnect” and accept the connection request.

6. Uconnect Phone will display an in progress screen while the system is connecting.
7. When your device finds the Uconnect system, select “Uconnect.”
8. When prompted on the device, accept the connection request from Uconnect Phone.

**NOTE:**

Some devices will require you to enter the PIN number.

9. When the pairing process has successfully completed, the system will prompt you to choose whether or not this is your favorite device. Selecting “Yes” will make this device the highest priority. This device will take precedence over other paired devices within range and will connect to the Uconnect system automatically when entering the vehicle.

Only one Bluetooth device can be connected to the Uconnect system at a time. If “No” is selected, simply select “Uconnect” from the device Bluetooth screen, and the Uconnect system will reconnect to the Bluetooth device.

**SiriusXM Premier Over 160 Channels**

- Get every channel available on your satellite radio, and enjoy all you want, all in one place. Hear commercial-free music plus sports, news, talk and entertainment. Get all the premium programming, including Howard Stern, every NFL game, Oprah Radio, every MLB and NHL game, every NASCAR race, Martha Stewart and more. And get 20+ extra channels, including SiriusXM Latino, offering 20 channels of commercial free music, news, talk, comedy, sports and more dedicated to Spanish language programming.
- To access SiriusXM Satellite Radio, push the RADIO button on the faceplate and then press the “SXM” button on the touchscreen.

- SiriusXM services require subscriptions, sold separately after the 12-month trial included with the new vehicle purchase. **If you decide to continue your service at the end of your trial subscription, the plan you choose will automatically renew and bill at then-current rates until you call SiriusXM at 1-866-635-2349 for U.S. residents and 1-888-539-7474 for Canadian residents to cancel. See SiriusXM Customer Agreement for complete terms at [www.siriusxm.com](http://www.siriusxm.com) for U.S. residents and [www.siriusxm.ca](http://www.siriusxm.ca) for Canadian residents.** All fees and programming subject to change. Our satellite service is available only to those at least 18 and older in the 48 contiguous USA and D.C. Our Sirius satellite service is also available in PR (with coverage limitations). Our Internet radio service is available throughout our satellite service area and in AK and HI. ©2016 Sirius XM Radio Inc. Sirius, XM and all related marks and logos are trademarks of Sirius XM Radio Inc.



## UCONNECT 8.4/8.4 NAV

### Uconnect 8.4/8.4 NAV At A Glance



Uconnect 8.4 NAV Radio Screen



## WARNING!

ALWAYS drive safely with your hands on the wheel. You have full responsibility and assume all risks related to the use of the Uconnect features and applications in this vehicle. Only use Uconnect when it is safe to do so. Failure to do so may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.

## CAUTION!

Do NOT attach any object to the touchscreen, doing so can result in damage to the screen.

### Setting The Time

- Model 8.4 NAV synchronizes time automatically via GPS, so it should not require any time adjustment. If you do need to set the time manually, follow the instructions below for Model 8.4.
- For Model 8.4, turn the unit on, then press the time display at the top of the screen. Press “Yes.”

- If the time is not displayed at the top of the screen, press the “Settings” button on the touchscreen. In the Settings screen, press the “Clock” button on the touchscreen, then check or uncheck this option.
- Press “+” or “-” next to Set Time Hours and Set Time Minutes to adjust the time.
- If these features are not available, uncheck the Sync Time box.
- Press “X” to save your settings and exit out of the Clock Setting screen.

### Background Themes

- Screen background themes are selectable from a pre-loaded list of themes. If you’d like to set a theme, follow the instructions below.
- Press the “Settings” button on the touchscreen.
- Press the “Display” button on the touchscreen.
- Then press “Set Theme” button on the touchscreen and select a theme.

### Audio Settings

- Press of the “Audio” button on the touchscreen to activate the Audio settings screen to adjust Balance\Fade, Equalizer, and Speed Adjusted Volume.
- You can return to the Radio screen by pressing the “X” located at the top right.

### Balance/Fade

- Press the “Balance/Fade” button on the touchscreen to Balance audio between the front speakers or fade the audio between the rear and front speakers.
- Pressing the “Front,” “Rear,” “Left,” or “Right” buttons on the touchscreen or press and drag the Speaker Icon to adjust the Balance/Fade.

### Equalizer

- Press the “Equalizer” button on the touchscreen to activate the Equalizer screen.
- Press the “+” or “-” buttons on the touchscreen, or press and drag over the level bar for each of the equalizer bands. The level value, which spans between plus or minus nine, is displayed at the bottom of each of the Bands.



## Speed Adjusted Volume


Press the “Speed Adjusted Volume” button on the touchscreen to activate the Speed Adjusted Volume screen. The Speed Adjusted Volume is adjusted by pressing the volume level indicator. This alters the automatic adjustment of the audio volume with variation to vehicle speed.

## Personalized Menu Bar

The Uconnect features and services in the main menu bar are easily changed for your convenience. Simply follow these steps:



Uconnect 8.4/8.4 NAV Main Menu

1. Press the “Apps  ” button to open the App screen.
2. Press and hold, then drag the selected App to replace an existing shortcut in the main menu bar.

The replaced shortcut will now be an active App/shortcut on the main menu bar.

## Radio Mode



Uconnect 8.4 NAV Radio

- 1 — Radio Station Presets
- 2 — Toggle Between Presets
- 3 — Status Bar
- 4 — View Small Navigation Map
- 5 — Main Category Bar
- 6 — Audio Settings
- 7 — Seek Up
- 8 — Direct Tune To A Radio Station
- 9 — Seek Down
- 10 — Browse And Manage Presets
- 11 — Radio Bands

## WARNING!

ALWAYS drive safely with your hands on the wheel. You have full responsibility and assume all risks related to the use of the Uconnect features and applications in this vehicle. Only use Uconnect when it is safe to do so. Failure to do so may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.

To access the Radio mode, press the “Radio” button on the touchscreen.

### Selecting Radio Stations

Press the desired radio band (AM, FM or SXM) button on the touchscreen.

### Seek Up/Seek Down

- Press the Seek up or down arrow buttons on the touchscreen for less than two seconds to seek through radio stations.
- Press and hold either arrow button on the touchscreen for more than two seconds to bypass stations without stopping. The radio will stop at the next listenable station once the arrow button on the touchscreen is released.

### Direct Tune

- Tune directly to a radio station by pressing the “Tune” button on the screen, and entering the desired station number.

### Store Radio Presets Manually

Your radio can store 36 total preset stations, 12 presets per band (AM, FM and SXM). They are shown at the top of your radio screen. To see the 12 preset stations per band, press the arrow button on the touchscreen at the top right of the screen to toggle between the two sets of six presets.

To store a radio preset manually, follow the steps below:

1. Tune to the desired station.
2. Press and hold the desired numbered button on the touchscreen for more than two seconds or until you hear a confirmation beep.

### HD Radio

- HD Radio (available on Uconnect 8.4 NAV) operates similar to conventional radio except it allows broadcasters to transmit a high-quality digital signal.

- With an HD radio receiver, the listener is provided with a clear sound that enhances the listening experience. HD radio can also transmit data such as song title or artist.

### Media Mode



### Uconnect 8.4/8.4 NAV Media

- 1 — Repeat Music Track
- 2 — Music Track And Time
- 3 — Shuffle Music Tracks
- 4 — Music Track Information
- 5 — Show Songs Currently In Cue To Be Played
- 6 — Browse Music By
- 7 — Music Source



The controls are accessed by pressing the desired button on the touchscreen and choosing between Disc, AUX, USB, Bluetooth or SD Card.

#### **NOTE:**

Uconnect will automatically switch to the appropriate mode when something is first connected or inserted into the system.

#### **SiriusXM Premier Over 160 Channels**

Get every channel available on your satellite radio, and enjoy all you want, all in one place. Hear commercial-free music plus sports, news, talk and entertainment. Get all the premium programming, including Howard Stern, every NFL game, Oprah Radio, every MLB and NHL game, every NASCAR race, Martha Stewart and more. And get 20+ extra channels, including SiriusXM Latino, offering 20 channels of commercial free music, news, talk, comedy, sports and more dedicated to Spanish language programming.

- To access SiriusXM Satellite Radio, press the “SXM” button on the touchscreen on the main Radio screen.

The following describes features that are available when in SiriusXM Satellite Radio mode:

#### **Seek Up/Seek Down**

- Press the Seek arrow buttons on the touchscreen for less than two seconds to seek through channels in SXM mode.
- Press and hold either arrow button on the touchscreen for more than two seconds to bypass channels without stopping. The radio will stop at the next listenable channel once the arrow button on the touchscreen is released.

#### **Direct Tune**

- Tune directly to a SXM channel by pressing the “Tune” button on the touchscreen on the screen, and entering the desired station number.

#### **Tune Start**

- The Tune Start feature begins playing a song from the beginning when you tune to your favorite preset SXM channel. Tune Start can be enabled or disabled through the SiriusXM setup page.

#### **Jump**

- Automatically tells you when Traffic & Weather for a favorite city is available, and gives you the option to switch to that channel. Press “Jump” to activate the feature. After listening to Traffic and Weather, press “Jump” again to return to the previous channel.

#### **Favorite Apps**

- Activates the favorites menu. You can add up to 50 favorite artists or songs. Just press “Add Fav Artist” or “Add Fav Song” while the song is playing. You will then be alerted any time one of these songs, or works by these artists, is playing on other SiriusXM channels.

#### **Album Art**

- When arriving at a station, the Channel Art will be displayed to the left of the station information. After five seconds the Channel Art will be replaced with the Album Art (if available).

## SiriusXM Parental Controls

- You can skip or hide certain channels from view if you do not want access to them. Press the “Apps” button on the touchscreen, then the “Settings” button on the touchscreen, next press the “Sirius Setup” button on the touchscreen, then select Channel Skip. Press the box checkmark next to the channel you want skipped. They will not show up in normal usage.

- SiriusXM also offers the option to permanently block selected channels. Call (1-888-601-6297 for U.S. customers, 1-877-438-9677 for Canadian customers) and request the Family-Friendly Package.

## Browse

Lets you browse the SiriusXM channel listing or Genre listing. Favorites, Game Zone, Weather and Jump settings also provide a way to browse the SiriusXM channel list.

Browse Sub-Menu	Sub-Menu Description
All	Shows the channel listing.
Genre	Provides a list of all genres, and lets you jump to a channel within the selected genre.
Presets	Lets you scroll the list of Preset satellite channels. Press the channel, or press enter on the tune knob, to go to that channel. Press the trash can icon to delete a preset. Your presets are also shown at the top of the main satellite radio screen.
Favorites	Lets you manage artists and songs in the favorites list and configure alert settings to let you know when favorite songs or artists are playing on other channels. Also, view a list of channels airing any of your favorites.
Game Zone	Provides alerts when your favorite sports teams are starting a game which is being aired on other SiriusXM channels, or when their game score is announced. You can select and manage your Teams list here, and configure alerts.
Jump	Lets you select your favorite cities for Traffic & Weather information, which is used by the jump feature on the main satellite radio screen.



## Replay

Lets you replay up to 44 minutes of the content of the current SiriusXM channel.

Replay Option	Option Description
Play / Pause	Press to Pause content playback. Press Pause/Play again to resume playback.
Rewind / RW	Rewinds the channel content in steps of five seconds. Press and hold to rewind continuously, then release to begin playing content at that point.
Fast Forward / FW	Forwards the content, and works similarly to Rewind/RW. However, Fast Forward/FW can only be used when content has been previously rewound.
Replay Time	Displays the amount of time in the upper center of the screen by which your content lags the Live channel.
Live	Resumes playback of Live content at any time while replaying rewound content.

- SiriusXM services require subscriptions, sold separately after the 12-month trial included with the new vehicle purchase. **If you decide to continue your service at the end of your trial subscription, the plan you choose will automatically renew and bill at then-current rates until you call SiriusXM at 1-866-635-2349 for U.S. residents and 1-888-539-7474 for Canadian residents to cancel. See SiriusXM Customer Agreement for complete terms at [www.siriusxm.com](http://www.siriusxm.com) (U.S. residents) or [siriusxm.ca](http://siriusxm.ca) (Canadian residents).** All fees and programming subject to change. Our satellite service is available only to those at least 18 and older in the 48 contiguous USA and D.C. Our Sirius satellite service is also available in PR (with coverage limitations). Our Internet radio service is available throughout our satellite service area and in AK and HI. ©2016 Sirius XM Radio Inc. Sirius, XM and all related marks and logos are trademarks of Sirius XM Radio Inc.

## UCONNECT SETTINGS

The Uconnect system allows you to access Customer Programmable feature settings such as Display, Voice, Clock, Safety & Driving Assistance, Lights, Doors & Locks, Auto-On Comfort, Engine Off Options, Compass Settings, Audio, Phone/Bluetooth, SiriusXM Setup, Restore Settings, Clear Personal Data, and System Information through buttons on the touchscreen.

Push the SETTINGS button (Uconnect 5.0), or press the “Apps” button (Uconnect 8.4) located near the bottom of the touchscreen, then press the “Settings” button on the touchscreen to access the Settings screen. When making a selection, scroll up or down until the preferred setting is highlighted, then press the preferred setting until a checkmark appears next to the setting, showing that setting has been selected.

The following feature settings are available:

- Display
- Voice
- Clock
- Safety & Driving Assistance
- Lights
- Doors & Locks
- Auto-On Comfort
- Compass (Uconnect 5.0)
- Engine Off Options
- Audio
- Phone/Bluetooth
- SiriusXM Setup
- Restore Settings
- Clear Personal Data
- System Information

#### NOTE:

Depending on the vehicles options, feature settings may vary.

Refer to “Uconnect Settings/Customer Programmable Features” in “Multimedia” in the Owner’s Manual on [www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals/) for further information.

## IPOD/USB/SD CARD/ MEDIA PLAYER CONTROL



**Uconnect Media Hub**

- 1 — SD Card Port
- 2 — AUX Jack
- 3 — USB Port

There are many ways to play music from MP3 players, USB devices, or SD Cards through your vehicle's sound system. Press your Media button on the touchscreen to begin.

### Audio Jack (AUX)

- The AUX allows a device to be plugged into the radio and utilize the vehicle's sound system, using a 3.5 mm audio cable, to amplify the source and play through the vehicle speakers.
- Pressing the “AUX” button on the touchscreen will change the mode to auxiliary device if the audio jack is connected, allowing the music from your device to be heard through the vehicle's speakers. To activate the AUX, plug in the audio jack.
- The functions of the device are controlled using the device buttons. The volume may be controlled using the radio or device.
- To route the audio cable out of the center console, use the access cut out in the front of the console.



## USB Port

- Connect your compatible device using a USB cable into the USB Port. USB Memory sticks with audio files can also be used. Audio from the device can be played on the vehicle's sound system while providing metadata (artist, track title, album, etc.) information on the radio display.
- When connected, the compatible USB device can be controlled using the radio or Steering Wheel Audio Controls to play, skip to the next or previous track, browse, and list the contents.
- The battery charges when plugged into the USB port (if supported by the specific device).
- To route the USB cable out of the center console, use the access cut out.

## NOTE:

When connecting your device for the first time, the system may take several minutes to read your music, depending on the number of files. For example, the system will take approximately five minutes for every 1,000 songs loaded on the device. Also during the reading process, the Shuffle and Browse functions will be disabled. This process is needed to ensure the full use of your features and only happens the first time it is connected. After the first time, the reading process of your device will take considerably less time unless changes are made or new songs are added to the playlist.

## SD Card

- Play songs stored on an SD card inserted into the SD card slot.
- Song playback can be controlled using the radio or Steering Wheel Audio Controls to play, skip to the next or previous track, browse, and list the contents.

## Bluetooth Streaming Audio

If using a Bluetooth equipped device you may also be able to stream music to your vehicle's sound system. Your connected device must be Bluetooth compatible and paired with your system (see Uconnect Phone for pairing instructions). You can access the music from your connected Bluetooth device by pressing the Bluetooth button on the touchscreen while in Media mode.

## NAVIGATION

- The information in the section below is only applicable if you have the 8.4 NAV system or the Navigation has been activated on your 8.4 system.
- If you have a Uconnect 8.4 system your radio is "Navigation-Ready," and can be equipped with Navigation at an extra cost. Please see your dealer for details.



Press the “Nav” button on the touchscreen in the menu bar to access the Navigation system.

### Changing The Navigation Voice Prompt Volume

1. Press the “View Map” button on the touchscreen from the Nav Main Menu.
2. With the map displayed, press the “Settings” button on the touchscreen in the lower right area of the screen.
3. In the Settings menu, press the “Guidance” button on the touchscreen.
4. In the Guidance menu, adjust the Nav Volume by pressing the “+” or “-” buttons on the touchscreen.



#### Uconnect 8.4 NAV Navigation

- 1 — Find A Destination
- 2 — View Map
- 3 — Information
- 4 — Emergency
- 5 — Navigation Settings
- 6 — Stop A Route
- 7 — Detour A Route
- 8 — Repeat Route Guidance Prompt

### Finding Points Of Interest

- From the main Navigation menu, press the “Where To?” button on the touchscreen, then press the “Points of Interest” button on the touchscreen.
- Select a Category and then a subcategory, if necessary.
- Select your destination and press the “Yes” button on the touchscreen.

### Finding A Place By Spelling The Name

- From the Main Navigation Menu press the “Where to?” button on the touchscreen, press the “Points of Interest” button on the touchscreen, then press the “Spell Name” button on the touchscreen.
- Enter the name of your destination.
- Press the “List” button on the touchscreen.
- Select your destination and press the “Yes” button on the touchscreen.



## One-Step Voice Destination Entry

- Enter a navigation destination without taking your hands off the wheel.
- Just push the Uconnect Voice Command (Ⓜ️VR button on the steering wheel, wait for the beep and say something like, "Find Address 800 Chrysler Drive Auburn Hills MI."

### NOTE:

Destination entry is not available while your vehicle is in motion. However, you can also use Voice Commands to enter an address while moving. Refer to "Uconnect Voice Recognition Quick Tips" within this chapter for further information.

## Setting Your Home Location

- Press the "Nav" button on the touchscreen in the menu bar to access the Navigation system and the Main Navigation menu.
- Press the "Where To?" button on the touchscreen, then press the "Go Home" button on the touchscreen.

- You may enter your address directly, use your current location as your home address, or choose from recently found locations.
- To delete your Home location (or other saved locations) so you can save a new Home location, press the "Where To?" button on the touchscreen from the Main Navigation menu, then press the "Go Home" button on the touchscreen, and in the Yes screen press the "Options" button on the touchscreen. In the Options menu press the "Clear Home" button on the touchscreen. Set a new Home location by following the previous instructions.

## Go Home

- A Home location must be saved in the system. From the Main Navigation menu, press the "Where To?" button on the touchscreen, then press the "Go Home" button on the touchscreen.



Uconnect 8.4 NAV Map

- 1 — Distance To Next Turn
- 2 — Next Turn Street
- 3 — Estimated Time of Arrival
- 4 — Zoom In And Out
- 5 — Your Location On The Map
- 6 — Navigation Main Menu
- 7 — Current Street Location
- 8 — Navigation Routing Options

Your route is marked with a blue line on the map. If you depart from the original route, your route is recalculated. A speed limit icon could appear as you travel on major roadways.

## Adding A Stop

- To add a stop you must be navigating a route.
- Press the “Menu” button on the touchscreen to return to the Main Navigation menu.
- Press the “Where To?” button on the touchscreen, then search for the extra stop. When another location has been selected, you can choose to cancel your previous route, add as the first destination or add as the last destination.
- Press the desired selection and press the “Yes” button on the touchscreen.

## Taking A Detour

- To take a detour you must be navigating a route.
- Press the “Detour” button on the touchscreen.

### NOTE:

If the route you are currently taking is the only reasonable option, the device may not calculate a detour. For more information, see your Uconnect Owner's Manual Supplement.

## UCONNECT PHONE

### Operation



Uconnect 5.0 Phone Menu

- 1 — Call/Redial/Hold
- 2 — Mobile Phone Signal Strength
- 3 — Currently Paired Mobile Phone
- 4 — Mobile Phone Battery Life
- 5 — Mute Microphone
- 6 — Transfer To/From Uconnect System
- 7 — Uconnect Phone Settings Menu
- 8 — Text Messaging
- 9 — Direct Dial Pad
- 10 — Recent Call Log
- 11 — Browse Phone Book
- 12 — End Call

### NOTE:

The Browse Phone Book button contains 9-1-1





**Uconnect 8.4/8.4 NAV Phone Menu**

- 1 — Favorite Contacts
- 2 — Mobile Phone Battery Life
- 3 — Currently Paired Mobile Phone
- 4 — Mobile Phone Signal Strength
- 5 — Mute Microphone
- 6 — Transfer To/From Uconnect System
- 7 — Conference Call\*
- 8 — Manage Paired Mobile Phones
- 9 — Text Messaging\*\*
- 10 — Direct Dial Pad
- 11 — Recent Call Log
- 12 — Browse Phone Book Entries
- 13 — End Call
- 14 — Call/Redial/Hold
- 15 — Do Not Disturb

## 16 — Reply with Text Message

\* — Conference call feature only available on GSM mobile devices

\*\* — Text messaging feature not available on all mobile phones (requires Bluetooth MAP profile)


### NOTE:

The Browse Phone Book Entries button contains 9-1-1

### Uconnect Phone Features

The Uconnect Phone feature enables you to place and receive hands-free mobile phone calls. Drivers can also place mobile phone calls using their voice or by using the buttons on the touchscreen (see Voice Command section).

The hands-free calling feature is made possible through Bluetooth technology — the global standard that enables different electronic devices to connect to each other wirelessly.

If the Uconnect Phone Button  exists on your steering wheel, you then have the Uconnect Phone features.


### NOTE:

- The Uconnect Phone requires a mobile phone equipped with the Bluetooth Hands-Free Profile, Version 1.0 or higher.
- Most mobile phones/devices are compatible with the Uconnect system, however some mobile phones/devices may not be equipped with all of the required features to utilize all of the Uconnect system features.
- For Uconnect Customer Care:
  - U.S. residents visit [UconnectPhone.com](http://UconnectPhone.com) or call 1-877-855-8400.

### Uconnect Phone (Bluetooth Hands Free Calling)

The Uconnect Phone feature enables you to place and receive hands-free mobile phone calls. Drivers can also place mobile phone calls using their voice or by using the buttons on the touchscreen (see Voice Command section).

The hands-free calling feature is made possible through Bluetooth technology — the global standard that enables different electronic devices to connect to each other wirelessly.

If the Uconnect Phone Button  exists on your steering wheel, you then have the Uconnect Phone features.

**NOTE:**

- The Uconnect Phone requires a mobile phone equipped with the Bluetooth Hands-Free Profile, Version 1.0 or higher.
- Most mobile phones/devices are compatible with the Uconnect system, however some mobile phones/devices may not be equipped with all of the required features to utilize all of the Uconnect system features.
- For Uconnect Customer Care:
  - U.S. residents visit [UconnectPhone.com](http://UconnectPhone.com) or call 1-877-855-8400.

### Pairing (Wirelessly Connecting) Your Mobile Phone To The Uconnect System

Mobile phone pairing is the process of establishing a wireless connection between a cellular phone and the Uconnect system.

**NOTE:**

- To use the Uconnect Phone feature, you first must determine if your mobile phone and software are compatible with the Uconnect system. Please visit [UconnectPhone.com](http://UconnectPhone.com) for complete mobile phone compatibility information.
- Mobile phone pairing is not available while the vehicle is in motion.
- A maximum of ten mobile phones can be paired to the Uconnect system.

### Start Pairing Procedure On The Radio

#### Uconnect 5.0:



#### Uconnect 5.0

1. Place the ignition in the ACC or ON position.
2. Press the “Phone” button.
3. Select “Settings.”
4. Select “Paired Phones.”
5. Select “Add device.”
  - Uconnect Phone will display an “In progress” screen while the system is connecting.



**Uconnect 8.4, 8.4 NAV:****Uconnect 8.4 & 8.4 NAV**

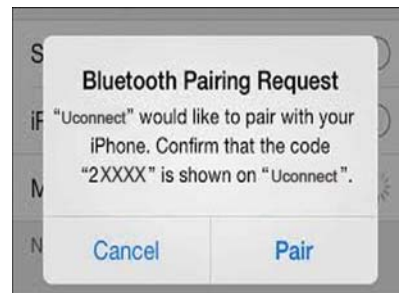
1. Place the ignition in the ACC or ON position.
2. Press the “Phone” button in the Menu Bar on the touchscreen.
3. Select “Settings.”
4. Select “Paired Phones.”
5. Select “Add device.”
  - Uconnect Phone will display an “In progress” screen while the system is connecting.

**Pair Your iPhone****Bluetooth On/Uconnect Device**

To search for available devices on your Bluetooth enabled iPhone:

1. Press the Settings button.
2. Select Bluetooth.
  - Ensure the Bluetooth feature is enabled. Once enabled, the mobile phone will begin to search for Bluetooth connections.

3. When your mobile phone finds the Uconnect system, select “Uconnect”.

**Complete The iPhone Pairing Procedure****Pairing Request**

1. When prompted on the mobile phone, accept the connection request from Uconnect Phone.

**NOTE:**

Some mobile phones will require you to enter the PIN number.

## Select The iPhone's Priority Level

When the pairing process has successfully completed, the system will prompt you to choose whether or not this is your favorite mobile phone. Selecting “Yes” will make this mobile phone the highest priority. This mobile phone will take precedence over other paired mobile phones within range and will connect to the Uconnect system automatically when entering the vehicle. Only one mobile phone and/or one Bluetooth audio device can be connected to the Uconnect system at a time. If “No” is selected, simply select “Uconnect” from the mobile phone/audio device Bluetooth screen, and the Uconnect system will reconnect to the Bluetooth device.

## Pair Your Android Device



### Uconnect Device

To search for available devices on your Bluetooth enabled Android Device:

1. Push the Menu button.
2. Select Settings.
3. Select Connections.

4. Turn Bluetooth setting to “On.”

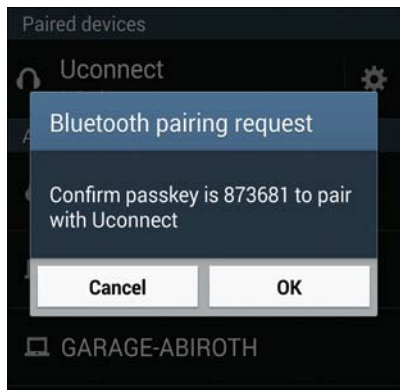
- Ensure the Bluetooth feature is enabled. Once enabled, the mobile phone will begin to search for Bluetooth connections.

5. Once your mobile phone finds the Uconnect system, select “Uconnect”.

- You may be prompted by your mobile phone to download the phonebook, check “Do Not Ask Again” to automatically download the phonebook. This is so you can make calls by saying the name of your contact.



## Complete The Android Pairing Procedure



**Pairing Request**


1. Confirm the passkey shown on the mobile phone matches the passkey shown on the Uconnect system then accept the Bluetooth pairing request.

### NOTE:

Some mobile phones require the PIN to be entered manually, enter the PIN number shown on the Uconnect screen.

## Select The Android Mobile Phone's Priority Level

When the pairing process has successfully completed, the system will prompt you to choose whether or not this is your favorite mobile phone. Selecting “Yes” will make this mobile phone the highest priority. This mobile phone will take precedence over other paired mobile phones within range and will connect to the Uconnect system automatically when entering the vehicle. Only one mobile phone and/or one Bluetooth audio device can be connected to the Uconnect system at a time. If “No” is selected, simply select “Uconnect” from the mobile phone/audio device Bluetooth screen, and the Uconnect system will reconnect to the Bluetooth device.

You are now ready to make hands-free calls. Press the Uconnect “Phone” button  on your steering wheel to begin.

### NOTE:

Refer to [UconnectPhone.com](http://UconnectPhone.com) website for additional information on mobile phone pairing and for a list of compatible phones.

## Common Phone Commands (Examples)

- “Call John Smith”
- “Call John Smith mobile”
- “Dial 1 248 555 1212”
- “Redial”

## Mute (Or Unmute) Microphone During Call

- During a call, press the “Mute” button on the Phone main screen to mute and unmute the call.

## Transfer Ongoing Call Between Handset And Vehicle

- During an on-going call, press the “Transfer” button on the Phone main screen to transfer an on-going call between handset and vehicle.

## Phonebook

The Uconnect system will automatically sync your phonebook from your paired phone, if this feature is supported by your phone. Phonebook contacts are updated each time that the phone is connected.




If your phone book entries do not appear, check the settings on your phone. Some phones require you to enable this feature manually.

- Your phonebook can be browsed on the Uconnect system touchscreen, but editing can only be done on your phone. To browse, press the “Phone” button on the touchscreen, then the “Phonebook” button on the touchscreen.


Favorite phonebook entries can be saved as Favorites for quicker access. Favorites are shown at the top of the main phone screen.

### Voice Command Tips

- Speaking complete names (i.e; Call John Doe vs. Call John) will result in greater system accuracy.
- You can “link” commands together for faster results. Say “Call John Doe, mobile,” for example.

- If you are listening to available voice command options, you do not have to listen to the entire list. When you hear the command that you need, push the  button on the steering wheel, wait for the beep and say your command.




### Changing The Volume

- Start a dialogue by pushing the Phone button , then say a command for example - "Help".
- Use the radio VOLUME/MUTE rotary knob to adjust the volume to a comfortable level while the Uconnect system is speaking.

#### NOTE:

The volume setting for Uconnect is different than the audio system.

#### NOTE:

To access help, push the Uconnect Phone button  on the steering wheel and say "help." Push the Uconnect Phone Pickup button  or the VR button  and say "cancel" to cancel the help session.

### Using Do Not Disturb

With Do Not Disturb, you can disable notifications from incoming calls and texts, allowing you to keep your eyes on the road and hands on the wheel. For your convenience there is a counter display to keep track of your missed calls and text messages while you were using Do Not Disturb.

Do Not Disturb can automatically reply with a text message, a call or both, when declining an incoming call and send it to voicemail.

Automatic reply messages can be:

- “I am driving right now, I will get back to you shortly.”
- Create a custom auto reply message up to 160 characters.

While in Do Not Disturb, Conference Call can be selected so you can still place a second call without being interrupted by incoming calls.

#### NOTE:

- Only the beginning of your custom message will be seen on the touchscreen.
- Reply with text message is not compatible with iPhones.



- Auto reply with text message is only available on phones that support Bluetooth MAP.

### Incoming Text Messages

After pairing your Uconnect system with a Bluetooth enabled mobile device with the Message Access Profile (MAP), the Uconnect system can announce a new incoming text message and read it to you over the vehicle's audio system.

#### NOTE:

Only incoming text messages received during the current ignition cycle can be viewed/read.

#### NOTE:

All incoming text messages received during the current ignition cycle will be deleted from the Uconnect system when the ignition is turned to the Off position.

#### To enable incoming text messaging: iPhone

1. Press the settings button on the mobile phone.

2. Select Bluetooth.
  - Ensure Bluetooth is enabled, and the mobile phone is paired to the Uconnect system.
3. Select ⓘ located under DEVICES next to Uconnect.
4. Turn "Show Notifications" to On.

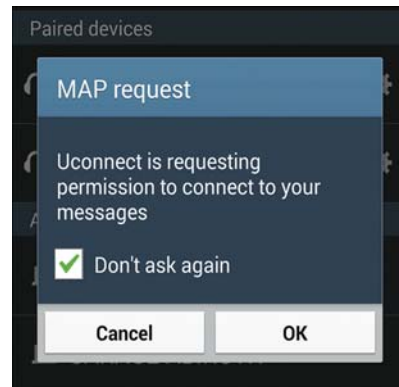


Enable iPhone Incoming Text Messages

#### Android Devices

1. Push the Menu button on the mobile phone.

2. Select Settings.
3. Select Connections.
4. Turn "Show Notifications" to On.
  - A pop up will appear asking you to accept a request for permission to connect to your messages. Select "Don't ask again" and press OK.



Enable Android Device Incoming Text Messages

## Voice Text Reply (Not Compatible With iPhone)


### NOTE:

Voice texting reply and voice texting features require a compatible mobile device enabled with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP). iPhone, and some other smartphones, may not entirely support Bluetooth MAP. Visit UconnectPhone.com for the latest system and device compatibility.

- Due to the extremely large number of mobile phone manufacturers, your mobile device may not be listed. For further assistance, contact Uconnect Customer Care @ 1-877-855-8400 for U.S. residents or, 1-800-465-2001 (English) / 1-800-387-9983 (French) for Canadian residents.

Once your Uconnect system is paired with a compatible mobile device, the system can announce a new incoming text message, and read it to you over the vehicle audio system. You can reply to the message using Voice Recognition by selecting, or saying, one of the 18 pre-defined messages.

### Here's How

1. Push the Uconnect Phone button  and wait for the beep, then say “reply.” Uconnect will give the following prompt: “Please say the message you would like to send.”
2. Wait for the beep and say one of the pre-defined messages. (If you are not sure, you can say “help”). Uconnect will then read the pre-defined messages allowed.
3. As soon as you hear the message you would like to send, you can interrupt the list of prompts by pushing the Uconnect phone button and saying the phrase. Uconnect will confirm the message by reading it back to you.
4. Push the Phone button and say “Send.”

PRE-DEFINED VOICE TEXT REPLY RESPONSES		
Yes.	Stuck in traffic.	See you later.
No.	Start without me.	I'll be late.
Okay.	Where are you?	I will be <5, 10, 15,...etc.> minutes late.
Call me.	Are you there yet?	
I'll call you later.	I need directions.	See you in <5, 10, 15,...etc.> of minutes.
I'm on my way.	Can't talk right now.	Thanks.
I'm lost.		

### NOTE:

To make the SMS voice reading function available, the SMS notification option on phone must be enabled; this option is usually available on the phone, in the Bluetooth connections menu for a device registered as Uconnect. After enabling this function on the mobile phone, it must be disconnected and reconnected with the Uconnect system in order to make it effective.



## Helpful Tips And Common Questions To Improve Bluetooth Performance With Your Uconnect System

### Mobile Phone won't reconnect to system after pairing:

- Set mobile phone to auto-connect or trusted device in mobile phone Bluetooth settings (Blackberry devices).
- Perform a factory reset on your mobile phone. Refer to your mobile phone manufacturer or cellular provider for instructions.
- Many mobile phones do not automatically reconnect after being restarted (hard reboot). Your mobile phone can still be connected manually. Close all applications that may be operating (refer to mobile phone manufacturer's instructions), and follow "Pairing (Wirelessly Connecting) Your Mobile Phone To The Uconnect System".

### Mobile Phone won't pair to system:

- Perform a hard reset in the mobile phone by removing the battery (if removable — see your mobile phone's owner manual).
- Delete pairing history in mobile phone and Uconnect system; usually found in phone's Bluetooth connection settings.
- Verify you are selecting "Uconnect" in the discovered Bluetooth devices on your mobile phone.
- If your vehicle system generates a pin code the default is 0000.

### Mobile Phonebook didn't download:

- Check "Do not ask again," then accept the "phonebook download" request on your mobile phone.
- Up to 5,000 contact names with four numbers per contact will transfer to the Uconnect 8.4/8.4 NAV system phonebook.
- Up to 2,000 contact names with six numbers per contact will transfer to the Uconnect 5.0 system phonebook.

### Text messaging won't work:

- Check "Do not ask again," then accept the "connect to your messages" request on your mobile phone.
- Verify that your mobile phone has the Bluetooth feature (Message Access Profile).

### Can't make a conference call:

- CDMA (Code-Division Multiple Access) carriers do not support conference calling. Refer to your mobile phone user's manual for further information.

### Making calls while connected to AUX:

- Plugging in your mobile phone to AUX while connected to Bluetooth will disable Hands-Free Calling. Do not make calls while your mobile phone is plugged into the AUX jack.

## General Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules and RSS 210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following conditions:

- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
- This device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.



## Uconnect VOICE RECOGNITION QUICK TIPS

### Introducing Uconnect


Start using Uconnect Voice Recognition with these helpful quick tips. It provides the key Voice Commands and tips you need to know to control your Uconnect 5.0 or 8.4/8.4 NAV system.

#### Uconnect 5.0



Uconnect 5.0

## Uconnect 8.4/8.4 NAV

If you see the  icon on your touchscreen, you have the Uconnect 8.4 NAV system. If not, you have a Uconnect 8.4 system.



Uconnect 8.4 NAV



**WARNING!**

ALWAYS drive safely with your hands on the wheel. You have full responsibility and assume all risks related to the use of the Uconnect features and applications in this vehicle. Only use Uconnect when it is safe to do so. Failure to do so may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.

**Get Started**


1. Visit **UconnectPhone.com** to check device and feature compatibility and to find device pairing instructions.
2. Reduce background noise. Wind and passenger conversations are examples of noise that may impact recognition.
3. Speak clearly at a normal pace and volume while facing straight ahead. The microphone is positioned on the rearview mirror and aimed at the driver.


4. Each time you give a Voice Command, you must first push either the VR or Phone button, wait until **after** the beep, then say your Voice Command.
5. You can interrupt the help message or system prompts by pushing the VR or Phone button and saying a Voice Command from current category.

All you need to control your Uconnect system with your voice are the buttons on your steering wheel.




**Uconnect VR And Phone Buttons**

1. Uconnect Phone Button  , Push to initiate, answer, or end a phone call, send or receive a text.

2. Uconnect Voice Recognition Button  .
  - a. Short Press: **Push and release** the VR button to begin Radio, Climate, Navigation, and other embedded functions. After you hear the single beep, say a command.
  - b. Long Press: **Push and hold continuously for a few milliseconds, then release** the VR button for Siri functions. After you hear the familiar Siri "double beep," say a command.
3. Phone Hang Up Button.

**Basic Voice Commands**

The basic Voice Commands below can be given at any point while using your Uconnect system.

Push the VR button  . After the beep, say:

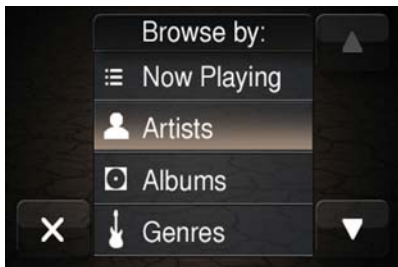
- **Cancel** to stop a current voice session
- **Help** to hear a list of suggested Voice Commands
- **Repeat** to listen to the system prompts again





- **Play artist** Beethoven; **Play album** Greatest Hits; **Play song** Moonlight Sonata; **Play genre** Classical

**TIP:** Press the Browse button on the touch-screen to see all of the music on your iPod or USB device. Your Voice Command must match **exactly** how the artist, album, song and genre information is displayed.



Uconnect 5.0 Media



Uconnect 8.4/8.4 NAV Media

### Phone


Making and answering hands-free phone calls is easy with Uconnect. When the Phone-book button is illuminated on your touch-screen, your system is ready.

U.S. residents can visit:

- [UconnectPhone.com](http://UconnectPhone.com) for device compatibility and pairing instructions.

Push the Phone button . After the beep, say one of the following commands...

- **Call** John Smith
- **Dial** 123-456-7890 and follow the system prompts
- **Redial** (call previous outgoing phone number)
- **Call back** (call previous incoming phone number)

**TIP:** When providing a Voice Command, push the Phone button  and say **“Call,”** then pronounce the name **exactly** as it appears in your phone book. When a contact has multiple phone numbers, you can say **“Call** John Smith **work.”**





Uconnect 5.0 Phone



Uconnect 8.4/8.4 NAV Phone

## Voice Text Reply

Uconnect will announce **incoming** text messages. Push the Phone button  and say **Listen**. (Must have compatible device paired to Uconnect system.)

1. Once an incoming text message is read to you, push the Phone button  . After the beep, say: **Reply**.
2. Listen to the Uconnect prompts. After the beep, repeat one of the pre-defined messages and follow the system prompts.

PRE-DEFINED VOICE TEXT REPLY RESPONSES		
Yes.	Stuck in traffic.	See you later.
No.	Start without me.	I'll be late.
Okay.	Where are you?	I will be <number> minutes late.
Call me.	Are you there yet?	
I'll call you later.	I need directions.	See you in <number> minutes.
I'm on my way.	Can't talk right now.	
I'm lost.		Thanks.

**TIP:** Your device must have the full implementation of the **Message Access Profile (MAP)** to take advantage of this feature. For details about MAP, visit [UconnectPhone.com](http://UconnectPhone.com) for U.S. residents. Apple iPhone iOS6 or later supports reading **incoming** text messages only. To enable this feature on your Apple iPhone, follow these four simple steps:



iPhone Notification Setting


1. Select "Settings."
2. Select "Bluetooth."
3. Select The (i) For The Paired Vehicle.
4. Turn On "Show Notifications."

**TIP:** Voice Text Reply is not compatible with iPhone, but if your vehicle is equipped with Siri Eyes Free, you can use your voice to send a text message.



## Climate (8.4/8.4 NAV)

Too hot? Too cold? Adjust vehicle temperatures hands-free and keep everyone comfortable while you keep moving ahead. (If vehicle is equipped with climate control.)

Push the VR button . After the beep, say one of the following commands:

- **Set driver temperature to 70 degrees**
- **Set passenger temperature to 70 degrees**


**TIP:** Voice Command for Climate may only be used to adjust the interior temperature of your vehicle. Voice Command will not work to adjust the heated seats or steering wheel (if equipped).




Uconnect 8.4/8.4 NAV Climate

## Navigation (8.4/8.4 NAV)

The Uconnect navigation feature helps you save time and become more productive when you know exactly how to get to where you want to go. (Navigation is optional on the Uconnect 8.4 system. See your dealer to activate navigation at any time.)

1. To enter a destination, push the VR button . After the beep, say:
  - For the 8.4 Uconnect System, say: **Enter state.**
  - For the 8.4 NAV Uconnect System, say: **Find Address 800 Chrysler Drive Auburn Hills, Michigan.**

2. Then follow the system prompts.

**TIP:** To start a Point Of Interest (POI) search, push the VR button . After the beep, say “**Find nearest** coffee shop.”



Uconnect 8.4/8.4 NAV Navigation

## Uconnect Access – If Equipped (8.4/8.4 NAV)

### WARNING!

ALWAYS obey traffic laws and pay attention to the road. Some Uconnect Access services, including 9-1-1 and Assist, will NOT work without an operable 1X(voice/data) or 3G(data) network connection.

### NOTE:

Your vehicle may be transmitting data as authorized by the subscriber.

An included trial and/or subscription is required to take advantage of the Uconnect Access services in the next section of this guide. To register with Uconnect Access, press the “Apps” button on the 8.4-inch touchscreen to get started. Detailed registration instructions can be found on the next page.

**NOTE:**



- If your vehicle is not connected to an operable 1X (voice/data) or 3G (data) network, the signal strength bars on the “Apps” button on the touchscreen will show a single bar and a prohibition symbol to indicate your vehicle is not connected to an operable 1X (voice/data) or 3G (data) network.

- Uconnect Access is available only on properly equipped vehicles purchased within the continental United States, Alaska and Hawaii when connected to an operable 1X (voice/data) or 3G (data) network. Services can only be used where coverage is available; see coverage map for details.

 CALL  
9-1-1 Call

 Remote Door Lock/Unlock

 Remote Vehicle Start\*\*

 Vehicle Finder

 Remote Horn and Lights

 Roadside Assistance Call

 Theft Alarm Notification

 Stolen Vehicle Assistance

 Yelp Search

 Voice Texting

 Send ‘N Go

Vehicle Health Reports\*\*

Vehicle Health Alert\*\*

 3G Wi-Fi Hotspot\*\*\*

\*\*If vehicle is properly equipped.

\*\*\*Extra charges apply.

**Register (8.4/8.4 NAV)**

To unlock the full potential of Uconnect Access in your vehicle, you first need to register with Uconnect Access.


1. Push the ASSIST button on your rearview mirror.



**Uconnect 8.4 Registration**



2. Press the “Uconnect Care” button on the touchscreen.
3. A helpful Uconnect Care Agent will register your vehicle and handle all of the details.

**Signing up is easy!** Simply follow the steps above. Or, press the “Apps ” button on the touchscreen, then select the Uconnect registration app to “Register By Web” to complete the process using your device or computer.

For further information, please visit [www.driveuconnect.com](http://www.driveuconnect.com)

### Vehicle Health Alert

Your vehicle will send you an email alert if it senses a problem under the hood with one of your vehicles key systems. For further information go to the Mopar Owner Connect website at [moparownerconnect.com](http://moparownerconnect.com).

### Mobile App (8.4/8.4 NAV)

You’re only a few steps away from using remote commands and sending a destination from your phone to your vehicle.



Mobile App


To use the Uconnect Access Mobile App::

- Once you have registered your Uconnect Access services, download the Uconnect Access app to your mobile device. Use your Owner Account login and password to open the app.

- Once on the “Remote” screen, you can begin using Remote Door Lock/Unlock, Remote Vehicle Start, and activate your horn and lights remotely, if equipped.
- Press the “Location” button on the bottom menu bar of the app to bring up a map to locate your vehicle or send a location to your Uconnect Navigation using Vehicle Finder and Send ‘N Go , if equipped.
- Press the “Settings” side menu in the upper left corner of the app to bring up app settings

### Voice Texting (8.4/8.4 NAV)

You must be registered with Uconnect Access and have a compatible MAP – enabled device to use your voice to send a personalized text message. (Not compatible with iPhone.)

1. To send a message, push the Phone button  . After the beep, say: **“Send message to John Smith.”**
2. Listen to the prompt. After the beep, dictate the message you would like to send. Wait for Uconnect to process your message.

- The Uconnect system will repeat your message and provide a variety of options to add to, delete, send or hear the message again. After the beep, tell Uconnect what you'd like to do. For instance, if you're happy with your message, after the beep, say "Send."

You must be registered with Uconnect Access and have a compatible MAP – enabled device to use your voice to send a personalized text message. For details about MAP, visit [UconnectPhone.com](http://UconnectPhone.com). Apple iPhone iOS6 or later supports reading incoming text messages only.

To enable this feature on your Apple iPhone, follow these 4 simple steps:



**iPhone Notification Setting**

- Select "Settings."
- Select "Bluetooth."
- Select The (i) For The Paired Vehicle.
- Turn On "Show Notifications."

**TIP:**

- Voice Texting is not compatible with iPhone, but if your vehicle is equipped with Siri Eyes Free, you can use your voice to send a text message.
- Messages are limited to 140 characters.
- The Messaging button on the touchscreen must be illuminated to use the feature.

**Yelp (8.4/8.4 NAV)**

Once registered with Uconnect Access, you can use your voice to search for the most popular places or things around you.

- Push the VR button (Ⓜ️VR). After the beep, say: **Launch YELP.**
- Once the YELP home screen appears on the touchscreen, push the VR button (Ⓜ️VR), then say: **YELP search.**
- Listen to the system prompts and after the beep, tell Uconnect the place or business that you'd like Uconnect to find.



**TIP:** Once you perform a search, you can reorganize the results by selecting either the Best Match, Rating or Distance tab on the top of the touchscreen display.



Yelp

### SiriusXM Travel Link (8.4/8.4 NAV – US Market Only)

Need to find a gas station, view local movie listings, check a sports score or the 5 - day weather forecast? SiriusXM Travel Link is a suite of services that brings a wealth of information right to your Uconnect 8.4 NAV system. (Not available for 8.4 system.)

Push the VR button (VR). After the beep, say one of the following commands:

- **Show fuel prices**
- **Show 5 - day weather forecast**
- **Show extended weather**

**TIP:** Traffic alerts are not accessible with Voice Command.



SiriusXM Travel Link

### Siri Eyes Free – If Equipped

Siri lets you use your voice to send text messages, select media, place phone calls and much more. Siri uses your natural language to understand what you mean and will respond back to confirm your requests. The system is designed to keep your eyes on the road and your hands on the wheel by letting Siri help you perform useful tasks.

To enable Siri push and hold, then release the Uconnect Voice Recognition (VR) button on the steering wheel. After you hear a double beep you can ask Siri to play podcasts and music, get directions, read text messages and many other useful requests.

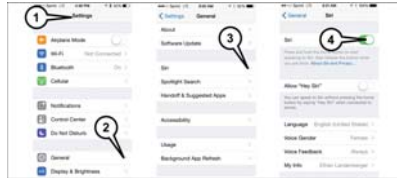


Siri Eyes Free Available



## Getting Started

Ensure Siri is enabled on your iPhone.



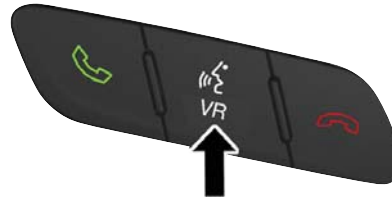
### Enable Siri

- 1 — Select Settings On Your iPhone
- 2 — Select General
- 3 — Select Siri
- 4 — Enable Siri

1. Pair your Siri enabled device to the vehicle's sound system. Refer to "Uconnect Phone" in "Multimedia" for a detailed pairing procedure.



### Pair Your iPhone



### VR/Siri Button

2. Push and Hold, then release the Uconnect Voice Recognition (VR) button (ⓂVR on the steering wheel). After you hear the familiar Siri "double beep," say a command.

### NOTE:

A **push and release** of the ⓂVR button will start normal embedded VR functions. The **push and hold, then release** of the ⓂVR button will start Siri functions.

3. After the double beep, begin speaking to Siri.

Examples of Siri commands and questions:

- "Play Rolling Stones"
- "Send text message to John"
- "Read text message from Sarah"
- "Take me to the nearest coffee shop"



**NOTE:**

- Speak clearly at a normal pace and volume while facing straight ahead to ensure your command is understood.
- Siri is available on iPhone 4S and later.



Siri Eyes Free

**Do Not Disturb**

With Do Not Disturb, you can disable notifications from incoming calls and texts, allowing you to keep your eyes on the road and hands on the wheel. For your convenience, there is a counter display to keep track of your missed calls and text messages while you were using Do Not Disturb.

Do Not Disturb can automatically reply with a text message, a call or both, when declining an incoming call and send it to voicemail.

Automatic reply messages can be:

- “I am driving right now, I will get back to you shortly.”
- Create a custom auto reply message up to 160 characters.

**NOTE:**

Only the first 25 characters can be seen on the touchscreen while typing a custom message.

While in Do Not Disturb, Conference Call can be selected so you can still place a second call without being interrupted by incoming calls.

**NOTE:**

- Reply with text message is not compatible with iPhones.
- Auto reply with text message is only available on phones that support Bluetooth MAP.

**Additional Information**

© 2016 FCA US LLC. All rights reserved. Mopar and Uconnect are registered trademarks and Mopar Owner Connect is a trademark of FCA US LLC. Android is a trademark of Google Inc. SiriusXM and all related marks and logos are trademarks of SiriusXM Radio Inc. Yelp, Yelp logo, Yelp burst and related marks are registered trademarks of Yelp.

For Uconnect system support, call: 1-877-855-8400 (24 hours a day 7 days a week) or visit [DriveUconnect.com](http://DriveUconnect.com).

Uconnect Access services support, call: 1-855-792-4241 Please have your Uconnect Security PIN ready when you call.

# CUSTOMER ASSISTANCE

## **SUGGESTIONS FOR OBTAINING SERVICE FOR YOUR VEHICLE . . .330**

- Prepare For The Appointment. . . . .330
- Prepare A List . . . . .330
- Be Reasonable With Requests . . . . .330

## **IF YOU NEED ASSISTANCE . . .330**

- FCA US LLC Customer Center . . . . .330
- FCA Canada Inc. Customer Center . . . .331

- In Mexico Contact. . . . .331
- Puerto Rico And U.S. Virgin Islands . . .331
- Customer Assistance For The Hearing Or Speech Impaired (TDD/TTY). . . . .331
- Service Contract . . . . .331

## **WARRANTY INFORMATION . . .332**

## **MOPAR PARTS . . . . .332**

## **REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS . . . . .332**

- In The 50 United States And Washington, D.C. . . . .332
- In Canada. . . . .333

## **PUBLICATION ORDER FORMS . . . . .333**



## SUGGESTIONS FOR OBTAINING SERVICE FOR YOUR VEHICLE

### Prepare For The Appointment

If you are having warranty work done, be sure to have the right papers with you. Take your warranty folder. All work to be performed may not be covered by the warranty. Discuss additional charges with the service manager. Keep a maintenance log of your vehicle's service history. This can often provide a clue to the current problem.

### Prepare A List

Make a written list of your vehicle's problems or the specific work you want done. If you've had an accident or work done that is not on your maintenance log, let the service advisor know.

### Be Reasonable With Requests

If you list a number of items and you must have your vehicle by the end of the day, discuss the situation with the service advisor

and list the items in order of priority. At many authorized dealers, you may obtain a rental vehicle at a minimal daily charge. If you need a rental, it is advisable to make these arrangements when you call for an appointment.

## IF YOU NEED ASSISTANCE

The manufacturer and its authorized dealer are vitally interested in your satisfaction. We want you to be happy with our products and services.

Warranty service must be done by an authorized dealer. We strongly recommend that you take the vehicle to an authorized dealer. They know your vehicle the best, and are most concerned that you get prompt and high quality service. The manufacturer's authorized dealer have the facilities, factory-trained technicians, special tools, and the latest information to ensure the vehicle is fixed correctly and in a timely manner.

This is why you should always talk to an authorized dealer service manager first. Most matters can be resolved with this process.

- If for some reason you are still not satisfied, talk to the general manager or owner of the authorized dealer. They want to know if you need assistance.
- If an authorized dealer is unable to resolve the concern, you may contact the manufacturer's customer center.

Any communication to the manufacturer's customer center should include the following information:

- Owner's name and address
- Owner's telephone number (home and office)
- Authorized dealer name
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Vehicle delivery date and mileage

### FCA US LLC Customer Center

P.O. Box 21-8004

Auburn Hills, MI 48321-8004

Phone: (877) 426-5337

## **FCA Canada Inc. Customer Center**

P.O. Box 1621

Windsor, Ontario N9A 4H6

Phone: (800) 465-2001 English /  
(800) 387-9983 French

## **In Mexico Contact**

Av. Prolongacion Paseo de la Reforma, 1240

Sante Fe C.P. 05109

Mexico, D. F.

In Mexico City: 5081-7568

Outside Mexico City: 1-800-505-1300

## **Puerto Rico And U.S. Virgin Islands**

Customer Service Chrysler  
International Services LLC

P.O. Box 191857

San Juan 00919-1857

Tel.: (787) 782-5757

Fax: (787) 782-3345

## **Customer Assistance For The Hearing Or Speech Impaired (TDD/TTY)**

To assist customers who have hearing difficulties, the manufacturer has installed special TDD (Telecommunication Devices for the Deaf) equipment at its customer center. Any hearing or speech impaired customer, who has access to a TDD or a conventional teletypewriter (TTY) in the United States, can communicate with the manufacturer by dialing 1-800-380-CHRY.

Canadian residents with hearing difficulties that require assistance can use the special needs relay service offered by Bell Canada. For TTY teletypewriter users, dial 711 and for Voice callers, dial 1-800-855-0511 to connect with a Bell Relay Service operator.

## **Service Contract**

You may have purchased a service contract for a vehicle to help protect you from the high cost of unexpected repairs after the manufacturer's New Vehicle Limited Warranty expires. The manufacturer stands behind only the manufacturer's service contracts.

If you purchased a manufacturer's service contract, you will receive Plan Provisions and an Owner Identification Card in the mail within three weeks of the vehicle delivery date. If you have any questions about the service contract, call the manufacturer's Service Contract National Customer Hotline at 1-800-521-9922 (Canadian residents, call (800) 465-2001 English / (800) 387-9983 French).

The manufacturer will not stand behind any service contract that is not the manufacturer's service contract. It is not responsible for any service contract other than the manufacturer's service contract. If you purchased a service contract that is not a manufacturer's service contract, and you require service after the manufacturer's New Vehicle Limited Warranty expires, please refer to the contract documents, and contact the person listed in those documents.



We appreciate that you have made a major investment when you purchased the vehicle. An authorized dealer has also made a major investment in facilities, tools, and training to assure that you are absolutely delighted with the ownership experience. You will be pleased with their sincere efforts to resolve any warranty issues or related concerns.

### WARNING!

Engine exhaust (internal combustion engines only), some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain, or emit, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects, or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain, or emit, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects, or other reproductive harm.

## WARRANTY INFORMATION

See the Warranty Information Booklet for the terms and provisions of FCA US LLC warranties applicable to this vehicle and market.

## MOPAR PARTS

Mopar fluids, lubricants, parts, and accessories are available from an authorized dealer. They are recommended for your vehicle in order to help keep the vehicle operating at its best.

## REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS

**In The 50 United States And Washington, D.C.**

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash or cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying FCA US LLC.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your authorized dealer or FCA US LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); or go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., West Building, Washington, D.C. 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

## In Canada

If you believe that your vehicle has a safety defect, you should contact the Customer Service Department immediately. Canadian customers who wish to report a safety defect to the Canadian government should contact Transport Canada, Motor Vehicle Defect Investigations and Recalls at 1-800-333-0510 or go to <http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety/>.

## PUBLICATION ORDER FORMS

- If you are the first registered retail owner of your vehicle, you may obtain a complimentary printed copy of the Owner's Manual, Navigation/Uconnect Manuals or Warranty Booklet. United States customers may visit the Jeep Contact Us page at [www.jeep.com](http://www.jeep.com) scroll to the bottom of the page and select the "Contact Us" link, then select the "Owner's Manual and Glove Compartment Material" from the left menu. You may also obtain a complimentary copy by calling 1-877-426-5337 (U.S.) or 1-800-387-1143 (Canada).
- Replacement User Guide kits or, if you prefer, additional printed copies of the Owner's Manual, Warranty Booklet or Radio Manuals may be purchased by visiting [www.techauthority.com](http://www.techauthority.com) or by calling 1-877-890-4038 (U.S.) or 1-800-387-1143 (Canada). Visa, Master Card, American Express and Discover orders are accepted.

## NOTE:

- The Owner's Manual and User Guide electronic files are also available on the Chrysler, Jeep, Ram Truck, Dodge and SRT websites.
- Click on the "For Owners" tab, select "Owner/Service Manuals", then select your desired model year and vehicle from the drop down lists.







# INDEX












Access  
    Uconnect . . . . .275, 276, 280  
Accessories . . . . .269  
    Mopar . . . . .269  
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)  
    Off . . . . .168, 170  
    On . . . . .168, 170  
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)  
    (Cruise Control). . . . .167  
Additives, Fuel . . . . .264  
Air Bag . . . . .120  
    Air Bag Operation . . . . .121  
    Air Bag Warning Light . . . . .118, 122  
    Driver Knee Air Bag . . . . .127  
    Enhanced Accident Response .131, 220  
    Event Data Recorder (EDR) . . . . .220  
    Front Air Bag . . . . .120, 122  
    If A Deployment Occurs . . . . .130  
    Knee Impact Bolsters . . . . .126  
    Maintaining Your Air Bag System .131  
    Redundant Air Bag Warning Light .119  
    Transporting Pets . . . . .145  
Air Bag Light . . . . .78, 118, 147  
Air Bag Maintenance . . . . .131

Air Cleaner, Engine  
    (Engine Air Cleaner Filter) . . . . .229  
Air Conditioner Maintenance . . . . .229  
Air Conditioning Filter . . . . .57, 230  
Air Conditioning, Operating Tips . . . . .56  
Air Conditioning Refrigerant . . . . .229, 230  
Air Conditioning System . . . . .55, 229  
Air Filter . . . . .229  
Air Pressure, Tires . . . . .247  
Alarm  
    Arm The System . . . . .17  
    Disarm The System . . . . .18  
Alarm (Security Alarm) . . . . .17, 80  
Alarm System (Security Alarm). . . . .17  
All Wheel Drive (AWD) . . . . .157  
Antifreeze (Engine Coolant) . . . . .265  
Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) . . . . .90  
Anti-Lock Warning Light . . . . .84  
App  
    Uconnect Access . . . . .277  
Arming System (Security Alarm) . . . . .17  
Assist, Hill Start . . . . .92  
Audio Jack . . . . .301  
Automatic Door Locks . . . . .23  
Automatic Headlights . . . . .35, 36

Automatic Temperature Control (ATC) . . .55  
Automatic Transaxle . . . . .154  
Automatic Transmission . . . . .156  
    Fluid Level Check . . . . .237  
Auto Up Power Windows . . . . .59  
  
Back-Up . . . . .179  
Back-Up Camera . . . . .179  
Battery . . . . .80, 227  
    Charging System Light . . . . .80  
Belts, Seat . . . . .146  
Blind Spot Monitoring . . . . .102  
B-Pillar Location . . . . .243  
Brake Assist System . . . . .91  
Brake Control System, Electronic . . . . .91  
Brake System  
    Parking . . . . .152  
    Warning Light . . . . .79  
Brake/Transmission Interlock . . . . .156  
Brightness, Interior Lights . . . . .38  
Bulb Replacement . . . . .191  
Bulbs, Light . . . . .148  
  
Camera . . . . .179  
Capacities, Fluid . . . . .265



Caps, Filler		Child Safety Locks . . . . .	.23	Do Not Disturb . . . . .	.328
Fuel . . . . .	.180, 214	Cleaning		Door Ajar . . . . .	.81
Oil (Engine) . . . . .	.225, 226	Wheels . . . . .	.253	Door Ajar Light . . . . .	.81
Carbon Monoxide Warning . . . . .	.146	Climate Control . . . . .	.40, 322	Door Locks, Automatic . . . . .	.23
Cargo Area Features . . . . .	.64	Manual . . . . .	.40	Driver's Seat Back Tilt . . . . .	.25
Cargo Compartment . . . . .	.64	Clock . . . . .	.288		
Cargo Load Floor . . . . .	.64	Clock Setting . . . . .	.288	E-85 Fuel . . . . .	.264
Cargo Tie-Downs . . . . .	.65	Cold Weather Operation . . . . .	.151	Electric Parking Brake . . . . .	.152
Car Washes . . . . .	.258	Compact Spare Tire . . . . .	.252	Electronic Brake Control System . . . . .	.91
Changing A Flat Tire . . . . .	.201, 237	Contract, Service . . . . .	.331	Anti-Lock Brake System . . . . .	.90
Charging Pad, Wireless . . . . .	.71	Cooling System . . . . .	.236	Electronic Roll Mitigation . . . . .	.97
Chart, Tire Sizing . . . . .	.239	Coolant Capacity . . . . .	.265	Traction Control System . . . . .	.93
Checking Your Vehicle For Safety . . . . .	.146	Inspection . . . . .	.236	Electronic Speed Control	
Checks, Safety . . . . .	.146	Selection Of Coolant (Antifreeze) . . . . .	.265	(Cruise Control) . . . . .	.165, 166
Child Restraint . . . . .	.132	Cruise Control (Speed Control) . . . . .	.165	Electronic Stability Control (ESC) . . . . .	.93
Child Restraints		Cruise Light . . . . .	.86, 87	Electronic Throttle Control	
Booster Seats . . . . .	.135	Customer Assistance . . . . .	.330	Warning Light . . . . .	.81
Child Restraints . . . . .	.132	Customer Programmable Features . . . . .	.300	Emergency, In Case Of	
Child Seat Installation . . . . .	.143			Hazard Warning Flasher . . . . .	.190
How To Stow An Unused		Daytime Running Lights . . . . .	.35	Jacking . . . . .	.201, 237
ALR Seat Belt . . . . .	.141	Dealer Service . . . . .	.228	Jump Starting . . . . .	.212
Infants And Child Restraints . . . . .	.134	Defroster, Windshield . . . . .	.147	Overheating . . . . .	.215
LATCH Positions . . . . .	.137	Diagnostic System, Onboard . . . . .	.87	Engine . . . . .	.225, 226
Lower Anchors And Tethers		Dipsticks		Air Cleaner . . . . .	.229
For Children . . . . .	.137	Oil (Engine) . . . . .	.227	Checking Oil Level . . . . .	.227
Older Children And Child Restraints . . . . .	.134	Disabled Vehicle Towing . . . . .	.217	Cooling . . . . .	.236
Seating Positions . . . . .	.136	Disturb . . . . .	.311	Exhaust Gas Caution . . . . .	.146

Fails To Start . . . . .	152	Fluid Level Checks		Automatic . . . . .	35, 36	
Flooded, Starting . . . . .	152	Engine Oil . . . . .	227	Delay . . . . .	36	
Jump Starting . . . . .	212	Fluids And Lubricants . . . . .	266	Time Delay . . . . .	36	
Oil . . . . .	265	Fog Lights . . . . .	35, 36, 37	Head Restraints . . . . .	28	
Oil Filler Cap . . . . .	225, 226	Folding Rear Seat . . . . .	26	Head Rests . . . . .	28	
Oil Filter . . . . .	228	Forward Collision Warning . . . . .	103	Heated Mirrors . . . . .	35	
Oil Selection . . . . .	265	Four Wheel Drive . . . . .	157	Hill Descent Control . . . . .	98	
Overheating . . . . .	215	Freeing A Stuck Vehicle . . . . .	216	Hill Descent Control Indicator . . . . .	98	
Enhanced Accident Response		Front And Rear ParkSense System . . . . .	173	Hill Start Assist . . . . .	92	
Feature . . . . .	131, 220	Front ParkSense System . . . . .	173	HomeLink (Garage Door Opener) . . . . .	66	
Ethanol . . . . .	264	Fuel		Hood Release . . . . .	63	
Exhaust Gas Caution . . . . .	146	Additives . . . . .	264	Inside Rearview Mirror . . . . .	33	
Exhaust System . . . . .	146	Ethanol . . . . .	264	Instrument Cluster . . . . .	76, 80, 85	
Exterior Lights . . . . .	148	Filler Cap (Gas Cap) . . . . .	180	Instrument Panel Lens Cleaning . . . . .	260	
Filters		Light . . . . .	84	Interior Appearance Care . . . . .	259	
Air Cleaner . . . . .	229	Materials Added . . . . .	264	Intermittent Wipers (Delay Wipers) . . . . .	38	
Air Conditioning . . . . .	57, 230	Tank Capacity . . . . .	265	Introduction . . . . .	1	
Engine Oil . . . . .	228	Fuel, Flexible . . . . .	264	In Vehicle Features		
Flashers		Fuses . . . . .	194	Uconnect Access . . . . .	280	
Hazard Warning . . . . .	190	Garage Door Opener (HomeLink) . . . . .	66	Inverter Outlet (115V) . . . . .	71	
Turn Signal . . . . .	37, 85, 148	Gas Cap (Fuel Filler Cap) . . . . .	180	Inverter, Power . . . . .	71	
Flexible Fuel Vehicles		Gear Select Lever Override . . . . .	215	iPod/USB/MP3 Control		
Fuel Requirements . . . . .	264	Hands-Free Phone (Uconnect) . . . . .	306	Bluetooth Streaming Audio . . . . .	306	
Flooded Engine Starting . . . . .	152	Hazard Warning Flasher . . . . .	190	Jacking Instructions . . . . .	202	
Fluid Capacities . . . . .	265	Headlights . . . . .	35, 36	Jack Location . . . . .	201	
Fluid Leaks . . . . .	148					

Jack Operation . . . . .	201, 202, 237	Daytime Running . . . . .	35	Power Door . . . . .	19
Jump Starting . . . . .	212	Engine Temperature Warning . . . . .	80	Low Tire Pressure System . . . . .	105
Key Fob		Exterior . . . . .	148	Lug Nuts . . . . .	263
Arm The Alarm . . . . .	17	Fog . . . . .	37	Maintenance Free Battery . . . . .	227
Disarm The Alarm . . . . .	18	Hazard Warning Flasher . . . . .	190	Maintenance Schedule . . . . .	222
Keyless Enter-N-Go . . . . .	20	Headlights . . . . .	35	Malfunction Indicator Light (Check Engine) . . . . .	81
Key, Replacement . . . . .	14	Hill Descent Control Indicator . . . . .	98	Manual, Service . . . . .	333
Keys . . . . .	13	Intensity Control . . . . .	38	Media Hub . . . . .	319
Lane Change And Turn Signals . . . . .	37	Low Fuel . . . . .	84	Memory Feature (Memory Seat) . . . . .	26
Lane Change Assist . . . . .	37	Malfunction Indicator (Check Engine) . . . . .	81	Memory Seat . . . . .	26
LaneSense . . . . .	176	Park . . . . .	85, 86	Memory Seats And Radio . . . . .	26
Lap/Shoulder Belts . . . . .	112	Seat Belt Reminder . . . . .	78	Mirrors . . . . .	33
Latches . . . . .	148	Security Alarm . . . . .	80	Heated . . . . .	35
Hood . . . . .	63	Service . . . . .	191	Outside . . . . .	34
Leaks, Fluid . . . . .	148	Tire Pressure Monitoring (TPMS) . . . . .	83, 105	Rearview . . . . .	33
Life Of Tires . . . . .	249	Traction Control . . . . .	96	Monitor, Tire Pressure System . . . . .	105
Liftgate . . . . .	64	Turn Signal . . . . .	37, 85, 148	Mopar . . . . .	269
Liftgate Window Wiper/Washer . . . . .	40	Warning (Instrument Cluster Description) . . . . .	80, 85	Mopar Accessories . . . . .	269
Light Bulbs . . . . .	148	Load Floor, Cargo . . . . .	64	Mopar Parts . . . . .	332
Lights . . . . .	148	Loading Vehicle		Navigation . . . . .	302, 322
Air Bag . . . . .	78, 118, 147	Tires . . . . .	243	Occupant Restraints . . . . .	109
Brake Assist Warning . . . . .	96	Locks		Oil, Engine	
Brake Warning . . . . .	79	Automatic Door . . . . .	23	Capacity . . . . .	265
Bulb Replacement . . . . .	191	Child Protection . . . . .	23		
Cruise . . . . .	86, 87				

Checking . . . . .	.227	Placard, Tire And Loading Information . . . . .	.243	Rear Cross Path . . . . .	.102
Dipstick . . . . .	.227	Power		Rear ParkSense System . . .	.171, 173, 179
Filter . . . . .	.228	Door Locks . . . . .	.19	Rear Seat, Folding . . . . .	.26
Pressure Warning Light . . . . .	.80	Glass Sunroof . . . . .	.60	Rear Wiper/Washer . . . . .	.40
Recommendation . . . . .	.265	Inverter . . . . .	.71	Recreational Towing. . . . .	.183
Viscosity . . . . .	.265	Outlet (Auxiliary Electrical Outlet) . . .	.68	Shifting Into Power Transfer Unit Neutral (N) . . . . .	.185
Oil Filter, Change . . . . .	.228	Windows . . . . .	.59	Shifting Into Transfer Case Neutral (N) . . . . .	.185
Oil Filter, Selection . . . . .	.228	Power Shade		Shifting Out Of Power Transfer Unit Neutral (N) . . . . .	.187
Oil Pressure Light . . . . .	.80	Open . . . . .	.61	Shifting Out Of Transfer Case Neutral (N) . . . . .	.187
Onboard Diagnostic System . . . . .	.87	Pregnant Women And Seat Belts . . . .	.116	Refrigerant . . . . .	.230
Operating Precautions . . . . .	.87	Preparation For Jacking . . . . .	.202	Release, Hood . . . . .	.63
Outlet		Pretensioners		Reminder, Seat Belt . . . . .	.111
Power . . . . .	.68	Seat Belts . . . . .	.116	Remote Control	
Outside Rearview Mirrors . . . . .	.34	Purchase Apps		Starting System . . . . .	.16
Overheating, Engine . . . . .	.215	Uconnect Access . . . . .	.279, 324	Remote Keyless Entry	
Owner's Manual (Operator Manual) . . .	.333			Arm The Alarm . . . . .	.17
				Disarm The Alarm . . . . .	.18
Parking Brake . . . . .	.152	Radial Ply Tires . . . . .	.248	Remote Starting System . . . . .	.16
ParkSense Active Park Assist . . . . .	.175	Radio . . . . .	.319	Replacement Keys . . . . .	.14
ParkSense System, Front And Rear . . .	.173	Presets . . . . .	.289, 296, 297	Replacement Tires . . . . .	.249
ParkSense System, Rear . . . . .	.171, 173	Radio Frequency		Reporting Safety Defects. . . . .	.332
Personalized Menu Bar . . . . .	.296	General Information . . . . .	.14, 16, 23	Restraint, Head . . . . .	.28
Pets . . . . .	.145	Radio Operation . . . . .	.289	Restraints, Child. . . . .	.132
Phone, Hands-Free (Uconnect) . . . . .	.306	Radio Screens . . . . .	.294		
Phone (Pairing) . . . . .	.307, 318	Radio (Sound Systems) . . . . .	.289		
Phone (Uconnect) . . . . .	.306, 320	Rain Sensitive Wiper System . . . . .	.38, 39		
		Rear Camera . . . . .	.179		



- Roll Over Warning . . . . . 2
- Rotation, Tires . . . . . 255
- Safety Checks Inside Vehicle . . . . . 146
- Safety Checks Outside Vehicle . . . . . 148
- Safety Defects, Reporting . . . . . 332
- Safety, Exhaust Gas. . . . . 146
- Safety Information, Tire . . . . . 237
- Safety Tips . . . . . 146
- Schedule, Maintenance . . . . . 222
- SD Card Port. . . . . 301
- Seat Belt
  - Adjustable Upper Shoulder Belt
    - Anchorage . . . . . 115
    - Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) . 117
    - Energy Management Feature . . . . 117
    - Lap/Shoulder Belt Operation . . . . 113
    - Lap/Shoulder Belts . . . . . 112
    - Lap/Shoulder Belt Untwisting . . . . 114
    - Pregnant Women . . . . . 116
    - Seat Belt Extender . . . . . 115
    - Seat Belt Pretensioner . . . . . 116
    - Seat Belt Reminder . . . . . 111
  - Seat Belt Maintenance. . . . . 259
  - Seat Belt Reminder. . . . . 111
  - Seat Belts . . . . . 110, 146
    - Adjustable Shoulder Belt . . . . . 115
    - Adjustable Upper Shoulder
      - Anchorage . . . . . 115
      - Child Restraint . . . . . 132
      - Extender . . . . . 115
      - Front Seat . . . . . 110, 112, 113
      - Inspection . . . . . 146
      - Operating Instructions . . . . . 113
      - Pregnant Women . . . . . 116
      - Pretensioners . . . . . 116
      - Rear Seat . . . . . 112
      - Reminder . . . . . 78
      - Untwisting Procedure . . . . . 114
- Seats . . . . . 24, 27
  - Adjustment . . . . . 24
  - Head Restraints . . . . . 28
  - Heated . . . . . 27
  - Manual . . . . . 24
  - Memory . . . . . 26
  - Rear Folding . . . . . 26
  - Seatback Release . . . . . 25
  - Tilting . . . . . 25
  - Vented . . . . . 28
  - Ventilated . . . . . 28
- Security Alarm . . . . . 17, 80
  - Arm The System . . . . . 17
  - Disarm The System . . . . . 18
- Selec-Terrain . . . . . 162
- Sentry Key Replacement . . . . . 14
- Service Assistance . . . . . 330
- Service Contract. . . . . 331
- Service Manuals. . . . . 333
- Shifting
  - Automatic Transmission . . . . . 156
  - Power Transfer Unit, Shifting Into Power
    - Transfer Unit Neutral (N) . . . 185, 187
    - Transfer Case, Shifting Into Transfer Case
      - Neutral (N) . . . . . 185
      - Transfer Case, Shifting Out Of Transfer
        - Case Neutral (N) . . . . . 187
- Shift Lever Override. . . . . 215
- Shoulder Belts . . . . . 112
- Side View Mirror Adjustment . . . . . 34
- Signals, Turn. . . . . 37, 85, 148
- Siri . . . . . 326, 327
- Sirius Satellite Radio . . . . . 298
- Snow Chains (Tire Chains). . . . . 254
- Snow Tires . . . . . 251
- Sound Systems (Radio) . . . . . 301, 302
- Spare Tire . . . . . 251, 252
- Speed Control
  - Accel/Decel . . . . . 166, 167
  - Accel/Decel (ACC Only) . . . . . 168
  - Cancel . . . . . 167
  - Distance Setting (ACC Only) . 167, 170

Mode Setting (ACC Only) . . . . .	170	Text Messaging . . . . .	312, 313, 321, 324	Spare Tire . . . . .	251, 252
Set . . . . .	166	Tie Down Hooks, Cargo . . . . .	65	Spinning . . . . .	248
Speed Control (Cruise Control) . . .	165, 166	Tilt Steering Column . . . . .	31	Tread Wear Indicators . . . . .	249
Starting . . . . .	16	Time Delay, Headlight . . . . .	36	Tire Safety Information . . . . .	237
Cold Weather . . . . .	151	Tire And Loading Information Placard .	243	Tire Service Kit . .207, 208, 209, 211, 212	
Engine Fails To Start . . . . .	152	Tire Markings . . . . .	237	To Open Hood . . . . .	63
Remote . . . . .	16	Tires . . . . .	148, 246, 251, 252, 256	Towing . . . . .	182, 217
Steering . . . . .		Aging (Life Of Tires) . . . . .	249	Disabled Vehicle . . . . .	217
Tilt Column . . . . .	31	Air Pressure . . . . .	246	Recreational . . . . .	183
Wheel, Heated . . . . .	32	Chains . . . . .	254	Towing Vehicle Behind A Motorhome .	183
Wheel, Tilt . . . . .	31	Changing . . . . .	201, 237	Traction Control . . . . .	93
Steering Wheel Mounted Sound . . . .		Compact Spare . . . . .	252	Trailer Sway Control (TSC) . . . . .	97
System Controls . . . . .	274	General Information . . .246, 251, 252		Trailer Towing . . . . .	182
Storage, Vehicle . . . . .	56	High Speed . . . . .	247	Trailer And Tongue Weight . . . . .	182
Stuck, Freeing . . . . .	216	Inflation Pressures . . . . .	247	Trailer Towing Guide . . . . .	182
Sunroof . . . . .		Jacking . . . . .	201, 237	Trailer Weight . . . . .	182
Closing . . . . .	61	Life Of Tires . . . . .	249	Transaxle . . . . .	154
Opening . . . . .	61	Load Capacity . . . . .	243	Automatic . . . . .	154
Venting . . . . .	61	Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) .	105	Operation . . . . .	154
Sun Roof . . . . .	60	Pressure Warning Light . . . . .	83	Transmission . . . . .	156
Supplemental Restraint System -		Quality Grading . . . . .	256	Automatic . . . . .	156, 237
Air Bag . . . . .	120	Radial . . . . .	248	Maintenance . . . . .	237
Sway Control, Trailer . . . . .	97	Replacement . . . . .	249	Transporting Pets . . . . .	145
System, Remote Starting . . . . .	16	Rotation . . . . .	255	Tread Wear Indicators . . . . .	249
Telescoping Steering Column . . . . .	31	Safety . . . . .	237, 246	Turn Signals . . . . .	37, 85
Temperature Control, Automatic (ATC) .	55	Sizes . . . . .	239		
		Snow Tires . . . . .	251		



- Uconnect
  - Access . . . . .275, 276, 280
  - Account . . . . .276, 280, 283
  - Maintaining Your Account . . . . .280
  - Registration . . . . .276, 323
  - Remote Features . . . . .283
  - Using Access . . . . .279
- Uconnect 5.0 . . . . .287
- Uconnect 8.4/8.4 NAV . . . .294, 322, 328
  - Mute . . . . .310
  - Phonebook . . . . .310
  - Transfer Ongoing Call Between
    - Handset And Vehicle . . . . .310
    - Voice Recognition Tips . . . . .311
- Uconnect 8.4/8.4 NAV Voice Recognition
  - Voice Texting . . . . .311
- Uconnect 8.4 NAV Voice Recognition
  - SiriusXM Travel Link . . . . .326
- Uconnect Access . . . . .275, 322
  - App . . . . .277
  - In Vehicle Features . . . . .280
  - Purchase Apps . . . . .279, 324
  - Vehicle Health Alert . . . . .283, 324
  - Yelp . . . . .325
- Uconnect (Hands-Free Phone)
  - Making A Phone Call . . . . .305, 311
  - Receiving A Call . . . . .305
- Uconnect Phone . . . .305, 310, 312, 318
- Uconnect Voice Command . . . .310, 316
- Uniform Tire Quality Grades . . . . .256
- Untwisting Procedure, Seat Belt . . . .114
- USB Port . . . . .301
- Using Access
  - Uconnect . . . . .279
- Vehicle Loading . . . . .243
- Vehicle Security Alarm
  - (Security Alarm) . . . . .17
- Vehicle Storage . . . . .56
- Ventilated . . . . .27
- Voice Command . . . . .310, 316, 318
- Voice Recognition
  - System (VR) . . . . .310, 311, 316
- Warning Flasher, Hazard . . . . .190
- Warning, Roll Over . . . . .2
- Warranty Information . . . . .332
- Washer
  - Rear . . . . .40
- Washers, Windshield . . . . .38, 227
- Washing Vehicle . . . . .258
- Wheel And Wheel Trim . . . . .253
- Wheel And Wheel Trim Care . . . . .253
- Wind Buffeting . . . . .61
- Window Fogging . . . . .57
- Windows
  - Close . . . . .59
  - Down . . . . .59
  - Open . . . . .59
  - Power . . . . .59
  - Up . . . . .59
- Windshield Defroster . . . . .147
- Windshield Washers . . . . .38, 227
  - Fluid . . . . .227
- Windshield Wiper Blades . . . . .232
- Windshield Wipers . . . . .38
- Wiper Blade Replacement . . . . .232
- Wiper, Rear . . . . .40
- Wireless Charging Pad . . . . .71







This guide has been prepared to help you get quickly acquainted with your new Jeep brand vehicle and to provide a convenient reference source for common questions. However, it is not a substitute for your Owner's Manual.

For complete operational instructions, maintenance procedures and important safety messages, please consult your Owner's Manual, Navigation/Uconnect manuals found on the website on the back cover of your user guide and other Warning Labels in your vehicle.

Not all features shown in this guide may apply to your vehicle. For additional information on accessories to help personalize your vehicle, visit **[www.mopar.com](http://www.mopar.com)** (U.S.), **[www.mopar.ca](http://www.mopar.ca)** (Canada) or your local Jeep brand dealer.

## Driving and Alcohol:

---

Drunken driving is one of the most frequent causes of collisions. Your driving ability can be seriously impaired with blood alcohol levels far below the legal minimum. If you are drinking, don't drive. Ride with a designated non-drinking driver, call a cab, a friend, or use public transportation.

## WARNING!

---

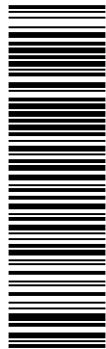
Driving after drinking can lead to a collision. Your perceptions are less sharp, your reflexes are slower, and your judgment is impaired when you have been drinking. Never drink and then drive.





Whether it's providing information about specific product features, taking a tour through your vehicle's heritage, knowing what steps to take following an accident, or scheduling your next appointment, we know you'll find the app an important extension of your Jeep brand vehicle. Simply download the app, select your make and model and enjoy the ride. To get this app, go directly to the App Store or Google Play and enter the search keyword "JEEP" (U.S. market only).

[jeep.com/en/owners](http://jeep.com/en/owners) provides special offers tailored to your needs, customized vehicle galleries, personalized service records and more. To get this information, just create an account and check back often.



17K/L74-926-AA  
Cherokee  
Fourth Edition  
User Guide

**Jeep.com (U.S.)**   **Jeep.ca (Canada)**

**DOWNLOAD A FREE ELECTRONIC COPY** of the Owner's Manual and Warranty Booklet by visiting:

[www.mopar.com/Jeep](http://www.mopar.com/Jeep)

[www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals](http://www.jeep.com/en/owners/manuals) or

[www.jeep.com/en/warranty](http://www.jeep.com/en/warranty) (U.S.);

[www.owners.mopar.ca/en](http://www.owners.mopar.ca/en) (Canada).